



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

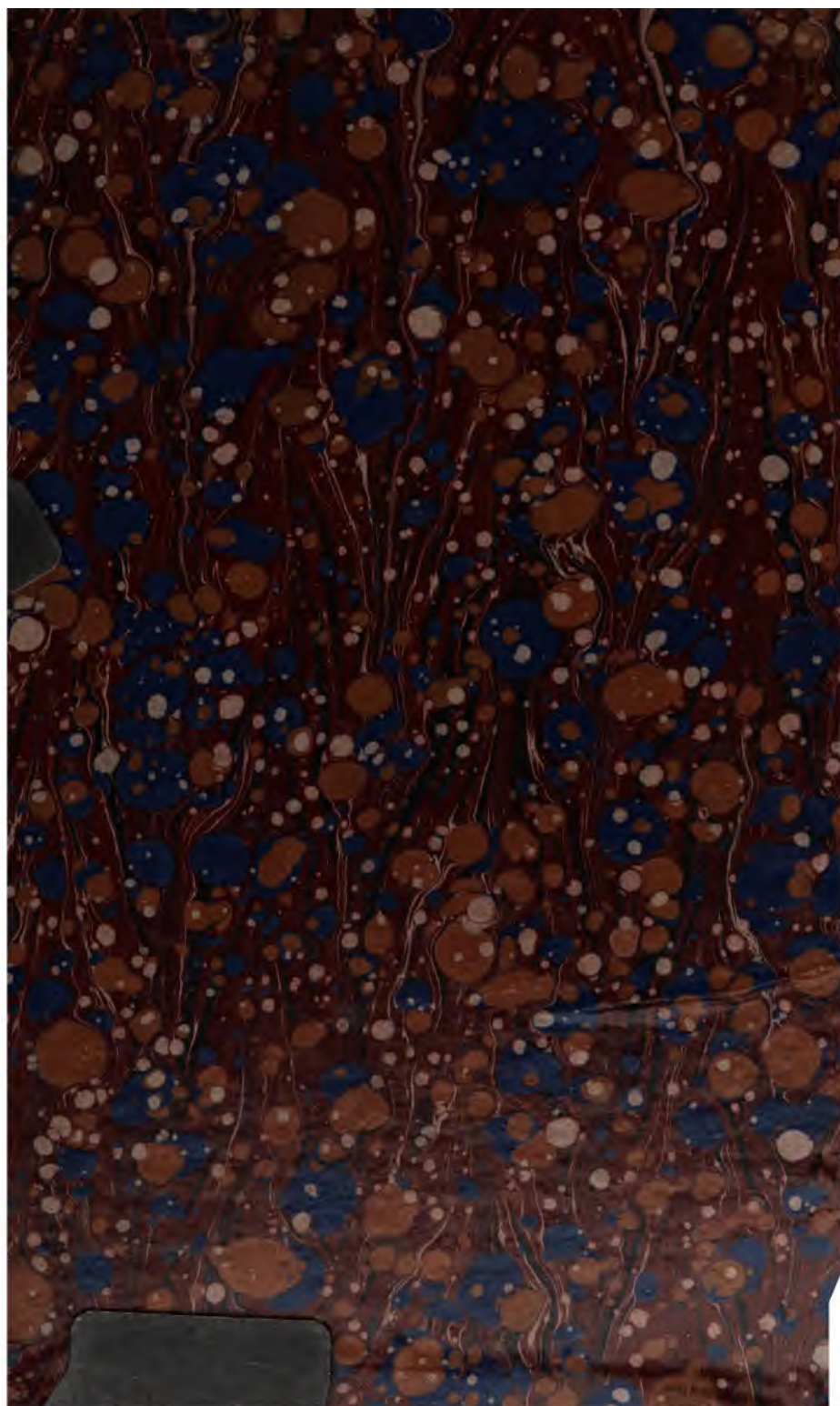
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





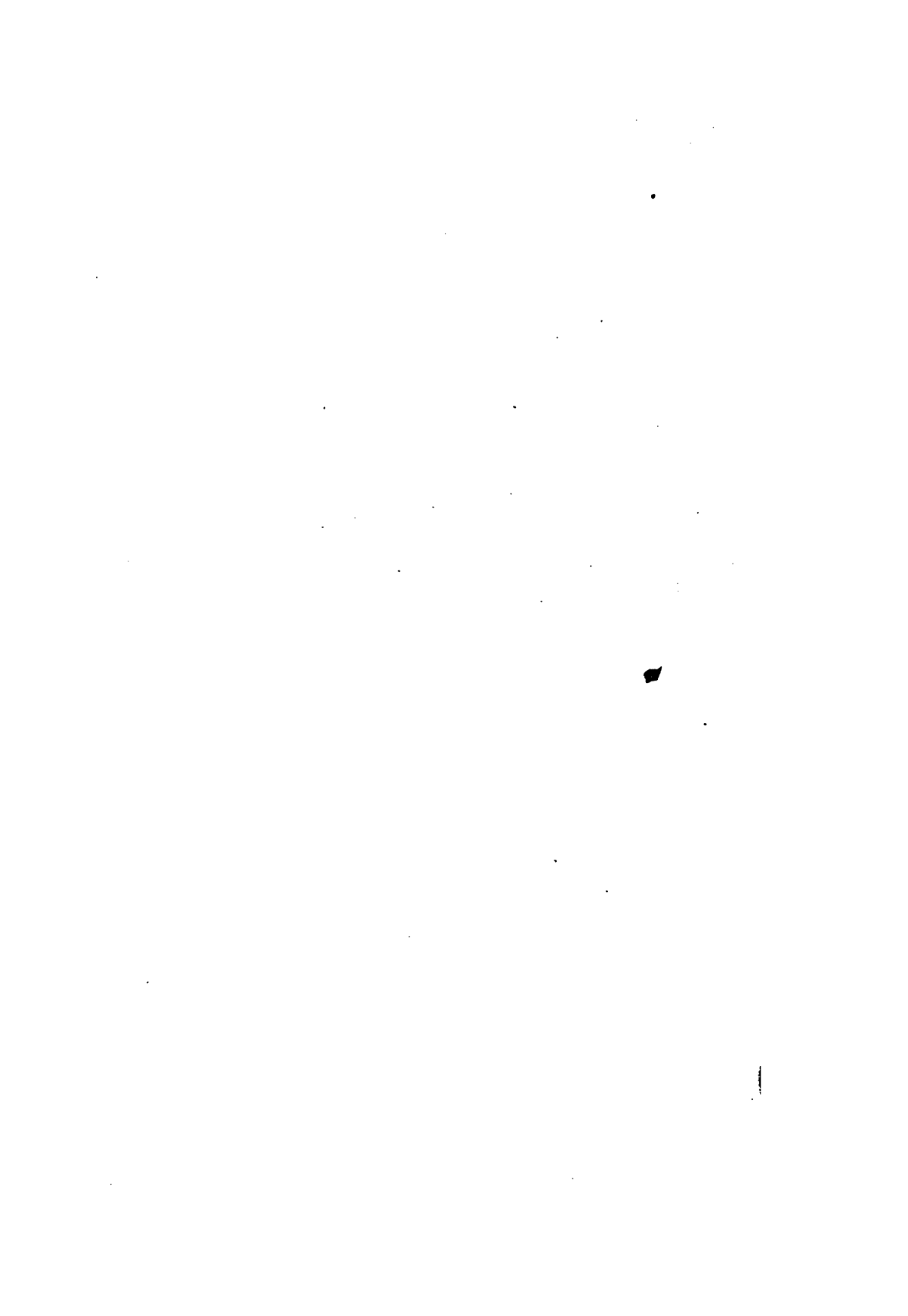


U L U . 0

E 1 2











CORRECTIONS BY HENRY BRADLEY, M.A.

FOR

THE ENGLISH CONQUEST OF IRELAND.

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY. No. 107.

*Original Series, 1896.*

**Boxom-fastines** 62/18: this should be two words, *boxom fastness*, an obsequious covenant, meant to render *L. fucato foedere*.

**Costes**: part of *far-costes* below.

**Ense** 80/29: read *Euse*, eaves, edge, border: 'the wode evese (*ms.* hevese) voc. 159.'—Bradley's *Stratmann*.

**Far-costes** 80/5: 'O.N. *farkostr*; means of conveyance, boat, ship, *Engl. Metr. Hom. xix.*'—*ib.*

**Fawes** 96/2: perhaps the Irish *fogha* (O'Reilly), a dart, O.Ir. *fogaë* (Lat. *jacula*).

**Folk** place 50/15: the folk (for *febyll* in the Rawlinson MS.) was caught from the 'lond-folk' in the next line.

**Herrer** 116/30: the Latin is 'et citra majoris auctoritatem urbem obtenturum.'—*Gir. Cambr. Op. v. 342*.

**I-quenyted** 36/35: miswritten for *Iquemed*, pleased.

**I-suywed** 116/9: read *I-snywed*, 'snowed' their arrows; the Latin is 'sagittarum . . . grandine perfuso.'

**Lygne** 102/17: as *fayre & lygne* translates 'procerus et pulcher,' the word must mean 'tall'; perhaps it is a misreading for *hyghe*, high.

**Lyme** 62/18: the Latin has *amorem*; the scribe must have misread *luue* (love) as *lime*, and transcribed it *lyme*.

**Ost** 50/2: cannot mean 'burnt.' The word is superfluous; perhaps the translator at first wrote *lytell ost* (little host), and then altered *ost* into *stonwal*, but did not clearly enough expunge the rejected word.

**Priuisant** 80/28: cannot mean 'foreseeing'; it is probably a mistake for *pur-suiant*, pursuivant (the Latin is *satelles*).

**Byuely** 128/12: rifely, abundantly.

**Sheldrun** 31/29 (R): company-formation, O.E. *scild-truma* (whence *shelter*); the Rawlinson MS. here preserves the right reading, that of the Dublin MS. being unmeaning.

**Spourges** 112/3: ? for *spronges*, shoots, sprouts.

**porwe** 28/12: ? through; *wel porwe* 'well through,' urgently (the Latin is 'omnibus modis').

**Trukked** 48/9: ran short, *trukien*, O.E. *trucian*, fail, be lacking.

**Wecchene** 36/31: *owecchen*, to twitch, shake.

**Wenttene** 106/8: for *weten*, know (pat is to *weten* = that is to say); the scribe was misled by seeing *wentten* (*went*) in the line above.

**Yonre** 104/10: *Youre* 114/27: *yovre*, *ȝeofre*, O. E. *ȝifre*, greedy.



**The English Conquest of Ireland.**

**Oxford**

**HORACE HART, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY**

**Original Series.**

**107**

The  
English Conquest of Ireland.

A. D. 1166-1185.

MAINLY FROM THE 'EXPUGNATIO HIBERNICA'  
OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS.

A Parallel Text

FROM

1. MS. Trinity College, Dublin, E. 2. 31, about 1425 A.D.
2. MS. Rawlinson, B. 490, Bodleian Library, about 1440 A.D.

PART I. THE TEXT.

EDITED BY

FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A.,

TRINITY HALL, CAMBRIDGE, HON. DR. PHIL., BERLIN.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED  
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD, W.C.

M DCCC XCVI.

Ⓔ

**LIBRARY OF THE  
LELAND STANFORD JR. UNIVERSITY.**

*A 38638*

**FEB 19 1900**

DEDICATED TO THE  
RT. HON. WILLIAM EWART GLADSTONE, M.P.  
AND ALL WHO HAVE WORKT FOR  
**Justice to Ireland**



*See opposite.* Mr. Thomas Austin sends me some more forms worth notice in the Dublin MS. :—bethweñ, between, 10/12; bolthenys, boldness, 75/15; ather, either, 100/3; ayse, ease, 148/1; behoud (?th), behoof, benefit, 112/30; culuertnesse, falseness, 126/31; cytteyns, citizens, 122/27; dur̄, door, 42/22; ense, ends, 80/29; fale (fele), many, 74/10; fobler, feebler, 68/6; forume, form, 39/12; ?heuedes (as in note), 14/17; hym þriddesum, Greek αἴρος τριτος, 14/1, 32/20; I-shwerne, sworn, 24/26; mich yuell, leprosy (comp. great pox), 32/7; neyght, nigh, 74/16; pynsyngē (pinching), affliction, 88/6; rechest, reckest, 108/9; ruthlyngē, ? rattling, 16/13; schavngē, change, 51/6; senne, synod, 120/15; senthe (?seithe), seventh, 58/30; senfte, 59/30; soine, soon, 60/11; soldrys, shoulders, 39/11; sortely, shortly, 149/22; shechyngē, seeking, 147/19.

## FOREWORDS.

THE first manuscript of this interesting story of "oure knyghten gestes yn Irlande" (92/15), and of Henry II's Conquest of our sister Isle, was sent over to me from the Library of Trinity College, Dublin, by Dr. John K. Ingram, to be copied, printed, and edited by him for the Early English Text Society. He hoped to do his work at it during his July-September holiday (1893) in Scotland, on Loch Lomond, I having read his proofs with the MS. for him. But illness prevented him; and so I (as the Society's man-of-all-work) had to take the book up. Both the story told—mainly, though freely, from the *Expugnacio Hibernica* of Giraldus Cambrensis,—and the forms of the words, interested me. For the copier of the englisht text has often slipt into his own Irish dialect, specially in the use of *d* and *t* for *th*, and has written *dyng*<sup>1</sup> and *tyng*<sup>2</sup> for *thing*; *drogh*<sup>3</sup> and *trog*<sup>4</sup> for *through*; *day* for *they*<sup>5</sup>; *idrow* (18/1) for *thrown*; *tanked* for *thanked* (14/19); *tynke* for *think* (6/26); *toght* for *thought* (16/25, 18/7); *tough* (as once in *The Three King's Sons*) for *though* (22/14); &c. At the same time he has used *th* for *t* and *d*: *thedyng* (10/7) and *tythyng* (6/15) for *tidings*; *onther* (6/31) for *under*; *reut* (8/1) for *ruth*; *bethwen* (10/12) for *between*; *thwey* (12/35) for *two*; *herth* (2/8, 13, 22/28) for *heart*; *ibansheth* (24/1) for *banisht*; *lendeth* (22/16) for *ended*; *smyth* (24/12) for *smite*, &c. The copier has other peculiarities, both in the use of other consonants and vowels<sup>6</sup>, which the reader will note as he goes along, and which will be collected for him in the Introduction by Dr. Douglas Bruce, of the Ladies College at Bryn Mawr, Philadelphia, that will form

<sup>1</sup> 88/27; 134/13.      <sup>2</sup> 24/14; 28/8; (no)tyng 8/12; 16/5; 20/9; &c.  
<sup>3</sup> 14/8.      <sup>4</sup> 22/6, 7; 26/1, &c.      <sup>5</sup> 10/19; 12/21; 24/10, 11.

<sup>6</sup> Both *har* 128/20 doesn't at first look like *But ere*: still, you soon get accustomed to the scribe's little weaknesses. *Harym*, harm, is in the Rawlinson MS. 143/12: cp. *sarrif* serve, in Misyn. E. E. T. Soc. The Southern infinitive in *-y* or *-ye* occurs in both MSS. 58/27, &c. For other odd spellings, see opposite.

Part II. of this book, when complete, and will no doubt be finished in 1894, or '95.

As it was now and then hard to understand the Dublin text, and one nearer the standard tongue turned up in the Rawlinson MS. B. 490—the MS. that contains one of Mr. Steele's text of the prose *Secreta*—I got Mrs. Parker to copy this Bodleian MS.<sup>1</sup>, and the Clarendon Press to set it opposite the Dublin one. The comparison of the two versions is full of interesting points, as the Rawlinson is generally less archaic than the Dublin<sup>2</sup>, while each helps to fill up the other's occasional leavings-out. There is at least one other MS. of the *Conquest*, the later one in Trinity College, Dublin, F. 4. 4, which is said to be a 16th century transcript of E. 2. 31. From it, an extract is given below, pp. xiv–xvi as a specimen. Doubtless, other MSS. of the text exist elsewhere. Luckily for us, the late Rev. Jas. F. Dimock re-edited the *Expugnatio Hibernica* in vol. v. (1867) *Giraldi Cambrensis Opera* in the Rolls Series of *Chronicles and Memorials*; and his notes, dates, and Preface have been of the greatest use to me. He says (p. xxix) that there are two editions, and perhaps a third, of the *Expugnacio*: (1) that in an early 13th century MS. at Lambeth, No. 371, “probably penned during Giraldus's lifetime” (p. xxxi), and in (R.) and (B.), MSS. Bibl. Reg. 13 B. viii in the British Museum, and Rawlinson B. 188 in the Bodleian. In treating the two latter MSS. as of the first cast of the work, Mr. Dimock neglects the marginal additions of the Royal MS. These additions make (2) the second version of the *Expugnacio* (pp. xxxii, xxxiv), shown in (R.), and MS. Ff. 1. 27, in the University Library, Cambridge, in which “there is one whole chapter, (also in our English, p. 38–40 below) the eighteenth of the first book—giving the account of the synod at Armagh in 1170, of which no other mention is known besides this,

<sup>1</sup> Mr. George Parker has collated the proofs with the MS. Mr. Thomas Austin has made the Glossary and Indexes to both Texts. Dr. Ingram wrote the English side-notes to the even pages 10–32, tho I've altered 2 or 3 of em.

<sup>2</sup> I suppose the first englishing now represented by the Dublin MS. was made in the 14th century.

in this chapter of Giraldus—which is not in Lambeth 371, but is in Bibl. Reg. 13 B. viii and Rawlinson B. 188.”

We now come to the MS. of most interest to us, Harleian 177, for in it only (as I gather from Mr. Dimock’s note 3, p. 236) is the original of one of our English bits on pp. 16, 18 below:—

Trin. Coll. Dublin, E. 2. 31.

A wonder was of that fanta-  
sye: A-morowe, whan it was  
day, the place ther this folk  
iseye smyten vpon ham, the  
weddes and the grase that stoden  
al euen vpright, thay lay alle  
idrow adoune, and icast to grond.

Harl. 117, ff. 14, bk. 15.

*Mirum autem fantasmate tali,  
quod in crastino die clarescente,  
in loco ubi uidebatur exercitus  
ille in ipsos irruisse, herbe &  
vrtice, que prius alte fuerant,  
& erecte, solotenus prostrate  
iacebant, & complanate.*

For this, the other MSS., R. and B., have “*primus hic miles, qui in hac insula niso mansueto et domesticato Nisi filiam infestavit.*”

On this Harleian 177, Mr. Dimock says, at p. xxxv of his Preface:

(it) “furnishes a copy of the *Expugnatio* which, so far as it goes,—it has many and large omissions—generally agrees closely with the text of this second edition. . . . The omissions are more especially of the extraneous matter, not relating to Ireland; but there is much curtailing also of Irish matter, when not directly historical. In the descriptions of the heroes, for instance, much often is left out; and in the orations which Giraldus puts into their mouths, still more. The compiler of it never condenses, but simply omits. In an oration . . . he will retain two or three sentences of the beginning, and two or three more of the end, with perhaps another or two out of the middle, if not very much less than all this, word for word as in the complete oration, without much care about connection or sense . . . it certainly is only an abbreviation, such as I describe it.”

This is just the case with our English text<sup>1</sup>, though here and there it has bits not in Harl. 177. As to that MS., Mr. Dimock continues, pp. xxxv–vi:

“It generally agrees closely, as I have said, with the second

<sup>1</sup> It stops at chapter 34 of Book II (75 of our pages go to 171 of the Rolls *Giraldus*).

edition, as in (R.) and (F.); but it exhibits a somewhat more advanced text. For instance, the word *Stadiu* of (L)ambeth MS. occurs only twice instead of four times, out of eight as in (R)awlinson MS.: and instead of *Arcarii* always, as in the early manuscripts, it has the *Satellites equestres* of the later ones, in about half the instances where the words occur. And, moreover, in a few instances, it has a word or two that are not in the early manuscripts, but are in the later ones.

This manuscript has no note whatever as to its history; but it, or its original perhaps, would seem to have been written by one of the English settlers in Ireland, as it attempts occasionally, instead of Giraldus's Latin of all the other manuscripts, to give an English rendering of the Irish names. Thus, instead of *Murchardi filius*, or *Dermitius*, or *Murchardides*, it has 'Macmorhith' or 'Macmorhith'; instead of *Ororicius*, 'Oroch.' In one instance the writer appears to make a blunder in his Englishing: he renders *Otuethelis* 'Oneyl' instead of O'Toole. . . . It is not the work of a very correct scribe."

As a sample of the cutting-down, by Harl. 177, of Giraldus's descriptions of men, take the most trenchant instance, that of Henry II. In the Rolls edition, this description takes nearly six big octavo pages, *Op.* v. 301-6, the whole of Chapter 46, Book I. Leaving out the first page, Harl. 177 and the englisher start with the second, p. 302:

*Expugn. Hibern.* lib. i. cap. xlvi.

Harl. MS. 177, lf. 44, bk. 45.

*Descriptio anglorum regis*

*Henrici secundi.*

**E**rat igitur anglorum rex, henricus secundus, uir sub-ruffus, cesius; amplo capite & rotundo; oculis glausis; ad iram toruis, & rubore suffusis; facie ignea; uoce quassa; collo ab humeris aliquantulum demisso; pectore quadrato; brachiis ualidis; corpore carnosio; Et nature magis, quam gule

Dubl. MS. E. 2. 31.

Page 88 below.

**T**he kynge henry the other, was a mañ saunrede, rounne heed, & round grey egheñ; roghly lokynge, & rede yn wreth; vysage rede bernynge, grete specche, neke somdel logh of þe sholdres, brest thyk, armes

uicio, *citra timorem* [*read tumorem*] *enormem & torporem omnem; moderata quadam immoderancia uentre peramplo. Erat enim cibo potuque modestus ac sobrius, & parsimonie quo-ad principi licuit, per omnia datus.*

[*Here a page and a quarter of the full text, Op. v. 302-3, is left out by Harl. 177, though our englisher gives a little of it'.*]

*Vrgentibus incomodis, nemo benignior: resumpta securitate, nemo rigidior. Acer in [in]-domitos; clemens in subactos; Durus in domesticos; diffusus in extraneos; largus in publico; parcus in priuato.*

<sup>1</sup> *Et ut hanc naturae injuriam industria reprimeret ac mitigaret . . . immoderata corpus vexatione torquebat . . . sibi nec pacem ullam nec requiem indulgebat. Venationi namque trans modestiam deditus, summo diluculo equo cursore transvectus, nunc saltus lustrans, nunc silvas penetrans, nunc montium juga transcens, dies ducebat inquietos: vespere vero domi receptum, vel ante coenam vel post, rarissime sedentem conspexeris. Post tantas namque fatigationes, totam statione continua curiam lassare consueverat.*

stalarthe, of fleshy body; & more of kynde than of glotony, grete of wombe; for he was, as to prynce belongeth, [of] mete, & of drynke ful meen & forberynge; . . . .

Whan any vnhappes hym befelle, noman meker; eftē whan he was yn sekernesse, no man sternef. Suert ayeyn the bold, meke wyth ham that wereñ vnder y-brought, hard amonge hys owne, & priuely large amonge vnkouth.

&, for to a-quenche that gretnesse, he put hymself to ful mych trauaylle, that wnneth he lete hys body haue eny reste, ether by day other by nyght; ffor, wynter & somer, he arose euer more yn the dawninge, & herd fyrst hys seruyce of holy chyrch; thef-afty, most what al þe day he wold ben out, other wyth houndes other wyth hawkes, for yn thay two thynges he delyted hym swyth mych wythal; & vnnethe he wold ryde any amblynge hors, bot myche trottyng hors, for to trauaylle hys body the more. Afty al hys trauaylle a-day, vnnethe he lete hys body haue a lytell reste for to syte to hys mete the whyle that he eete; & anoon aftyr mete, & namely aftyr sopper, anoon he wold aryse & stonde, & so dryue forth al þe meste parte of the nyght, so that al þe court was oft ennyede thef-of.

Quem semel exosum habuerat,  
uix in amorem; Quem semel  
amauerat, uix in odium reuocabat.

pe man that he ones hated,  
vnnethe he wold euer eft loue;  
& man that he ones loued,  
vnneth hē wold euer eft hate.

[Two-thirds of a page of the full text is here left out, on Henry's "extreme delight in falconry and hunting; his open violation of his marriage-vow; his untruthfulness; his dilatoriness in matters of justice; his simoniacal practises; his love of peace; his almsgiving, humility, &c."]

Humilitatis amator; nobilitatis oppressor, & superbie calculator.

& openly mekenesse & debonerte he louede; pryde & hauteynesse he hated, & wold brynge vnder fote.

[Nearly two pages of the full text are here left out, on Henry's "usurpations in things of God; his inattention to divine service; his seizures of the revenues of vacant churches; his treatment of his sons; his wonderful memory," &c., &c.—and Harl. 177 begins again with the final paragraph, of which it gives the first sentence, and the last six words.]

sed haec [h]actenus, nec preter rem tamen, cursim & breuiter hic delibasse sufficiat. [11 words of print left out.] ad nostram de cetero hiberniam reuertamur.

[not english.]

It is not my business to follow up this question of our

englisher's original. Dr. Bruce will, I hope, do that. I note only what I have just seen, that Mr. Dimock printed part of our Dublin MS., E. 2. 31, in five pages (on six) of his vol. v., pp. xciii-xcviii<sup>1</sup>, our pp. 2-10, to line 14, 'prince of wales'; and that from this part, he said (p. lxxvii) our MS. "seems rather a paraphrase of such portions of the treatise [*Expugnacio*] as the writer, no doubt an Anglo-Hibernian<sup>2</sup>, deemed most worthy the notice of Anglo-Hibernian readers"; while Prof. Earle held it "a truly interesting specimen of fifteenth century English" well worthy of publication.

Why didn't one of these excellent folk write to me about it at the time?

F. J. FURNIVALL.

MS. ROOM, BRITISH MUSEUM,  
28 September, 1893.

On the authority of Giraldus, Mr. Dimock comments on pages lxxx-lxxxii of his Preface, and thus concludes:

"Recent Irish scholars have quietly received Giraldus for what he is worth, as an impetuous, strongly biassed writer, whose statements have generally more or less of truth in them, but with much unfair one-sidedness. They have seen that his abuse is not confined to Ireland and the Irish, but is almost equally as fully lavished upon his own Wales and the Welsh; that, in fact, he has praise for scarcely any thing or body except himself and his near friends and relations. Some late Irish writers, under the reaction perhaps of his having been found too much fault with, seem to me to put more faith in Giraldus's history than it really deserves."

<sup>1</sup> His 'blethcher,' xcv/13, is the MS. 'blethelier,' 6/14 below; his 'foden,' xcvii/7 from foot, is the MS. 'fondene,' 8/28; his 'with,' xciv/19, is the MS. 'swith' very, 4/3 below; his 'onenth' (half), xcv/2, is the MS. 'euerich,' 4/16; his 'ichaushed,' xcv/23, is the MS. 'ibanshed,' 4/34 below; his 'inewed,' xcviii/17, is the MS. 'meued' moved, 10/12 below; and so on. The copier, Mr. J. P. Prendergast, didn't know his MS.

<sup>2</sup> And evidently a strong Churchman. See how he makes Henry II attend church-service daily 86/27, when Giraldus complains of his neglect of services. Other instances occur of like bits not in Giraldus.



## SAMPLE OF THE LATER MS.

F. 4. 4, Trinity College, Dublin, p. 7 (middle of page).

*For comparison with Chapter XIII of the other MSS.*

*pp. 30-35 below.*

When the kinge did knowe his entent, and whether he would goe, he gave him fully leve, and warned him not. but with such leave as he hadde, he dighte and made him ready the wynter, till the begininge of may, he sente before him into Irelande a knyghte that was called Reymonde le gras;—with him, tenn knyghts, and fortye Squiers, and fourescore bowemen;—a man full hardy, and well proved in weapon; Roberts nephewe, and Morices Eldeste brothers sone. They arryved at a place called Dondonuile, foure myle besouthe the hawen of Waterforde; and there they arreared a diche, and a feble castell upon, of yards and turues [? MS. iureus]. The men of Waterforde, and with them Malaughlyne Ofolane, they did understande that they had such Neighbourehedes which them lothed: they concluded that they would upon them, or enny more weare to them come. they assembled them together, well thre thowsande men, and wente over the water of sure, that partethe the twoe counties of leynester and of Mounester, and sett them in thre hosts, bouldely for to assaile the Englyshmen within there Castell. Reymonde and his men, thoughe they weare but fewe, they weare not fainte to fighte with uneven hosts, they assembled them together; But, as noe wonder was, soe fewe men mighte nat fighte againste soe many; theie turned them againe to there recepte. the other, thinkinge that they departed in discomfetur, they brake there sheldrun, and followed them: and they weare not fully within the gate, but some of them weare rather in [than] thenglyshe men. Reymonde sawe that he and his weare in greate perill, and upon pointe to losse there lyves. he cried to his fellowes, and turned worthely upon there foemen. and the firste that came in, he clave his hedde, and throwly killed him: all thoste

weare dyscomfitted, and toke them to flighte. The others them followed into all the plaine, and layde them one soe, that in litle while they slowe of them fyve hundreth and moe; and the moste parte of thother fell downe into the see from the hie roke, and drowne themselves. in this fighte, was a knyghte that heichte William fferande, that did over well, and above all other. he was a man that hade semblante as thoughe he weare one the much yuell; and therefore he put him-selfe whear the moste perill was; for [he] raughte not whether death came betwen him and his yuell, or it weare overmuch smitte [? MS. suirtte] upon him. here the pride of Waterforde fell; all there mighte went to noughte: herof came the Englyshe hoppe and comforte; and to the Iryshe, dredd and wanhop; for it was never therbefore harde, that, of soe fewe men, soe greate a slaughter was done. but unwise counsaile they did thereafter, that turned them to much crueltie; ffor when the Maystry was all thers, and all there foemen overcom, In the fighte weare taken well threscore men and tenn, that them had yelded, and weare the higheste and the richeste men of all the Cytty, such that theye mighte have had the Citty deliuered for them, or els asmuch Catell as they woulde desire. Henry of mountud, that to them was come, and Reymonde, upon diuerse domes stroven whate they shoulde doe with there prisoners; ffor Reymonde travailede aboute for to deliuer them, as a man of Rewthefull mode, and thus saide to his fellowes: "Lordings, whate is us beste to doe with oure wreched prisoners? I saye nat that one anoy manner one shoulde spare his foemen; but they be nat nowe oure foemene, but be men nat rebels, but in Battaile for to defende there county, overcome. me thinke they are nowe in such state, that we oughte better to have mercye of them, and gyve them lyfe,—for to gyve others example to be boxom,—then cruely to doe them to deathe, wheare-through others, ffor feare of mystruste, the lesse will yeld them to us." When Reymonde had these wourds saide, in all the folke was amoste none to graunte them lyfe; Arose up Henry amonge

them all, and this them saide: "I-noughe Remounde openly to us hath spoken of mercý and almosedede, <sup>1</sup>how vnked<sup>1</sup> landes are wonne; and not with slaughter and burneing. whether Alixandr and Julius Cesar, that weare lords of all the wourde, wonne lands bý such way, I woulde Reýmounde woulde me answere. when they came to us well arrayed for to fighte, yf theie had wone the overhande and overcome us, woulde they, for almose and for rewth, haue had mercý one us? noe, I trowe not. therefore, but those one of twoe wayes: eyther doe manly that thing whea[re]fore we bene come, and the folke that rebell againste us, with [out] any noyse, with weapone heartely bringe owt of dawes; otherwise, yf we shall doe almose-dede one them, and spare them, as Reymounde hath saide, lett us wend to oure shippes, and turne agayne; and lett we the wretched men houlde there lande, and Brouke it, without any challendge." Henries dome licked them better then Reymonds; and the Cittizens weare demed to death. They had noe wonte of waritrees; and therfore They ladd them to the clyffe of the see, and putt them downe, and drowned them.

of the firste goode adventure that him befell, they that beste weare worthye should haue there parte, and the hoste. all the towne of wexforde, with the twoe nexte countyes, he gave to Roberte Stephenson and to Moryce fitz Geraude, as forwarde was to-for made. other twoe nexte counties, he gaue to Henry of Mountmorthie,—nexte thay twoe, one the syde towarde waterforde,—a knyghte that came in that same flote, hym pridsome of knyghts, and came through thearle Richarde, more for to spye the land, then for to fighte.

<sup>1-1</sup> Afterwards written above the line in MS.

# THE ENGLISH CONQUEST OF IRELAND

FOUNDED ON THE *EXPUGNACIO HIBERNICA* OF  
GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS

---

A PARALLEL TEXT

FROM TWO MSS., I. AB. 1425 A.D. MS. TRIN. COLL., DUBLIN, E. 2. 31;

II. AB. 1440 A.D. MS. RAWLINSON B. 490, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD

# THE ENGLISH CONQUEST OF IRELAND

FOUNDED ON

## GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS.

(*MS. Trin. Coll., Dublin, E. 2. 31.*)

### [CHAPTER I.]

[Fol. 1 a.] **Y**N the tym that the kynges henry, þat was the kynges  
When fadyr Richard & the kynges fadyr Iohn, regned in englaund  
Henry II well, & <sup>1</sup> heighe mañ in Irland; þat het dermod Macmorgħ, princes  
reigned in of leynyster, that is I-told þe fifte parte of Irland. That dermod; 4  
England, Dermot from the tym that he was lord of lond; & foñ shold gouerne, he  
Dermot ruled over went amonge his heighe meñ, and so hard hañ biladde þat þay  
Leinster, A. D. 1135-71. casten grete hat to hym, and myche thay wax hym ageyn in  
His folk hated him; herth<sup>2</sup>, þegħ þey ne durst nat oppenly shewe. Whañ he hade 8  
[<sup>1</sup> &, an, a]. longe whiñ þus bilad' hym amonge his meñ, bettidde an aduenture  
[<sup>2</sup> heart]. that turnede hym þer-aftyr to mych harme; ffor in mythe was a  
but the kynges that hegħ Rowry, & a well fayr womman to wif; and as  
wife of meñ tellede oft, and soth it is I-found; that som of heme ben 12  
King Rory to vnstable of herth<sup>2</sup>, wher-throgh many harmes ben oper-whiñ,  
of Meath þat ne beñ nat now al to rekne. This Rouryes wif worthen  
loved him, to þe loue of Macmurgħ moþ þan hyr owñ lord; and he hir also,  
& this was longe; bot to-giddre ne myghtyñ þei nat com as 16  
the wold; for hit betid' a tym þat hir lord went owt of his contrey  
in-to fer londes, for grete nedes þat he hade to don. his wif  
a-waitede full well, & aspied þat hir lord most longe be owt of  
and sent a-lond; send' to Macmurgħ, & bade hym, þat if he euer wold his 20  
for him when Rory was away. will hawe of hir, that he shold com to hyr, for sho was redy  
He took her to Leinster, A. D. 1152, to do all þat hym likede. ¶ Macmorgħ name power with hym,  
and went thaþ this lady was; & as hit be-spoke was, he name  
hir, & broght hir out of myth into leynestir, and heñ hir that to 24

# OF THE CONQUESTE OF IRLAND BY ENGLYSH MËN.

(MS. Rawl. B. 490, Bodl. Libr.)

## [CHAPTER I.]

**I**N the tyme that Kyng Henry, that was the kynges Fadyr [Fol. 1 a.]  
Rychard and the kynges Fadyr Ihoñ, regned in England, Capitulum  
was an hey man in Irland, whos name was callyd Dermot Mac-  
murgħ, Prince of leynystre, that is y-tolde the fyfte Parte of Leinster  
Irlande. That Dermot, from the tyme that he was lorde of lond, and is a fifth  
folke sholde govern, he werret cruely amonge his hey men, part of and so  
harde hame lade, that thay castyn grete hate to hym, and so and mu-  
che they were ayennes hym in herte, theght they ne dvrste nat opynly  
shewe. Whan he hadd thus longe tyme lade hym amonge hys  
men, be-felle an aduenture that turned hym ther-aftyr to mych  
harne; For in myth was a kyng, whos name was Roury, and Tiernan  
hadd a wel fayre woman to wyffe; and as men tellyth ofte, and sith O'Rourke,  
hit is y-found, that some of them ben vnstabill of hert, wherfore king of  
many harmys ben ofte-tymes, that ben nat now all to reherse // Breifny.

This Rouries wyfe lowyd more Macmurgħ than hyr owyn lorde; 'Varium  
and he hyr also, and this was longe; but to-giddy ne myght they et mutabile  
not come as they wolde; for hit be-felle in a tyme, that hyr lord semper  
went out of his contrey into fere londys, for grete neddes that he femina'  
hadde to done. His wyfe be-thought hyr ful well, and, Supposynge (Virg. Aen.  
that hyr lord moste longe be out of londe, Sche sente to Mac- iv. 569).  
murgħ, and sayde to hym, that yf he euer wolde his wille haue of  
hyr, that he sholde cvme to hyr, for she was redy to do al that  
hym lykyd //

Macmurgħ toke wyth hym many men, and went there this lady A. D. 1152.  
was. and as hit was be-for spoke be-tweñ them both, he toke hyr O'Rourke's  
wyth hym out of myth into leynestere, and helde hyr there to hys wife  
off. carried

A.D. 1152. his will. Nat for-það sho grad and cried, as thogh he nam̄ hiŕ  
 and kept agaynes hiŕ will, as hit nas nat so. Than hir lord hit herde, he  
 her there. was theŕ-of tened swith stronge, and mych moŕ of the shamme  
 Rory and þat to hym̄ was doñ, þan of the harme; all that he mygth do, 4  
 his ally, he didde, for to awreke hym̄; he sent after his own̄ power̄,  
 the King ande eke all þat he myght of other; and the kyng of Connagth,  
 of Con- þat was that tym̄ lorde of Irland; com̄ to hym̄ with his power̄:  
 naught, he gadrede so moch folke (?) þat non̄ end̄ nas, and com̄ into 8  
 march into Leinster. leynestŕ for to wreke hym̄ of his shame. Tho Macmorḡ this  
 herd̄, he sent to his men̄ þat þay sholde hym̄ helppe ayeyñ his  
 fomen̄ þat þus weren̄ commynḡ toward hym̄. They bethoghten  
 Mac- ham̄ of the teñ & the trayson̄ þat they ham̄ hade ydoñ þer- 12  
 murgh's to-fore | and̄ forsoke, al out of dout, þat þay nogth woll hym̄  
 men refuse to help him; helps; and̄ many of ham̄ openly turned̄ to his fomen̄ ayeyns hym̄,  
 ffor to wreke ham̄ of the iniurie þat he ham̄ had̄ doñ. Macmorḡ.  
 saw þat power̄ hym̄ failed; & euerich half he was amyde his 16  
 fomen̄ beset. he was man̄ of hegh̄ hert; and with̄ þe litiñ power̄  
 þat he had̄, he werrede as lonḡ as he myght; bot he ne myght  
 nat all-way all-on̄ ayeyns all the lande folke | he was so narowe  
 bilad̄ þat nedes he most thoff deth, otheŕ þe lond̄ leue; he saw 20  
 þat non̄ oþer remedy was: he went to the see, and̄ fond̄ shippe  
 redy, and̄ wynde at will, & passede oure into england; with̄ well  
 so he sails to Eng- few with̄ hym̄; and̄ on this maner he sawit his lif, & lefte lond̄  
 land, A.D. & lede & all his otheŕ good. Hereby þat men̄ may witte, þat 24  
 1166, be a man̄ of neuŕ so mych power, bettre hym̄ is þat hys men̄ hym̄  
 loue þane hate. ¶ Whane Macmorḡ was thus icome in-to  
 england, al hys thought was how he myght hym̄ best worck of the  
 schame þat hyme was done, & of þat þat he was so vilich out of 28  
 hys kynd lond̄ I-dryue, he nyst of whom he myght bettre besech  
 [\*Fol.1b.] help þane of þe kyng. And þe kyng was þane fer in the  
 and then to France, realme of fraunce for grete nedes þat he hade to done. Macmorḡ  
 to ask passed ouer to hym. þe kyng fayr hym vndrefyng, \* & with̄ mych 32  
 Henry II's mane shipe. and whan had he tolde hyme the enchesoun of hys  
 aid. comynḡ to hym, and whar-for he was out of hys londe ibanshed,  
 þe kyng was swyth wo therfor, & good hert hadde hym to helpe,  
 naŕ oþer grete nedes þat he hade to donē. Whane he ne myght 36

wylle. And ther-fore she Cryed; and mad moche sorow and lemen- A. D. 1152.  
tacioñ, as thogh he toke hyr ayeynnes hir wyll: As hit was not So /

Than hyr lorde hit herd, he was ther-of full stronge a-greued; and O'Rourke  
mych more of the shame that to hym was don, than for the harme. is wroth at  
Al that he myght do, he dyd, forto be wroke on hym. he Sente the shame  
after his owyn men, and eke al that he myght of othyr; and the done him,  
kyng of Connaght, that In that tyme was lorde of Irlande, come to and  
hym wyth his Power. And he gaderid' so myche Pepyll, that they invades  
were vnnvmerable, Comynge Into leynystræ, forto be vengyd' of his Leinster.  
shame //

Tho Macmurgh her[de ther]of, he Sent to his men, that thay Mac-  
sholde hym helpe ayeynes his foe-men, that thus weryn comynge murgh's  
to-warde hym.

They bethoghten them of cruelte and the traysouñ that to ham  
he hadd' done therto-fore, And forsoke al out of dowte that thay  
wolde nocht hym helpe. And many of them opynly turned to his  
Ennemys ayeynes hym, ffor to wroke tham of the Iniury that he  
to them hadd done //

Macmurgh sawe that his men failed' hym; and on Euche halwe men fail  
he was amyd' his ennemys besegyde. He was a man of hey herte; him,  
and wyth the fewe Pepill that he hadd; he werrid' as longe as he  
myght; but he ne \* myght not alway dure ayennes the Londe folke. [\*Fol.1b.]  
He was so narow bylade, that nedys he mvste suffyr deth, or the  
londe leue. he saw that non othyr remedy was. He went to the  
see, and fovnde shippe redy, and wynde at wyll, and passyd' owyr so he  
into England; *with* wel fewe *with* hym; and on this maner he sauyd' crosses to  
his lyfe, and lefte lond and lede, and al othyr good' // Here-by men England,  
may witte that, be a man̄ neuer of so mych Powere, bettyr hit is to A. D. 1166,  
hym, that his men hym loue, than hate // Whan Macmurgh was  
thus y-come Into England; al his thought was, how he myght hym  
best wreke of the shame that hym was y-doñ, and of that that he  
was so shamfully out of his kynde londe I-dryue. He wyst not of  
whom̄ he myght bettyr beseke helpe *and* sokovre, than of the  
kyng. And the kyng was then fer in the reame of Fraunce, for and then  
gret nedys that he hadd' to doñ. Macmurgh passyd' ouer to hym. to France,  
the kyng fayre hym vndyrfonge, *and with* mych vyrchipp. And where  
when he hadde tolde hym the cause of hys comynge to hym, *and* Hen. II  
the cause where-for he was out of his Land y-baneshyd; the kyng welcomes  
was sory therfor, *and* good-will hym hadd' to helpe, nere othyr grete him.  
nedys that he hadde to don. Whan he ne myght nat ellis do, he



A. D.  
1165-7.

Henry  
appeals to  
his sub-  
jects to  
help Mac-  
murgh,

who  
returns to  
Bristol,

and agrees  
to give  
his  
daughter  
and Lein-  
ster to  
Earl  
Strugoill,  
in return  
for aid.

Macmurgh  
goes to  
South  
Wales,  
A. D. 1167,

where Rys  
is prince.

nat elles do, he name of hym homage, & othes, & lete hyme mak  
hys lettres, that thus mych ben to vndrestond: 'Henry, throgħ  
gode-is grace kyng of englund, duc of normandy & of Acquitayne,  
& erl of angoy, to al hys liegemen, englyssh, normannes, Walshe, 4  
Scottes, and to al oþer that to hym ben subiect, sendeth gretynge.  
Whan þese lettres to yow ben i-com̄, witte ye þat we, dermot,  
þrince of leynester, in oūr grace and in oūr goode will hawe  
receyuet; wharfore þat all þay that hym̄ as oūr lawfull mañ 8  
hett[pe] willeth, into his lond' hym̄ to restore, oūr grace and oūr goode  
leue haue þay þer-to.' Whan̄ Macmorgħ had the kynges lettres  
thus y-purchasede—þe kyng hym̄ yaf also richely þat hym̄ nedet  
of his tresoūr—he nam̄ leue of the kyng, & wentt in-to englund 12  
& com̄ to Bristol, & soiourned̄ thar̄ a whiit; & so mych the  
bletheliēr, for þer com̄ oft shippes theder out of Irland, & men̄,  
þat he myght hīr tythyng of the lond' & of his folkis, for his hert  
was mych there-to. The whiit þat he ther̄ was, well oft he let rede 16  
þe kynges wrytte to-for the peple; & largely he beheght londes and  
rentes, & Rich yiftes, if any wer that hym̄ helpe wold. Bot he ne  
fond' noon̄ with-all, that such tyng wolde ne durst vndirtake,  
till þat the erle of Strugoill, Richard þe Erles son̄ Gilbert, com̄ 20  
to hym̄. Ther was þe parlement so longe y-dryue betwē ham̄,  
& sekiritesse y-makyd, þat the Erle shold' hym̄ helpe with all  
his power̄ þe next somer þer-after, and he shold yeue þe Erle  
his doghtre, with all þe lond' of leynestre. ¶ Whans this was on 24  
this maner ypu[rueied, for the grete] talent þat Macmorogħ had'  
to beñ neer̄ his lond'—as mañ tynke [no place so<sup>1</sup>] mery lyghtly, as  
in his kynd' stidde,—he went hym̄ thennes in-to south walys, to  
seynt dauyes toun, vp-on̄ þe see; & mych hit gladet his hert, 28  
thogh̄ he strongly mourned; þat he myght in faȳr weder haue  
somedell syght of his lond'.

¶ In that tym̄ was prince in wales, Rys, Gryffynes son̄, onþer<sup>2</sup>  
the kyng of england; & a swith good mañ bisshophe of seynt 32  
dauy, and was his nam̄, 'ahon dauy'; & both þe prince & eke þe

<sup>1</sup> Dermitius, desiderio visendae patriae plurimum accensus, eaque dulcedine,  
qua natale solum cunctos ducere solet, amplius allectus.—Gir. Camb., *Expug-*  
*natio Hibernica*, cap. ii, *Op.* v. 228, Rolls Series.

<sup>2</sup> under.

toke of hym homage *and* othis, *and* lette hym make his letteres, A. D. 1166-7.  
 that thus myche bene to vndyrstond' // 'Henry, throw goddys  
 grace, kyng of England, Duke of Normandy and of acoqytanye, The Kyngys letteres  
*and* Erle of angoy, to al his lege men, Englyssh, normannes, Walshe,  
 Scotas, and to al othyr that to hym ben subiecte / Sendyth gretynge.  
 Whan this *lettres* ben to yow y-come, witte ye that we, Dermot in favour of Murrough,  
 Prince of Leynystre, in oure grace *and* in oure goode-wyll, haue  
 receuet; wherfor that al thay that hym / as oure lafull man he[l]pe  
 will, Into his londe hym to restore, oure grace and oure good-wyll  
 haue they therto' // 'When Macmurgħ hadd' the kynges Letteres  
 thus y-Purchasyd; (the kyng hym yafe also rychely, that hym nedyd'  
 of his tresoure,) He toke Leue at the kyng, *and* went into England; who comes back to England,  
*and* come to Brystow, *and* soyorned' ther awhyle; *and* myche radyr,  
 for ther come oft shippis thedyr out of Irland; *and* men, that he  
 myght hyr thythyng of the Londe *and* of his Pepyll; for his hert  
 was mych therto // The whyle that he there was, well oft he made  
 to be redd' the kynges *lettres* to-for the Pepyll; and largely he  
 promysyd' londys, and rentis, *and* othyr ryche yeftys, to them that  
 hym wolde he[l]pe. But he ne found' none, wyth al that; that Suche  
 thyng wolde ne druste vndyrtake, tyll that the Erle of Strugoill, and is promist help by Richard, Earl of Striguil.  
 Richarde, the Erlis Sonne Gylbert<sup>1</sup>, come to hym. Ther was the  
 Parlement<sup>2</sup> so longe y-dryue be-twen ham, and'sekyrnesse y-makyd;  
 that the Erle sholde hym helpe *wit* al his Powerz the nexte  
 somere ther-aftyr, And he sholde yeue the Erle his doghtyr, *wit*  
 al the lond' of leynystre // Whan this was on this maner purueyed<sup>3</sup>,  
 For grete affeccion that Macmurgħ had' to ben neere his londe, (as  
 man thynkyth no Place so Myrry lyghtly as in his Kynd' \* Place,) [\*Fol. 2a.]  
 he went fro thens Into Sutte Walis, to Seynt Daues toun vp-on  
 the see; *and* mych hit gladdyd' his herte, thegh he strongly mornyd;  
 that he myght in fayre weddyr haue somdel Syght of his lond' /  
 In that tyme was prynce in walis, Rys, Gryfynes Sonne, vndyr  
 the kyng of England; And a wyrshipphul man, Bishope of Seynte  
 Dauby, *and* also his name was dauby<sup>4</sup>. And' both the Prince *and* also

<sup>1</sup> Camden adds 'dictus Strengbow, fortis arcus.'—D.<sup>2</sup> Colloquium.<sup>3</sup> His itaque seriatim hoc ordine completis.<sup>4</sup> Davidque secundo

Meneviae praesidente.

A.D. 1167. bisshoþ well wýrshipfully vndrefýnge Macmorgh, & mych reut had of his enemyte, & of his mych lostes, & of þe mych shamme þat hym was i-doñe.

## [CHAPTER II.]

Rys has in prison a Sir Robert Fitz-stephen, ones Constable of South Wales.

**I**n the tyme þat this was so, was in prison with þe prince of wales, a knyght þat heght Robert Stefenes-son, þat som tyme had y-be constable of all south walys, & many il turnes had idoñe vpon þe princes men whan þay any thyng mysdedeñ; & progh traisoñ of his owne men he was I-take & delyuered to the prince; & þre yer he was I-hold in prisonne ar Macmorgh theder cam. Oft þe prince hym profred to delyuer hym out of prison, so þat he wold be his helpe to werry vp-on þe kyng; bot Robert was a trew man, & for no tyng wold do thyng wher-of he myght be per-after I-wyted of wntrowth. Than—progh

[\*Fol. 2 a.]

He sets Robert free, on condition that he and his half-brother Maurice Fitz-gerald help Macmurch.

[<sup>1</sup> MS. kyng.]

Macmurch sails to Ireland, and winters at ferna.

besechyng of \* þe bisshope & of Moryce fitz-Geraud, þat men Robertes two brethereñ on his moþer half,—he was delyuered out of prison on this manere: þat he & Morice his brother shold, þe next somer, wend in-to Irland, with ar power to helpe Macmorgh; & he shold hym yeue þe toñ of weysford, with þe twey next cantredes; & of this was good sekernes Imaked on ether half. ¶ Whan this thyng<sup>1</sup> was all thus bespokene, Macmorgh ne myght no lenger suffre þat he ne most to his land wend, thegh he ne fond nat þe aduentures þat he soght, such as hyme lif wer, ne non other power he ne broght with hym than he out ladde. He had shippe redy, and good wynd, and passed ouer in-to Irland; & boldly aryued in lond þer he had many fomen and fewe frendes. from þe see he went to fernes; and well simply he lyued per all þe wynty with the Clergie of þe chirch, wiche well fayr hym vndrefyng, and by hare power to hym & to his, fondeñ þat hame was nede.

## [CHAPTER III.]

A.D. 1169.

Fitz-stephen collects

30 knyghts, 60 squires, and 300 foot-men

**V**nder that tyme, Robert Steunes-son hym dyght to wend in-to Irland, as a man þat on all maner wold hold lawfully his trowth and his behest. he hade purueied hym of xxx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes and lx skyers, & ccc of foot-men with bowes and arrowes; and knyghtes and þe skyers well I-horsed and well y-wepened; all of his owne kyne and of his owne nurtur. Thay

the Byshope wel wyrchippully vndyrfonge Macmurgh, and myche A.D. 1167.  
Pite hadd of his Enemyte and of his mych Lostys, And of the mych  
shame that hym was done.

## [CHAPTER II.]

**I**N the tyme that this was so, was in Prisonne wyth the Prince Capitulum 2<sup>m</sup>.  
of Walys, a knyght, whos Name was Robert Steues-Sonne, Es tempe-  
that sometyme hadd y-be constabill of al Sutte Walis, and many tate Rober-  
yll tvrnys hadd y-doñe vp-on the Princes men, when thay eny tus filius  
thyng mysdedyn; and throug traysoun of his owyn men, he was Stephani,  
y-take and delyuerid to the Prince. And thre yere he was holde qui apud  
in prison, are Macmurgh thedyr come. Oft the Prince hym Aberteivi,  
proferyd to delyuer hym out of pryson, So that he wolde be his Keretice  
helpe to wer vp-on the kyng; but Robert was a trew man, and for regionis  
nothyng wold do thyng wher-of he myght be ther-aftyr reprovid caput, &c.  
of vntrowth //

Than,—throug be-sechyng of the Byshope and of Moryce fize- Interveni-  
Geraud; that weryn Robertys two bretheryn on his Modyr syde,—he entibus  
was delyueryd out of Pryson on this manere: That he and Morice igitur  
his brodyr sholde, the nexte Somyr, wende Into Irland; with har ejusdem  
Powere, to helpe Macmurgh; and he sholde hym yeue the touz of fratribus,  
weysford; with the twey nexte cantredes: and of this was good &c.  
swrte y-fondyd on euery syde. / Whan this was al thus Spokyn,  
Macmurgh myght not lengyr Suffyr that he ne mvste to his Lond  
wende, thegh he ne found nat the aduentures that he Soght, suche  
as hym lykyd; ne none othyr Powere he ne broght wyth hym, than  
he out-ladd: / he had shipe redy, and good wynd, and Passyd ouer A clero  
into Irland, and boldely arryued in londe ther-as he hadd many loci illius  
Enemys and few frendys. / From the see he went to Fernys; and honorifice  
wel sympylly he lyued there al the wynty, with the Clergy of the juxta  
chyrche, whych wel fayre hym vndyrfonge, and by har Power to hym modulum  
and to his, foundyn that ham was nede. facultatis  
exhibitus,  
&c.

## [CHAPTER III.]

A.D. 1169.

**V**Nder that tyme, Robert Steues-Sonne hym dyght to wende Capitulum 3<sup>m</sup>.  
Into Irland, as a man that on al maner wolde holde lawfully Nec pro-  
his throuth, and his behest. He had Purveyed hym of xxxii mmissionis  
knyghtes and lx Squyeris, and ccc of fote-men with bowes and immemor,  
arowes; And the knyghtis and the Squyris wel y-horsyd and wel nec fidei  
wepenyd; al of his owyn kynd and his owyn nurture. Thay dyddyn contemp-  
tor, &c.

and lands at Banow, c. May 1, 1169. didden hame to saith att send dauyes, and aryueden at Banow in Irlaund, weh vnsikere on euery halfe. thay vncharged hare shippes, & made ham loges on lond. Thane was fulfilled a prophecie pat merlyd seid of this commynge: "A knyght with party armes shall formost breke þe clos of Irland." Such armes bare pat Robert. he send son to Dermod Macmorgħ, and didde hym to witt of his commynge; and þe thedyng spronge fort son into all þe lond; what folke was to hym Icom. and of þo that to-for hym hade I-left, and litiht told by hym, commyn son to hym, so pat he had I-gadered fywe hundred men. he wentt witt this folk to þe Englysse-men; and [when] pay com to-gedd, euery of ham was the gladder for other. Ther was the forward meued bethweh ham, and othes y-swo, and sekernesse I-made to conferme all þe forward, as hit there-by-for was purueid by-for the prince of wales.

## [CHAPTER IV.]

and march to Wexford, about twelve miles from Banow. **W**han this sekernesse was thus y-maked, þese twey maner folkes, with oon witt, and with oon hert, with Baners i-lacet, nam the wey toward weysford. The men of þe self ton werend ywar of har commynge, and tok ham to rede—for þe tother werend so few, & day so many—that pay wold figth with ham in þe pleyns felde. They cam owt of the ton arraied on har maner; bot whan pay sawe the Englysmen, with hors I-helled with yren harnes, ham-self weh I-wepned with haubergeons, and Bright helmes and sheldes, wich the sawe neuer þer-to-for, they toke a-nother rede, and turned ayein to ton; & all þat was with-owt þe walles, thay sett a-fyr and brent, & redied ham to hold ham with-yne the wallys with streynthe. Robert with his men went strongly for to assayn to ton, & sette the bowmen for to wer the fight of the kernels, and turned the wepned men to fill þe \*diches. thay with-yn defendet ham stalwarthly with stonnes and stakes, wher-of they wer I-warned, and wer many I-hurt whit-yn and eke with-out, so that thay with-out mosten nedes leue of the assault, & withdraw ham. Among ham was a yong knyght pat het Robert de Barry, pat drogh yong blodes hete, and for hys stalwardnes, reght nat of his lif: as he wold with þe formoste Barri has a passe ouer the wall, he hent a dynt with a greth stone vpon þe

ham to sayle at Seynt Dauyes, and londyd' at the Banow in Irland, A.D. 1169.  
 wel vnsykyr on euery syde. thay vnchargid' har shippis, *and* made  
 ham logis on londe \*. Than was fulfillid' a prophesy that Merlyn [\*Fol. 2 b.]  
 seyde of this comynge: 'A knygh[t] *with* Party armys shall formyst Party per  
 breke the clos of Irland.' Such armys bare that Robert. He sent pale gules  
 sone to Dermot Macmurgħ, and didde hym to vndyrstand' of his & ermyn  
 comynge; And thythyngis spronge forth sone Into al the londe, what a saltyer  
 Pepill was to hym. coñe. And many of them that to-forð hym contre-  
 hadd' forsake and lefte, *and* lytill seett by hym, comen sone to hym, Miles  
 So that he hadd' gaderid' v. C. men. / He went *with* this pepyll, bipartitus  
 the Englysh men; And when thay come to-geddre, euery of them armis,  
 was the gladdyr for othyr / Ther were the for-sayde conontis Hibernie  
 reheryd' *and* mevid' betwen tham, and othis sworn, *and* sekyrnesse claustra  
 made, to conferme all the forsayde, as hit was ther-to-fore Purveyed primus  
 be-fore the Prince of Walys. irrupet.

## [CHAPTER IV.]

**W**HAN this sekyrnyssse was thus madd', this two maner *Capitulum*  
 Pepyll, wyth on wyll, and *with* ooñ herte, *with* baners <sup>4<sup>m</sup></sup>.  
 lacyd', toke ther wey towards weysford. The men of the toun  
 weryn y-ware of thare comynge, *and* toke them to consayll,—for the  
 othyr weryn so few, and thay so many,—that thay wolde figh[t] *with*  
 ham in the Playn felde. They come out of the toun arrayed  
 on ther maner; but when they sawe the Englysh men, *with* hors *equestrem*  
 y-hellyd' *with* Iryn harneys, ham-Selfe wel wepenyd' *with* hauber- *turmam*  
 geons, and bryght Salletis and sheldys, whych thay sawe neuer *loricis et*  
 there-to-forð, thay toke anothis consayll, *and* turned' ayayn to *clipeis*  
 toun; and al that was *with*-out the wallis, thay sette afyre *and* *fulgenti-*  
 brente; *and* arrayed tham to kepe ham *with*-In the wallis *with* *bus in-*  
 Streynth. Robert, wyth his men, went Strongly to assaylle the *signem . . .*  
 toun, *and* sette the bowmen forto were the fyght of the *propugna-*  
 cornelis, *and* turned' the wepenyd' men to fill the dichis. thay *cula vero*  
 wythin defendyd' ham boldly *with* Stones and Stakys, wher-of *sagittariis*  
 they were y-warnyd', [. . . .] and mosten nedis lewe the assaute, *and* *eminus*  
 wythdrawe ham / Amonge ham was a yong knyght / whos name *observanti-*  
 was Robert de Barry, that, through yonge blodis hette, *and* for his *bus . . .*  
 boldnys, roght not to lesse the lyfe / As he wolde wyth the fryst *juvenili*  
 Passe ouer the walle, he hadd' a stroke *with* a grette stōne vp-on *insultans*  
*calore . . .*

A. D. 1169. heued' al *with* the helme, þat he fel doum yn the ground' of þe narrow ditch; & vnnethes he was I-draw vp through his felowes, þat mych escape. put har lyf in aduentur for to saw his lif. The cry was weif gret on euery syde, for this knyght þat thus was I-hurt. Thay 4 *with*-drow ham fro the wallys and wenten ham to þe strond'; and

The assail-ants of the town burn the ships they find on the strand. all þe shippes þat þay þer fond, thay settene a-fyre. And .O. shippe þer was, that was I-com̄ owt of Brittainy aftyr cheffa, and was y-charget *with* whet & *with* wyne, and lay I-ancred in the 8 hauene: the best parte of the englismen wenten *with* bottes and toke his shippe. þe shippmen werne many, and saw that þer weren bot a few englys in the shippe, & the wynd was of þe lond'; thay cutte the cable of the ankre, and þe wynd bare the shippe 12 in toward' the see: her fellowes saw this, and wenten after *with* bottys; and vnnethes *with* rowyng, and *with* gret peril of all har lyues, þay come ayeyn to lond. Macmorḡ saw this, & weren sore amaied, for thay wend' neuer more þat on [of] ham shold' haw 16 com̄ to lond' a-lyue. The assaut was I-left all þat day. A-morowe, whan masse was I-herd', al þe host þay wentene to the assaut wislyere and warliere þan thay didden the day befor, and strusten as weif to sleght as to streynth. The men of the tōn sawe ham 20 commyng, and wer right soþ aferd' that day shold nat withstond the assaute, and vndrestonden al-so that *with* wrong day holden ayayn her lord'; thay tok ham to red, and besoghten pees; & drogh be-æchynge of twe bissoppes, that þat t̄m weren *with*-yn 24 the toun, and other possible men al-so *with* ham, thay yolden ham al to Macmor[gh]; and four hostages, the best þat he wold' chese, delyuered to hym for the pees, and trywly *with* hym for to hold' frome þat t̄m forward, as har kyndly lord. Macmorḡ, 28 as wise & war, ffor-thy that he wold' that þe out-commyn men shold' haw the better hert, and wiif, hym for to serue, he bethoght þat, of the fyrst good aduentur þat hym was befall, þay that best weren worthy shold' hawe har parte, and þe host. Al þe 32 ton of weysford, *with* twey cantredes aller-next, he yaf to Robert, steuene sone, and to Morice fitz-Geraud, as forward' was to-for maked; othere thwey cantredes he yaf heruy of Mountmorthy,— neigest thay tweyn on the syd toward Waterford,—a knyght þat 36

Macmurch gives grants of land to Maurice Fitzgerald and Hervey of Mountmaurice.

the hedde al *with* the Sallet, that he fell doun to the grovnde of the dyche ; *and* vnnethis he was vp-rerid' through his fellowys, that myche Put har lyfe in aduventure forto sawe his lyfe. The cry was well grette on euery syde, for this knyght that thus was y-hurte. Thay wythdrow ham all from the wallis, *and* wenten to the stronde ; *and* al the Chippis that they ther found, thay setten afyre. And oo shippe ther was, that was y-come out of Brytayn aftyr cheffare, *and* was y-chargid' *with* whete and *with* wynes, *and* lay y-anced' in the Havyn. The beste Parte of the Englysh men wenten wyth botis, *and* toke this shippe : the Chippmen weryn many, *and* saw that ther weryn but a fewe Englysh men in the shippe, *and* the wynd was on the londe syde ; thay cvtte the Cabyls of the ancre, *and* the wynd bare the Chippe to-ward the see. Her Fellowys sawe this, *and* wentyn<sup>1</sup> aftyr wyth botis ; *and* vnnethe *with* rowyng, *and* wyth grette Perill of al there lyues, they come ayeyn to lond. Macmurgh saw this, *and* was sore aferde, for they wende neuer \* more that one of Ham sholde haue come to Londe a-Lyue. The assaute Was Lefte al that day. A-morrow, whan masse was herd, al the Oste the[n] wenten to the assaute wyslyer and waryr than thay diddyn the day to-fore, and trusten as well to sleght as to streynth. The men of the toun saw ham comynge, *and* were ryght sore aferde that thay ne sholde not wythstonde the assaut, *and* vndyrstodyñ also that *with* wronge thay heldyn ayeyñ her lorde. thay toke ham to consayll, and besoghten Pees ; and, through besechynge of two Bisshopis that that tyme weryn wythin the toun, *and* othir Pesibbill men also *with* ham, thay yoldyn ham al to Macmurgh ; and foure Hostagis, the beste that he wolde chese, delyuerid' to hym for the Pees, *and* trewely wyth hym forto holde from that tyme forward, for har trew Lorde / Macmurgh, as wysse and ware, For cause that he wolde that the strangeres sholde haue the bettyr hert *and* will, hym forto serwe, he bethoght hym that, of the fryste good' aduventure that to hym was fall, thay that best weryn worthy, they sholde haue there Parte, and the hegheste. All the toun of weysford, *with* twey cantredes alther-nexzte, he yafe to Robert Steuenes-sonne *and* to Moryce fiz-Geraud, as the Promes to-for was made / othyr twey cantredes he yafe Heruey of Montmvrthy,—nexe to thay two on the

A.D. 1169.

A Breton ship with wheat and wine is taken by English sailors.

The French cut their cables and set sail ; but the English are rescued.

[<sup>1</sup> wentyn, MS.]

[\*Fol. 3a.]

The allies march to assault Wexford again ;

but it is yielded to them.

It is given to Fitz-Stephen and Fitz-Gerald.



A. D. 1169. com̄ in that same \* flote, hym þriddesum of knyghtes, and com̄ [\*Fol. 3 a.] progh̄ the Erle Richard, more for to spye the lond' than to fight.

## [CHAPTER V.]

The united forces invade Ossory, to the prince of which country Macmurgh was a bitter enemy.

When this was thus I-don al after har will, they tok with hame the folk of weysford; and wenten ham̄ toward' Ossery, with 4 ferd' as myght by tre thousand meñ; and was than prince of Ossory, Maedonenild; a mān þat was Macmorogh swith loth and all his meñ, for mych̄ shame that thay had hym i-do. At þe begynnyng, as thay com̄ in-to the contrey, in narrow weys drogh̄ 8 woddes and' mores, thay fonden the meñ of the contrey stalwarth for to defend' har lond'; & mych̄ tene ham̄ didde, ar that day myght [take] the pleyne; and' eke into the pleyn thay folwed' ham̄ full fresly. the horsmañ saw this, and' turned manly vp-on ham, & 12 anoon slown right many of ham̄, & discomfited' ham̄ euerychone.

They defeat him, And' thay þat þe horsmeñ kest to ground' with speres and' with swerdes, þe yrisshe fotemeñ smotene of the hedges. Whan þe slaght was all I-do, and' har enymjes all ouer-comen, thay 16 broghten well ccc heudes<sup>2</sup>, and kesten at Macmorogh feet. he be-held' ham̄, & tried euery of ham̄ by ham̄-self, for to know hame, & hild' vp his handes and' tanked' god almyghty ful Inwardly.

and Macmurgh triumphs in a brutal way. Oon hede ther was, a-monge þe other, of a man that he ouer-dede 20 and' mych̄ hated; he name hit be the heeþ and' by the eers, and' with girslich bit, as no mañ ne oweth to done; with his teeth he karue of his nose and' both lippes. There-after þej wenten forther into the contrey, slown, robeden, and branden full manly 24 al þat hame withstonden, in-to the tym the prince of Ossory, by consaill of his meñ, send' to ham̄, & be-soght pees: the pees was graunted' whan he hit bysoght, vp-on good ostages, and' othes I-sweþ, þat he, to his lord' Macmorogh, shold' be trew, and' trowth 28 hold; trywly serue fro that tyme forward. in these fightes as in many othere, thogh̄ that in the englishe host noon weþ bot good and stalward, Robert þe Bar̄ and Meiler fiz-henry weren thay that best deden. Thay weren both jong knyghtes, and Robert 32 Steuenes-sonnes neues; the oon his brother sone, the other his susteres sone; of diuerse maners, both<sup>3</sup> of hardnes & of stalworthnes

<sup>1</sup> a small w is inside the V.<sup>2</sup> heuedes, heads.<sup>3</sup> but.

syde toward watyrford<sup>1</sup>,—a knyght that come in that same flitte, A.D. 1169. hym thyrdesum of knyghtes, and come throughe the Erle Rycharde, <sup>1 mari con-</sup> more forto spy the londe than to fyght. <sup>terminos.</sup>

## [CHAPTER V.]

**W**han this was thus don al aftyr har will, thay toke with <sup>Capitulum</sup> tham the Pepill of weysford, and wenten ham to-ward Ossory, <sup>v<sup>m</sup>.</sup> with oste as myght be by thre Mt. men<sup>2</sup>. And was than Prince of Ossory, Macdonenyld, a man that was myche be-hatyde of <sup>[<sup>2</sup> cum exercitu virorum quasi trium milium.]</sup> Macmurgh, for myche shame that thay hadd hym donne. At the begynnyng, as thay come into the contrey, in narrow weyes throughe woddis and mores, thay foundyn the men of the contrey bolde forto defende har londe; and mych sorrow ham didde, ar thay mygh[t] take the Playne: and when thay come to the Playne, thay folwid ham ful fresly. the hors-men saw this, and turned boldely vp-on ham, and anoone slowyn rygh[t] many of ham, and dys-comfited ham euerychoon. And thay that the hors-men keste to ground wyth Sperry and wyth Swerdis, the Iryssh footte-men Smoten of <sup>300 heads of foes are brought to</sup> the hedis. Whan the slaght was al y-do, and har ennemys al <sup>Mac-</sup> ouer-come, thay broghten wel ccc. hedis, and kesten at Macmurgh <sup>murgh.</sup> is fete. he behyde ham, and tvrned euery of tham<sup>3</sup> by hym-Selfe <sup>[<sup>3</sup> than, MS.]</sup> forto know tham, and hilde vp his handis, and thankyd almyghty god ful Inwardly. Oone hede ther was, amonge the othyr, of a man that he gretly dreddid and myche hatid; he toke hit by the heeres <sup>He bites off the nose and lips of one.</sup> and by the Ers, and grymly hit bitte, as no man sholde haue down; wyth his tethe he kutte of his nose and bothe lippis. Ther-aftyr <sup>His men kill, rob, and slay, till Mac-</sup> they wenten fourdyr Into the contrey, kildyn, robodyn and brandyn <sup>donough</sup> ful boldely al that ham wythstodyn, into the tyme the Prynce of <sup>sues for</sup> ossory, by consaylle of his men, sent to ham, and besoght Pees. the <sup>peace.</sup> Pees was graunted whan he hit be-soght, vp-on good Ostagis, and <sup>[\*Fol.3 b.]</sup> othis y-Sworne, \* that he, to His Lord Macmurgh, shold be trewe, and trowth Hold, and trewely Serwe fro that tyme forth. In this fyghtes as in many othyr, thought that in the Englysh hoste noone were but good and bolde, Robert de Barry and Meyler fiz-henry weryn thay that best diddyn: they wer both yong knyghtes, and Robert Steuenes-sones emys<sup>4</sup> both, the one his brodyr sonne, the <sup><sup>4</sup> nevens, nepotes.</sup> othyr his Systyr Sonne; Of dyuers maners, but of hardynes and

A. D. 1169. mostdele al I-lych; ffor Meyler was a mañ that ouer mych desyred to be I-preisede, and þat meñ sholden mych speke of his stalwardnes, and preisen hym. Robert was kyndlye, hardy, [\*Fol. 3 b.] & stalwarde, \* and euer with the forthmost in euery fight and 4 in euery peril, bot he hatode notyngge so mych as that me shold speke of his stalwardnes, ne hyme preiese. The whill the host was thus in Ossory, befel þat þay weren a nyght I-loget in an old castell, & aboute; and these tweyn, as haʒ wone was, 8 weren botli I-hosted to-gedderes: ffeʒ with-yn nyght come an host vp-on ham, of so mych folk as thegh hit were fele thousand; on euery side smytyngge vp the host as they wolden in wode raas ferly ouersaill hame, al, with wepne ryngyngge, speres and 12 sparthes ruthlyngge to-geddre, with cryngge so gryslý that noon ende was of helf faʒ, as 1 hoft-sithes was wonet to be-fall in ostynges in Irland; of whiche frightnes the most parte of the oste was so aferd; that þay flowe 2 and hidden ham, some in wodnes, som in 16 mores. These twey stalward meñ henten haʒ wepene, & lep to hors, and wenten a-noon to Robertes tentes, (Steuenes sone,) and cryed vp-on haʒ felowes þat day sholden withstond; and tak hert to hame, and defend ham-self; bot few ther weʒ that so diden, 20 til they saw that this crie and þe noise was all I-left, & nas bot fantasy. Whan the host hem gaddred ayaʒn to-geddre, thay weʒ full soʒ ashamet that thay so argly put ham to f[l]ight, and mych speche was amonge ham, and many, hadden gret enuy, and 24 mych wonder toght of Robert de barr, that whan the host was in so gret frightnes, he was that mañ þat stydfastly most hym held, and most hym entised for to withstond and fight; and amonge all the goode thewes that in hym weren, þis inamliche is 28 i-told of hym, that for no violence ne ferly aduentur þat hym myght betid, he was neuer whan-hopefully argh, ne aferd, ne amayed of hert, ne shamefully ne didde hym to flight, bot euer moʒ he was I-lich redy to weppen and to defend hym-self, and 32 to helpen all oper; he the formost knyght that in this conqueste of Irland first receyued dynt and hurtýng in battaill. A wonder was of that fantasye: A-morowe whan hit was day, I the place, ther this folk I-seye smyten vp-on hame, the wedes and the grase 36

A phantom army at night creates terror among the English;

[1 MS. host.]

[2 MS. slowe.]  
but Meiler and de Barri manfully withstand the panic.

J Character of Robert de Barri.

boldnys mostdele al y-lyke. For Meyler was a mañ that gretly A.D. 1169.  
 desyryd' to be Praysid'; and that men shold myche Speke of his  
 boldnys, and Preysyn hym. / Robert was kyndly, hardy and bold;  
*and euer with the fryst in euery fyght / and in euery Perill ; but* nec  
 laudis  
 exactor,  
 he hatyd' nothyng so myche as that a man sholde speke of his  
 boldnys, ne hym Preyse. / The whyll the hoste was thus in Ossory, nec aurae  
 popularis  
 aucupator.  
 befell that thay weryn a-nyght y-logid' in an olde castell, *and* aboute.  
 And thus two, as they wer wonyd; weryn in one Plase to-gedderis.  
 Fer *with*-in nyght, come an hoste vp-on ham of so mych Pepill, as A phantom  
 host  
 they wer many thowsandis, on euery syde Smytyng vp the hoste, [tanquam  
 in impetu  
 furoris  
 as they woldyn, in wode raas, fersly ouersayle hame al, wyth wepyñ  
 ryngyng, Speris *and* sparris rutlyng to-giddy, wyth cryng so sus cuncta  
 devoran-  
 tium]  
 grymly, that none ende was Of elf fare, as ofte-tymes was wonet to  
 befall in hostyngis in Irland<sup>1</sup>. Of whych ferde, the moste Parte of frightens  
 the  
 the Oste was so a-dred; that they flow and hiddyn ham ; somme in  
 woddis, some in mores / This two bolde men token har wepyn, *and* English-  
 men, who  
 run and  
 hide ;  
 lepe to hors, *and* wentyn anone to Robert Steuenes-sonne, and cried  
 on har fellowis that ' they sholdyn wytstond; *and* take herte to hame,  
 and defende ham-Selfe ;' but fewe were that so diddyñ, tyll they saw  
 that this cry *and* this noyse was al cessid; *and* nas but a fantasy. but are  
 much  
 ashamed  
 when they  
 find it was  
 all fancy.  
 whan the host them gaderid' ayeyn to-giddy, they wer ful sore  
 asshamyd' that thay so fently Put ham to flyght ; *and* mych Speche  
 was amonge hame ; *and* many haddyn gret enuy, *and* mych wondyr  
 thocht of Robert de Barry, that Whan the host was in so gret ferde,  
 he was that man that moste stidfastly hym helde, *and* moste them  
 styryd' to wythstond' and' fyght. / And amonge al the good' dedis  
 that in hym weryn, this Pryncipaly is of hym tolde, that for no  
 vyolence ne ferly aduenture that to hym chanssyd; he was neuer in  
 wanhope sette, ne agaste, ne aferd', ne abassid' of herte, ne shame-  
 fully did hym to flyght ; but euer-more he was lyke redy to wepyn,  
 and' to defend' hym-Selfe, And to helpyn al othyr. he was the  
 formyst knyght that, in this conqweste of Irland', fryst receyued in hac  
 Hiberniae  
 expugna-  
 tione.  
 stroke *and* hurte in bataill // A wondyr was of that fantasy  
 a-morrow, whan hit was day : In the Playn ther this Pepill y-seye

<sup>1</sup> Cujusmodi phantasma in Hibernia circa expeditiones frequens esse solebat.  
 —Op. v. 235.

A.D. 1169. that stoden al euen vp-right, thay lay all I-drow a-doune and I-cast to grond. [*This grass, &c. only in Harl. MS. 177. Op. v. 236.*]

## [CHAPTER VI.]

[\*Fol. 4a.] **A**s this was on this maner I-doñ, the tythynges sprongen in-to al Irland' hwow Macmorgħ conquered his lond' \* vpon 4 his men, and' that no man myght hym withstond' for out-comen men that he lade with hym. Roryk O'Concow' of Connaght, that was that tȳm kynge of al Irland', vndrestod hȳm, and' toght in his hert the gret peril that myght be-fall hȳm and' al the 8 lond' folk, drogh' the owt-comen folk þat was thus in-to the land' I-com̄; he sent his messagers to al the gret meñ of the lond', and' in a lityll whiġt gaddred ham to-geddre to a parlement, and' tok ham to rede that euery on his half shold' gaddre al the 12 power þat they myght, for to weř vpon Macmorgħ. And as hit was purueied, so hit was doñ; Thay assemblet so many hostes and' so myġh folk on euery half, that noon end' was, and' comēd to Okensely for to weren vpon Macmorgħ. Whan this hostes 16 weren thus assemblet, the most parte of Macmorgħis meñ, ayeyne hař trowth and' ayejn hař othes, some priuely whithdrow hem that day, nold nat to hym com, some al openly leften hȳm, and wenten to his fomen ayejn hȳm; so that, in his most nede, trew 20 frendes ne fonde he noñ, sawe Robert, steuenes soñ, and his. With the lityll folk that thay hadden, thay wenten in-to a place nat fer frome ffernes, a pleyn place bisette about with montaignes and woddess, watres and mores, on euery side il to com̄ [to]. the 24 entrees that ther weren, by Robert-is deuce thay setten meñ for to stopen, in some place with trees I-cast doñ, and' in other places depe diches I-cast. thegħ the place weř stronge of kynde, thay madeñ hit myġh stronge[r] with engyn, so that hit was 28 I-now sekeř recet to ham, and' [to] heř enemyes ful stronge to com̄ to, and with litill folke hit myght be I-kept; & derne weies thay hadden purueied to ham-self, owt to goo, ayejn In to com̄, whan ham liked. Whans the kynge of Connaght, with so many 32 hostes, was to ham I-com̄, he send to Robert by Messangers, and' present hȳm with rych yiftes, and' many mo he hym be-het, and' fast hȳm be-soght that, owt of þe Contray, wyche no Right

Roderic O'Conor tries to raise the whole country against Macmorgħ and the English.

Many of Macmorgħ's followers desert him, but Fitzstephen and his men stand by him.

They occupy a strong position not far from Ferns.

smytyn vp-on ham, the wedis and the grasse that stodyn al eyn A D. 1169. vp-ryght, thay lay al y-throw dovne and cast to ground.

## [CHAPTER VI.]

As this was thus donne, the thythyngis Spronge Into al *Capitulum* Irland, how Macmurgh conquerid his londe vpon his men, <sup>vj<sup>m</sup>.</sup> and that no man myght hym wythstond, for strange men that he ladd wyth \* Hym. Roryke Oconghoure, of Connaght, that was [\*Fol. 4 a.] that tyme Kyng of al Irland, vndyrstode hym, and thoght in his herte the grete Perel that myght be-fall hym and al the londe- *tam sibi quam patriae tott.* Pepill, throughe the strangeres that was thus in-to the lande come. He sende his messangeris to al the Lordis of the Londe, and in a lytyll whylle gaddred ham to-gedre to a parlement, and toke ham to consayll, that euery on his Syde sholde gaddyr al the Pepill that thay myght, forto werre vpon Macmurgh. And as hit was Purueyed, so hit was doue. Thay assemblid so many Hostis, and so mych Pepill on euery syde, that were vnnowmmerabill, and comyn<sup>1</sup> to Okenseley forto werre vp-on Macmurgh / Whan this <sup>[<sup>1</sup> comyn, MS.]</sup> hostis weryn thus assemblid, the moste parte of Macmurgh-ismen, ayeyn hars trowthe and here othis, Some priuely with-drow ham, that they nolde not to hym come. Some al opynly leften hym, and wenten to his ennemys ayeyn hym ; so that, in his moste nede, *in necessitatis articulo* trewe frendis ne fownde he nofe, Sawe Robert Steuenes-Sone and his. wyth the Lytill Pepill that they haddyn, thay wentyn into a place not fare frome Fernys, a pleyne place be-sette aboute with monttanys and woddis, wattris and moris<sup>2</sup>, on euery Syde il to come <sup><sup>2</sup>paludibus.</sup> to. The entrees that ther weryn, by Robert-is deuyce thay setten men forto stopyn ; in some Place with trees y-caste doune, and in othir Placis depe dichis y-caste. thegh the Place were stronge of kynd, thay maddyen hit mych strongir with Engyn, So that hit was *naturalem difficultatem industriam plurimum et arte municit.* sure recette to tham, and to ther ennemys stronge to come to, and with lytill pepill hit myght be kepte. And Erthe-weyes thay haddyn madd to tham-Selfe, out to goo, and ayeyn In to come, when them Plesyd. Whan the kyng of connaght, with so many hostis, was to tham come, he sende to Robert by Messangers, and presentid hym with rych yeftys, and mych more hym Promysyd, and gretly hym besoght that, out of the contrey, whych no ryght

A. D. 1169. he ne hadde to, ne no chalange ne myght setten vp-on, he and his, with pees and lou[e] shold departe. Mich they spek of this, and litell thay sped. Ther-aftyꝛ, the messagers turned to Macmorgħ, and be-soghten hym on the kynges half, OConghouꝛ, 4 that he forth, with ham, shold turne vp-on the owt-comen folk, ham to slee and vndo. And if he so wold, thay wold delyuere [\*Pol. 4 b.] hym al leynestꝛ, and stidfast pees and frend-shippe mak hym and, failing in this, tries in vain to induce Macmurgħ to turn against the English. 8 both for the land & for the land folk; bot notyngē thay ne spedde, ne noon answaꝛ ne hadden, that ham liket. Oconghouꝛ saw and herd of his Messagers that he myght nat in such maner spede, and that he most with streynth do, that he myght nat with fair 12 speche: he tok his wepne grymly, and stod vp a-monge his folk, and thus sayd to ham; "Mighty men, and stalward in fight for to defende your lond and your franchise! vndrestondeth, ayeyn 16 whice folk, and for what encheson, ye shold this battail tak an hond: al oure enemy, that afor thus was owt of lond I-dryw for his wykkednesse, In commune confusion of vs all, al be-tak with owt-comen & wepned folk, is ayayn comen for enuy and harme of vs, & hath I-brought vnked folk vp-on vs, that the harme 20 wich he had no power to don vs hym-self, throgħ helpe of ham & mayntenaunce, the better myght bryngē to end; and hath dight hem to sheden his attyꝛ so wide, that he rechet nat of his own deth, bot that al mowen have ouꝛ bale trogħe hym, and for 24 noon shold be I-spared, and he ne spared hym-self. Ther-for we willen withstond the begynnyngē, and þe yuel whil hit is comyn, ar hit be Iroted; ffor harme wexet euer with longe abiddynge. Ouꝛ lond & ouꝛ fredom defended we manly; so that the slaght 28 of þese fewe be ferdnesse to many; & be ensample of these, al other out-lond men to be adrede, such folies to begyn, and the mynd of vs, with-out end to rest<sup>1</sup>."

[<sup>1</sup> MS. best.]

[CHAPTER VII.]

Macmurgħ harangues the men of Leinster. **M**acmorgħ, on his halue, be-held his men, and saw ham 32 soꝛ amayed: with wordes that he myght, he confortd ham on this maner: "Men of leynester, which, sothfast trowth & stidfastē kynd in al aduentures, vs hath felawes I-maked;

he hadd̄ therto, ne no calange ne myght setten vpon, he *and* A. D. 1169.  
 his, wyth Pees and loue, sholde deperte. Mych<sup>1</sup> they spoke of [<sup>1</sup> Myth,  
MS.]  
 this, and lytyll thay Spede / There-aftyr, the messangers turned  
 to Macmurḡh, and be-soghten hym on the kyngis be-halfe, Ocon-  
 noghoure, that he forth, wyth tham, sholde turne vpon the strangeres, ut in  
exteris  
nationes  
delendas  
simul cum  
ipsis arma  
conver-  
teret.  
 hame to kyll and vndo. And yf he so wolde, thay wolde delyuyr  
 hym all leynystere, *and* stydfaste Pees *and* frendshippe make hym  
 haue of the kyng and of al othyr. Many reysons thay shewid;  
 both for the londe and for the lond-pepill; but nothyng thay ne  
 spede, ne noone answer hadde, that ham Plesyd. Oconnoghoure  
 saw and herde of his messyngers, that he myght nat in suche  
 maner spede, and that he moste *wit*h streynt do that, that he  
 myght not *wit*h fayre speche. He toke his wepyn grymly, and  
 stode vp amonge his pepill, and thus sayde to tham:—"Myghty  
 men, and bolde in fyght forto defende youre londe and youre *patrias*  
 fredome! Vndyrstondyth, ayeyn̄ whych \*Pepill, and for whate [\*Fo. 14 b.]  
 cause, ye sholde this Bataill take on Honde. Al oure ennemy, tutores, et  
libertatis.  
 that afor this was out of londe ydrywe for his wickidnes, In  
 comynne confusion of vs all, all be-take wyth strangeres and  
 wepene Pepyll, is ayeyn comyn, for Enuy and harme of vs, and  
 hath broght strange Pepill vp-on vs, that the harme whych he  
 hadde no Powere to don vs hym-selfe, through helpe of them and  
 mayntenavnce, the bettyr myght brynge to ende; and hath dyght  
 hym to shedyn his wenym so wyde, that he takyth no fors to dye, quod,  
cunctis  
communi  
labe in-  
fectis, ut  
nemini  
parcatur,  
nec ipse  
sibi  
pepercit.  
 but that we al mow haue oure [e]will through hym, and for none  
 sholde be Sparid, and he ne Sparyth hym-Selfe. There-for we will  
 wy[th]stonde the begynnyng, and the Perel whyle hit is comyn, are exteris  
nationes  
ab ausu  
tam  
nefario  
imper-  
petuum  
abstru-  
antur.  
 hit be rotyd. For harme wexeth euer wyth longe abydyng. Oure  
 londe and oure fredome, defende we manly; So that the slaght  
 of this fewe be ferde to many; and by Ensampill of thes, al othyr  
 strangers sholde be aferde, suche folies to begynne, And the mynde  
 of vs, wyth-oute ende to abyde."

## [CHAPTER VII.]

**M**Acmurgh / on his syde, be-held his men, *and* Sawe hame Capitulum  
vij<sup>m</sup>.  
 sore a-bassyd: *wit*h wordis that he myght, he confortid  
 ham on this manere: "Men of leynyster, wych, trusty trowth and  
 stydfaste kynde in al aduentures, vs hath fellowis y-made, wyth- comites  
indivisos



A. D. 1169. without any partyng, a-reþ we ouþ hertes, styfly vs-self to defend.  
 The maistre of wreth and of Coueytise, that with streynth wold  
 vs brynge vnderfoot, and ows ayeyn dryue out of lond, otheþ, that  
 Let us defend ourselves! wors is, in the same lond, vs tynken vndo: that god shild! loo, heþ 4  
 is I-coṁd vpon ouþ heþ, of his mych gaderynge of folke prowte &  
 hauteyn. be ye well vndrestond, þat nat trogh gret tale of men  
 [\*Fol. 5a.] ne trogh greth streynth, both drogh \*right and trowth that mañ  
 Right, not numbers, win battles. hath with hym, battailles doth ouercoṁ. We haue for vs, ayeyn 8  
 haþ pryd, mekenes; ayayns har vnrýght, right and trowth; ayeyn  
 haþ boldenese and ouer-truste, mekenesse and maner. They  
 fighten for coueytise, for to get good; and we, for to flee harme.  
 with al this we bene in stronge place and wel I-warned. The moþ 12  
 that heþ commeth, the more encombrement we shall do hame, by  
 lityll folk ham to ouercoṁ, so that we be of on hert, and stily  
 Be of one heart, and fight! withstond.'

## [CHAPTER VIII.]

Fitz-  
 stephen  
 makes a  
 speech to  
 the  
 Engliash-  
 men.

From  
 Troy we  
 get bold-  
 ness;  
 from  
 France,  
 skill in  
 fight.  
 We come  
 not for  
 hire, or as  
 pirates,  
 but to  
 help a  
 noble man  
 unjustly  
 treated.

Whan Macmorghe had his tale I-endeth in his speche, 16  
 Robert Steuenes-son, spake to his felaws and to his  
 meigne on this wise: "fightyng fors, & yongelynges I-corne,  
 that so many perilles hawe to-geddre I-soffred, and euer in al  
 aduentures, and of heigh hert ibe! If we inly vndrestonde wiche 20  
 meñ we ben, with what lodes-mañ, and for what thýnge we this per-  
 ille vndre-tok with stalwardnesse, as ouþ [wone]ys, we shullen ouer-  
 come; & the grace that ye I-haue i-hadde ar this of god, ne shal vs  
 nat forlete. Of the folke of Troy we ben kyndlych y-come, oñ þat 24  
 oon half, fro þe first begynnyge; of ffrance, we haue kynde on  
 otheþ half. Throgh kynd of Troy, we owe to be hardy; throgh  
 kynd of ffrance, we ben vsed in wepene; & so as we bene of double  
 mane kyndly, of good herth & well y-wepned, & well y-lernet yn 28  
 wepene, ne dont no man, þat such vnwepned rascayll any powerþ  
 haw ows to wythstond: oñ that otheþ halue, we come nat yn-to  
 thys land as hyryng men, ne for no couetyse of gold, ne of syluyþ,  
 ne galyotz ne robbers; bott for to helpe thys heyth man that ys so 32  
 noble & so fre, &, progh hys owne men, lodderly was of lond  
 y-dryue. we hawe reuth of hys harm; & helpeth vp þat adoun was  
 y-brozthe; to hys kynd sted, bryngeth hym þat vnkyndly was

out eny partynge, arrere we vp oure hertes, boldely vs to defende. A. D. 1169.  
 The maystyr of wreth *and* of couetyse, that wyth streynth wolde <sup>1 the</sup>  
 vs brynge vndyrfote, and vs ayeyn dryue out of londe, Othir, that <sup>oration</sup>  
 wors is, in the same londe Purposyth vs to vndo / that god <sup>[in a later</sup>  
 forbedde / be-holde, here is come vp-on oure hedd; of his mych <sup>hand].</sup>  
 gadrynge of pepill Proute and hauteyn. be ye wel vndyrstond, <sup>quod</sup>  
 that not wyth many men, ne wyth grete Streynth, bot by ryght <sup>absit</sup>  
*and* trouth that man hath wyth hym, batalis doth ouercome. We  
 haue for vs, ayeyn har pryde, mekenys; ayeynes hare vnryght, ryght  
*and* trouth; ayeyn har boldnys *and* ouer-truste, mekenesse *and*  
 maner. thay fyghtyn for couetyse, forto gete good; And we, to <sup>modus et</sup>  
 shonne myschefe. wyth all this, we byth in stronge Place, and well <sup>modestia.</sup>  
 warnyd. The more that here comyth, the more encombrement <sup>tam arte</sup>  
 we shal do ham, by lytill folke ham to ouercome, So that we be of <sup>quam</sup>  
 oñe herte, *and* styfly wystone. <sup>natura</sup>  
 munitissimum.

## [CHAPTER VIII.]

**W**HEN *Macmurgh* hadd his tale y-edynd in his speche, <sup>Capitulum</sup>  
 Roberte Steuenes-Sofe spake to his fellowys, *and* to them <sup>viiij<sup>m</sup>.</sup>  
 in this maner Sayde: “Fyghten feris, *and* yonglynges y-know, that <sup>Bellorum</sup>  
 so many Perelis haue to-geddyr Sofferid; and euer in al aduentures, <sup>socii,</sup>  
 and of hey hert ben! If we Inwardly wndyrstonde what men we <sup>adole-</sup>  
 ben; wyth what lodes-man, *and* for what thyng, we this Perel <sup>scientes</sup>  
 vndirtoke; *with* boldnys, as we were wonyd; we shall ouercome; and <sup>electi.</sup>  
 the grace that we haue hadd ar this of god, ne shall vs not forsake.  
 // Of\* the folke of Troy we Ben Kynly come, on that one syde, fro <sup>[\*Fol. 5 s.]</sup>  
 the fryste begyn[i]nge; of Fraunce, we haue kynde on the othyr  
 halfe. Throgh the kynde of troy, we sholde be bolde; throgh  
 kynde of Fraunce, we ben wysd in wepynd; and so as we ben of  
 doubil maner kyndly, of good herte *and* wel wepenyd, and wel  
 lernyd in wepyñ,—ne dout no man, that Suche vnwepenyd rascaill <sup>populum</sup>  
 any Powers haue to vs to wyth-stonde. One that ouer syde, we <sup>inermem.</sup>  
 come not into this londe as wigid men, ne for no couetyse of  
 golde, ne of Syluyr, ne of galiotz, ne robbers; but forto helpe <sup>Non ergo</sup>  
 this goode man that is so nobill and so fre, and, wyth his owyn <sup>piratae,</sup>  
 men, wickydly was out of his londe drywe. We haue Pite of his <sup>non pra-</sup>  
 harme; and helpyth vp that adouñ was caste / to his kynde state, <sup>donee huc</sup>  
 aduenimus.

A. D. 1169. theſe of I-bansheth. And he, as largh mañ & good prynce, hat  
 He has vs yeuē wyde londes & ryche townes, & owſe lond folke wyll  
 given us setten & planten stydfastly yn þys lond, nowe & euer<sup>1</sup>. Therfor,  
 land. men, full [of] streynth & stalwarthnes, such thyng y-magyneth 4  
 [1 MS. ouer.] to-day hartly to do, that owſe kynred ne go nat out of kynd;  
 We'll win & yn thys, lyuynges oper dey, we manly wynd the pryce, that  
 the battle euer more torne to whyrshyppe vs & al ouſe that aftyſe ws shullen  
 and glory. come." 8

## [CHAPTER IX.]

Wythe these wordes, & otheſe ſuche, these heghe meñ  
 comforted haſe folk, for day schuldeñ hawe the bettyr wyll  
 well for to fyght. And whañ day were oñ euery half redy for to  
 O'Conor, doubtful of the issue, makes terms with Mac-  
 murgh, smyth to-gedde, OConozwyr, be-thozghthying that the aduentur 12  
 of battaylle ben ofte doutouse & myche vncerteyne, And as the  
 whysmañ seythe 'all tynge me shañ assay, rather thañ fyzt,'  
 & all-so he & hys doutendeñ well ſore to assemble wíth folke  
 [\*Fol.5b.] I-wepned; On al maner that he myzght, \* He was abowte thame 16  
 sholde make peas. thane, throgħ besechyng of goode menē  
 that went betwene, & throgħ grace of the holy goste, was  
 the peas y-made, oñ þis maner; that thay sholde leve leynester  
 to Maccmorghowe, & he sholde hitt holde of Oconoghur, & 20  
 hym knowlech, & suget be to hym as to a kynges & prynce  
 of Irland. And þat thys shold be stydfastly I-hold, Macmorgh  
 bytok hym hys sone to astage, by so, þat yf he good pees hold,  
 & trewly hym helde, Oconghur shold hym yeue hys doghter to 24  
 wyff. Whañ thys was comynly I-shewed & I-knowe, & othes  
 I-shwerne oñ euery half, all thys trewly to hold, Another thyng  
 was bespoke bytween ham, bott þat preuely, that Macmorgh ne  
 shold nomore bryng vnked mon yn-to the lond, & thay that 28  
 he hade y-broght, as rathe as he had leynestre yñ good pees,  
 he shold anoon send ayenne home, & delyueryd þe lond of ham.

## [CHAPTER X.]

Maurice Fitzgerald now arrives, with a following, at Wexford.  
 Aftyſe that þe pees was thys Imaket, þe host departed,  
 euery oñ hys half. Sone þer-after come Moryce, Geraudes 32  
 son, Robertes brother, of whom we spoken ar thys, wyth .x. knyghtes  
 & .xxx. Squyres & ij hounded footmen, & ar[y]ued at weysford;

bryngyth hym that vnkyndely was theroft y-banshet. And he, A. D. 1169.  
 as large man and good Prince, hath vs yevyð wyde landis and gentem hic  
 ryche townes; and ourse londe-pepill will setten and Planteð nostram in  
 stydfastly in this londe, nowe and euer. Therfor, men full of insula  
 streynth and of boldnes, Suche thyngæ ymagyneth to-day hertely plantare.  
 to do, that ourse kynred ne go not oute of kynde; and in this, seu vin-  
 lywe or dye, we manly wynn the Pryce, that euer-more shall cendo seu  
 tour[n]e to ourse wyrchippe, and to al ourse that aftyr vs schalle moriendo  
 come." perpetuam  
nobis  
gloriam  
strenuitate  
compa-  
remus.

## [CHAPTER IX.]

Wyth this wordis, and othyr Suche, thes good men confortyd Capitulum  
 here Pepill, for thay sholdyn haue the bettyr wyll, well ix<sup>m</sup>.  
 forto fyght. And when thay were on euery halfe redy forto smyte  
 to-geddre, Oconghoure bethoght hym that the aduenture of bataill  
 ben ofte doutfull and mych vncertayn. An[d], as the Wysman Ter. Eun.  
 Seyth, "Althynge we oghte to assay, radyr than fyght" / And also IV. vii. 19.  
 he and his douteden well sore to fyght wyth Pepill wepenyd. On al  
 maner that he myght, he was besy to haue Pees. Then, by the  
 besechyngæ of good men that wente betwene, and throgh grace of  
 the holy goste, was the Pees mad on this maner; that thay sholde  
 leue leynystere to Macmurgh, and he sholde hite holde of Ocon-  
 ghoure, and hym knowlech, and Subiecte be to hym as to a kyngæ  
 and Prynce of Irland. And that this sholde be stydfastly holde,  
 Macmurgh toke hym his sone to hostage, by So, yf he good Pees filium  
 helde, and trewely hym helde, Oconghoure sholde hym yeue his suum  
 doghter to wyfe. whan this was comynly shewyd and know, and Cnu-  
 othis sword on euery Syde, al this trewely to kepe, Anothyr thyngæ churum.  
 was spokyn be-twen them, bothe that Pryuely, that Macmurgh ne  
 sholde no more strangeres bryngæ into the londe; And thay that  
 he hadd broght, as Sone as he hadd leynystere in good Pees, he statim  
 shold Sende them home, and delyuere the londe of hame. remitteret.

## [CHAPTER X.]

Aftyr that the Pees was thus made, the hoste departyd, on Capitulum  
 his halue. Sone there-aftyr come Morice, Geraudis Sonne \*, x<sup>m</sup>.  
 Robert-is Brodyr, of whom we Spokyn ar this, Wyth x Knyghtis, [\*Fol. 5b.]  
 and xxx<sup>ti</sup> Squyeris, and two hundred fotemen, and londid at

A. D. 1169. A man full queynt, trow trogh̄ al thynḡe, & stalwarth, & stydfast of word, & of hert symple, & shamffast as a mayd. Wañ Macmorgh & Robert hyt wysten, thay weren ful glad, & bolder̄ þan thay before were : thay come to ham sone wyth þe oste þat thay had. 4

Macmorgh determines to attack Dublin; and goes, accompanied by Fitzstephen. Macmorgh be-thoght hym̄ of the mych vnryght that þe men of denelynḡ hym̄ hadden done, & hys fader̄ all-so, manȳ sithe : he assembled hys hostes, & redied hym to wend thedere. Boot Robert hyleft with̄ somdell of þe meyne, fore to rere hym a castell 8 at a place that me clepeth þe karryke, & ys twey myle out of weysford ; & Moryce went wyth hym. Macmorgh, as mayster & leder of the host, & cheuetayn of al. In lytell whyle, all þe contreys about dyuelyn, wyth robynge & bernyng & slejng, 12

[<sup>1</sup> MS. wepen.]

The citizens submit and acknowledge Macmurch as their lord.

[<sup>2</sup> for ferdenesse?]

weren <sup>1</sup> neght I-broght to noght. The sitezeyns of dyuylyn, whan thay thys wysten, thay sentten to ham, & besoghten pees, & yauē ham so mych gold & syluer that non end was at har wylle, & good ostages, & othes I-[s]wore that þay sholden to Macmorgh 16 trew be, & hym knowleche þan-forward as lord & prynce. Fro that tyme that thys was y-do, ther was noon Iryshman yn leynnesteṛ, of hey kyne ne of low, that for seruesse <sup>2</sup> of englyssemen ne yeldet hym to Macmorgh, so þat þer was noght of þe 20 lond̄-folke þat all nas subyett to hym, & redy to hys wylle.

[CHAPTER XI.]

O'Conor makes war on O'Brien of Limerick and sends Fitzstephen and Maurice to oppose him. O'Conor is defeated, and O'Brien becomes independent of him. **I**N thys whyle, wax a grett wreth & a grete stryfe betwyx þe kynḡ of Connaght, & donoll Obreyñ, þe kynḡ [of] lymeryke, & of thomond. the kynḡ of connaght, Oconoghuṛ, gaddered̄ hys 24 hostes for to wer̄ vpon̄ Obreen. Obreen sent \* to mamorrowz, for allyaunce that was betwen ham, that he shold hym helpe. he spake þer-of to Robert & to Moryce, & bad ham that þay shold go theder for to helpe Obreen. Thay name har meñ wyth ham, & wenten 28 ynto thomond; and ffounden̄ Oconogbuṛ, that stryffly stode ayeyñ ham, & many fyghtes ham yauē. Bot the dysconfituṛ turned vpon̄ Oconoghuṛ, & many of hys meñ wer I-sleyñ, so that wythe shame he most turne ayeyñ ynto Connaght. And fro that tym, Obreen 32 wythdrow hym from̄ Oconoghuṛ, & neuer after was subyect to hym̄ as he was thaṛ-by-fore ; & the englysh hoste, wyth grett gettynges & with̄ rysh yiftes, turned ayeyne yñ-to leynestre.

weysford: A man full quent, trew throw al thyng, bolde, and A.D. 1169.  
 stydfaste of word, *and* of hert sympil, and shamefaste as a mayd //  
 Whan *Macmurgh* *and* Robert hadd' wyttynge of Morice-is comynge,  
 they weryn full glad, and boldyr than thay before were. thay  
 came to tham Sone wyth the hoste that thay hadde / *Macmurgh*  
 bethoght hym of the mych wronge that the men of Deuelyn to hym *graves*  
 hawdyn done, and his fadyr also, many tymys: he assemblid' his *Dubli-*  
 hostes, *and* made hym redy thedyr forto goo. But Robert lefte *nensium*  
 wyth some of the meynge forto rere hym a castel at a Place that  
 is callid' the Karryke, and is two myle out of weysford; And  
 Morice went wyth hym. *Macmurgh* as gouernoure and ledere  
 of the hoste and capytan of all. In lytell Processe of tyme, al  
 the contreis about deuelyn, wyth Robynge and brennyng *and*  
 kyllynge of pepill, weryn al-meste broght to noght // The Citseynys *ad exter-*  
 of deuelyn, whan thay of this had wyttynge, thay Sendyn *minium*  
 besoght Pees, and yaue hame so myche golde and Siluyr that none *fere*  
 ende was at har will, and good hostagis, *and* othis Sworne that thay  
 Sholdyn to *Macmurgh* be trewe, *and* hym knowlege as lord and  
 Prynce. Fro that tyme that this was done / ther was none  
 Irysh-man in leynystre, of hey kyn ne of low, but that, for *fere*  
 of Englysh-men, thay yaue hame to *Macmurgh*, So that ther was  
 none of the londe-pepill, that al nas subiecte to hym, and redy  
 to his wille /

## [CHAPTER XI.]

**I**N this tyme, rose grete debate and wrete be-twyxe the *Capitulum*  
 kyng of Connaght, and Donalde Obreyn, the kyng of *xj<sup>m</sup>.*  
 lymerike, and of thomonde. the kyng of Connaght, Oconghoure, *[Fol. 6 a.]*  
 gaderid' his hostes forto werre vp-on obreyn. Obreyn Sende to  
*Macmurgh*, for allyaunce that was betwen ham, that he sholde hym  
 helpe. He Spake therof to Robert *and* to Morice, *and* bade them  
 that th[a]y sholde go thedyr forto helpe obreyn. Thay, and har men  
 wyth hame, *and* wentyn Into thomonde, and foundyn oconghoure,  
 that styfly stode a-yennes hame, *and* many fightes hame yaue. *post*  
 But the dis-comfyture turned' vp-on oconghoure; *and* many of his *varios*  
 men were sleyn, So that wyth shame he mvste tvrne into *conflictus*  
 connaght. / And fro that tyme, Obreyn wythdrowe hym from *ubique*  
 oconghoure, and neuer after was subiecte to hym as he was *victoria*  
 ther-to-forn. And the Englysh hoste, wyth grete gettynges *and*  
 wyth ryche yftis, turned' ayen Into Leynystre. *potitus.*

## [CHAPTER XII.]

A. D. 1169.  
Macmurgh  
aspires to  
be king of  
all Ireland.

Fitz-  
stephen  
and  
Maurice,  
whom he  
consulta,  
advise him  
to bring  
over more  
English-  
men.

He sends a  
letter to  
Earl  
Richard  
urging him  
to come  
over.

**M**acmoro3w3ch sawe the englysshe-men so stalwarth that no power myght ham wythstond: he bethoght hym of thyng that was passed, & that sume of hys eldre to-fore hym hadden somtyme the kyng-dome of all Irland; & that al the 4 lond was subyet to hym: he wold, by hys myght, by ryght of hys eldreñ, brynge hyt yn-to the self state, that al þe lond shold be vnder hys lordshyppe, as hyt was wndre hys eldreñ to-fore hys tym. Of þys tynge he spak preuely wyth Robert, & wyth 8 Moryce, & besoght har consayll therof; And þay hym answerd, & seiden, that 'lyghtly that myght be done, yf he wold make come more plente of englyssh men ynto þe lond.' he had ham well þorwe, that thay sholden yn al manere senden after more of har 12 kyñ & frendshype. & for thay shold the bettyre wyll haue ther-to, he profred ham to yeue hys eldest doghtre to on of ham, whych hyre so wold, wyth all hys lond aftyr hys day. bot, fore euery of ham had wyf & I-spoused that tyme, after mych spech, & 16 many dalyaunce ther-of at thys consaylle, thay thought þat he, to the erle Rychard, (of whom we haue ar thys I-spoke, & to whom he behete the same doghter ther-to-fore at Brystowe,) hys lettres shold send on thys maner: "¶ Dermot *Macmorgh*, priynce of 20 leynestre, to Rychard, Gylbertes soñ, erle of strugoyl, sendeth grettyng. If þou rekenest the tyme that ys Igoo, as well as we that nede haue, our mone nys ycome to þe no rather than hys tyme. Storke & swalewes, & oper somer foules, we haue 24 aftyre I-loked: thay comeñ, & wyth þe cold north-westre wynd þay ben away ywent. Bot thy comynge, that we so mych haue desyred & so longe I-loked after, nether estren wyn[d]e, ne noon other, vs ne hath I-send, as thou vs be-hete. þerfor, that thou ne 28 hast y-dene troght some grete lette, hastyly be about to do; for that wer al our gladnes, that thou hast swyth. If þou stalwardly comest, & wyth good myght, the four partyes of Irland shal sone be turned to þe fyft." Whan the erle had thys I-hard, he was 32

[\*Fol. 6b.] yn many thoughtes; & aftyr many selcouth \* & dyuers redes, at the last he bethoght hym, that so fewe men as wereñ yn-to the lond I-come ther-to-fore, hadden yñ so lytyll whyll so well I-spued of har aduentures: he name to hym the better herte, & thyng 36

## [CHAPTER XII.]

A.D. 1169.

**M**acmurgĥ sawe the Englysh-men so bolde, that no man myght ham wythstond. he be-thoght hym of thyng that was passyd, and that some of his eldryn to-fore hym haddyn some tyme the kyngedome of al Irland; and that al the land was subiecte to hym. he wolde, by his myght / by ryght of eldryn, brynge hit Into the same state, that al the londe sholde be vndyr his lordshipe, as hit was \* Vndyr His eldryn to-fore His tyme. Of this thyng He Spake wyth Robert *and* wyth Moryce, and be-soghte har consayle vp-on this. And thay hym answerid; *and* sayd, that 'lyghtly that myght be done, yf he wolde make come more Plente of Englysh-men into the londe.' He Prayed ham, that in al haste thay sholde sende aftyr more of hare kyn *and* hare frendis. and for thay sholde haue the bettyr will therto, he profered hame to yeue his eldyst doghtyr to one of ham, whych hyr so wolde, with al the londe aftyr his day. but, for euery of hame hadd wyfe, and spoused that tyme, Aftyr mych spech, *and* many delyaunce therof at this consayle, thay thought that he, to the erle richard (of whom we haue ar this spoke, and to whom he promysyd the same doghtyr there-to-for at Brystowe,) his letteres sholde sende on this manere // " Dermot Macmurgĥ, Prince of leynstere, to Richard, Gylbertes sone, Erle of strugoil, sendyth gretyng. If ye haue rekenyd the tyme that is I-goo, as wel as we that nede haue, oure compleynte is not come to yow no radyr than this tyme. Storkys and swalewes, and othyr Somyr fowlis, we haue aftyr a-waytid: thay comyn; and with the colde north weste wynde thay ben away I-went. But youre comynge, that we so mych haue desyrid and so longe lokid aftyr, nethyr estryn wynd, ne none othyr, vs ne hath sende, as ye vs promysid. Ther-for [as] ye ne haue this dofe but throgħ some grete lette, hastely be a-but to do; for that were al oure gladnys, that ye haste blywe. Yf ye boldely come, and wyth good streyntĥ, the fourē Parties of Irland shal sone be turned to the fyfte" // Whan the Erle hadd this hard, he was in many thoughtis; and aftyr many and dyuers thoghtes, at the laste he be-thoght hym, that so few men as weryn into the londe y-come ther-to-fore, haddyn in so lytill tyme so wel y-spede of har aduentures: he hade the bettyr herte, and thyng that he dowtted

Capitulum \* xij<sup>m</sup>.*ad avita et antiqua jura.*

[\*Fol.6b.]

*hoc facile fieri posse.**legitime copula gaudebat uterque.*Ovid, *Ep. Her.* ii. 7.*circio jam flante nec favonius nec curus.**de facili convertentur*



A. D.  
1169-70.  
The Earl  
resolves  
on the  
enterprise.

that he doutyd myche ther-by-fore to begyne, he wax tho the bolder to tak an hond. Fro that tyme, al hys thoght & all hys wyll was, nyghte & day, wyth all hys mygth to wend in-to Irland. He went hym to þe kynge henry, & hym swith be-soght þat he shold delyuer hym hys londes þat sholden be hys by ryght of herytage, other yeue hym leue to do hym yn adventur, lond to purchace yndvoked land.

A. D. 1170.

[CHAPTER XIII.]

He sends  
Reymond  
le Gros to  
Ireland,  
who lands  
near  
Waterford,  
ab. May 1,  
1170.

When the Kynge wist hys entent, whoder he wold go, 8  
he ne yaue hym fully leue, ne fully hym ne warned; bot  
wyth such leue as he had, he dight hym þe wynter tyll  
the begynny[n]ge of Maye. He sent to-for hym ynto Irland A knyght  
that was I-called Reymond le gras;—wyth hym, x knyghtes, & 12  
fourty Squyers, & four score bowmen;—A man ful hardy & stal-  
warde, & well proued yndwepne, Robertis neuen, & Moryces, har  
eldest brother, sone. Thay arrayed at a place i-called dun-  
doneuile, four myle a south halfe Waterford; & ther thay arered 16  
a dyche, & a feble castel vpon, of yardes and turues<sup>1</sup>. The men  
of Waterford, & wyth ham Malaghelynd of olan, thys waren  
I-ware that thay y-hadden such neghborhede ful loth, & toke  
ham to rede, þat þay wolden vpon ham, ar mo com to ham. Thay 20  
assembled ham togeddre, well thre thousand men, & wenten ouer  
the watty of sur, that parteth the twey contres of leynestre  
& of mounestre, & setten ham ynd thre hostes, ful boldely for to  
assaylle the englysshe-men with-In har castell. Reymond & hys 24  
men—thogh they fewe wer, they wer nat feynt—with vneuenly  
host wenten out & assembled wyth ham. Bot, as no wonder was,  
so few men ne myght nat all priuely fyghten ayeind so many,  
thay turned ham aye to har recet. the other weneden that thay 28  
departed ynd dyscomfyte; thay braken har sheld. In, & wenten  
aftyr: & thay war nat fully wythyn þe yate, that some of ham  
ner rather In than þe englyssh. Reymond saw that he & hys  
weren ynd gret perylle, & vpon poynt to lese the lyfe. he be-cryed 32  
hys felewes, & turned stalwarthly vpon her forme<sup>2</sup>; & þe fyrste  
that come ynd, he claue hym the heed, & throgth slaght of that

and is  
forced to  
retreat to  
his camp.

<sup>1</sup> MS. iurues, or inrues.

<sup>2</sup> men in front.

mych ther-be-for to begyn, he wax than the boldyr to take an honde. Fro that tyme, al his thoght and al his will was, nyght and day, wyth al his myght to wende into Irland: He went then to the kyng, and besoght hym that he shold delyuere hym his londis that sholdyn be his by ryght of heritage, othyr yeue hym leue to do hym in aduventure, londe for to Purchase in vnkyd land:

A. D.  
1169-70.  
*vel in  
exteris  
regionibus  
se fatis et  
fortunae  
commit-  
tendi  
licentiam  
daret.*

## [CHAPTER XIII.]

A. D. 1170.

When the kyng vnderstode his entente, whedyr he wolde goo, he yaue hym not full leue, ne fully be-name hym not; but with suche leue as he hadd; he dight hym the wyntyr till the begynnyng of may / he Sende to-for hym into Irland a knyght that was callid<sup>1</sup> Reymond Legras;—wyth hym, x knyghtis and fourty Squyeris, and foure score bowmen;—A man ful hardy and bolde and wel proued in wepyn, Robert-is eme<sup>2</sup>, and Morices, hare eldyts brodyr, sone. Thay londyd at a place that is y-callid Dundonenylde, foure Mile on the Sowth syde of watyrford; and there they rerid a dyche, and a febill castel vpon, of Iardis and turues\*. The men of Watyrford, and wyth ham Malaghelyn Of olan, this waryn y-ware that thay haddyn such neighboris, that ham were loth<sup>3</sup>; and toke ham to consayle, that thay wolde vp-on ham, ar mo come to hame. Thay gaderid ham to-gaddyr, wel iij<sup>e</sup>. Mi. men, and wentyn ouer the watyr of Sure, that partyth the two contreis, that is to Say leynystre and mounestre, And settyn ham in thre hostis, ful boldely forto assayle the Englysh-men with-In har castel. Reymond and his men (thegh thay fewe were, they were not feynte) with few pepill wentyn out, and mete with hame. But, as no woundyr hit was, so few men myght not al plenary fyghten ayeyn so many, that turned ham to thare recette. the othyr wende that thay depertid in descomfite; thay brakyn har sheldrun, and wentyn aftyr. and thay were not fully wythin the gate, that some of hame nere radyr In than the Englysh. Reymond saw that he and his were in grete Pereil, and on Poynte to lese here lyfe. he cried on his fellowis, and turned boldely vp-on here enemys. and the fryst that come In, he clewe his hede. and thogh deth of that o man, al the

Capitulum  
xliij<sup>m</sup>.  
*quasi  
licentia,  
ironica  
namque  
magis  
quam  
vera.*  
[<sup>2</sup> eme,  
uncle, is  
'nephew'  
in this  
MS.]  
[\*Fol. 6b.]  
*ex virgine  
et cespite.*

*de plano  
resistere  
non potuit.*  
*intra  
valvas  
vix plene  
suspensus  
certatim  
intrando  
suace-  
perunt.*

<sup>1</sup> R. Legras.<sup>2</sup> Exterorum viciniam suspectam habentes, v. 248.

A. D. 1170. mañ, all the ost was dyscomfyte, & tok hañ to flyght. The  
 oper ham folwed yñ-to all þe pleyñ, & leyd hañ oñ so, þat yñ  
 lytell whyll thay slowe of hañ fyfe<sup>1</sup> hundred & mo; & þe most  
 parte of þe other felleñ adoñ yñ-to þe see, of þe heye rokes, & 4  
 dreñt hañ-selfe. In thys fyght, was a knyght that hete Wyllyam  
 ferand, that dydde ouer-well & aboue all other: he was a mañ  
 that hade semblant as thoght he weñ oñ the mich yuell, & þer-for  
 [\* Leaf 7.] he put hym-selue<sup>2</sup> alwey ther \* the most perille was; ffor he ne 8  
 raght thegh deth come betwene hym & hys yuell, ar hyt wañ to  
 mych I-smýt vpon hym. Heñ þe pryd of waterford felle; heñ  
 all hys myght went to noght; heñ-of come the Englysshe hope  
 & comfort; & to the Iresshe, dred & wanhope; ffor hyt was neuer 12  
 ther-to-for I-herd, that of so fewe men, so grett a slaght was done.  
 Bot lyder consaylle thay dydden þer-after, that turned ham to  
 mych cruelte; ffor whañ the majstry was al har, & al har fomen  
 ouercome, In þe fyght wereñ ytake well thre score meñ & ten, 16  
 that ham yolden, & wereñ the heghest & the rychyst of al the sitè,  
 such þat þay myght haue had for ham the sitè delyuered, or els  
 as myche catel as thay wolden desyr. Heruy of Mountmorthy,  
 that to hañ was ycome, hym thrydsome of knyghtes, & Reymond, 20  
 vp dyuers domes strouen what meñ shold do wyth har prysons<sup>3</sup>;  
 ffor Reymond trauayllet about for to dylyuere hañ, as a mañ of  
 reuthful mode, & þus seyde to hys feres: "lordynges, what ys vs  
 to done of ouñ wreched prisoners? I sey nat that man<sup>4</sup> shal on 24  
 any maner spañ hys fomañ; bot thay beth nat now fomen, both<sup>5</sup>  
 beth meñ nat rebelle, bot yñ bataylle for to defend<sup>6</sup> har contrey  
 ouercome. Me thynketh thay beth now yñ such state, that me  
 oght bettyr haw mercy of hañ & yeve hañ lyfe, for to yeue other 28  
 ensample to be boxom, thañ cruely to do hañ to deth, wha-  
 through þat other, through ferdnesse of trust, þe lasse to yeld hañ  
 to vs." Whañ Reymond had such wordes I-seyde, yn al þe folke  
 was moste wi[lle]<sup>7</sup> to graunt ham lyf, Arose vp Heruy amonge 32  
 but Hervey  
 opposes  
 him.

<sup>1</sup> MS. lyfe.<sup>2</sup> MS. aleue.<sup>3</sup> pryson = prisoner.<sup>4</sup> MS. maner.<sup>5</sup> but: Sed hi non hostes jam, sed homines.—*Op.* v. 250.<sup>6</sup> MS. defond.<sup>7</sup> The ink has perisht: 'et murmure populi cum quodam quasi favore subsequuto.' Gir. Camb., *Exp. Hib.* c. xv.—*Op.* v. 252, Rolls Series.

hoste was dys-comfite *and* toke ham to flyght / The othyr ham A. D. 1170.  
 folwid into al the Playn, and leyde on ham. So that in lytyl  
 space of tyme thay kyllyd of ham v. C. *and* mo; and the most ab altis in  
 mare rupi-  
 bus prae-  
 cipitati  
 sunt  
 infiniti.  
 Parte of the othyr fellyn adovnd into the see, of the hey Rokys,  
 and dreynt ham-selfe // In this fyght was a knyght that was  
 callid William ferrand, that did ful wel *and* abowe al othyr;  
<sup>1</sup>he was a man that hade semblant as thegh he were on the  
 mych yuel; and therfor he Putte hym-Selfe at tymys ther the  
 moste Peryl was. For he roght not thegh dethe come between  
 hym and his Sekenys, or hit were mych grow on hym<sup>1</sup> /  
 Here the Pryde of Watyrforde felle; here al his myght went to superbia  
 cecidit.  
 noght; her-of come the Englysh hope and conford; and to the  
 Irysh, dred and wanhope. For hit was neuer ther-to-fore herde horror . .  
 desperatio.  
 that, of So few men, so grete a slaghte was done. But a lewid  
 consayle thay diddyn, that ther-aftyr turned ham to myche  
 cruelte. For whan the Mastry was al hare, *and* al hare enemys  
 ouercome, In the fyght weryn take wel iije score men *and* tefi that septua-  
 ginta cives.  
 ham yeldyn, *and* weryn the beste and the rycheste of the Cite,  
 Such that thay myght haue hade for them the Cite delyuerid; or  
 els as mych ryches as thay wolde desyre: Heruey of montmurthy, pecuniam  
 infinitam.  
 that to ham was come, hym thyrdsome of knyghtis, *and* Reymond,  
 vp-on dyuers consaylis thoghten what thay sholde do wyth har  
 Prysoneris. For Reymond laborid for thar delyverance, as man  
 of pitefull herte / And thus sayd to his fellowis: " Lordynges, what  
 is vs to done wyth oure wrechid presoners? I Sey not that man  
 shal on any maner spare his enemys; but thay byth nat now  
 enemys; but byth men not rebell, but in bataill forto defende  
 har contrey ouercome. Me-thynkyth thay byth now in such state,  
 that we owyth bettyr haue mercy of ham *and* yeue ham lyfe, forto potius . .  
 pietas ad  
 exemplum,  
 quam cru-  
 delitas ad  
 tormentum.  
 [\* Fol. 7 a.]  
 yeue othyr ensampill to be boxume, than cruely to do ham to  
 deth; wher-for otheris wil truste the lasse to yelde ham to vs."  
 \*Whan Reymond Hade Suche Wordys y-Seyde, and al the fello-  
 shippe Was most about to graunt ham lyfe, Aros vp heruey ney

<sup>1-1</sup> vir carne quidem infirmus, sed corde firmissimus: imminetem, ut videbatur, leprae malitiam morte nimirum praevinire desiderans tam praenatura quam praeclara.—*Op.* v. 249.

A. D. 1170. hame al, & thys ham̄ seyð: "Inogh̄ Reymond openly to vs hath  
 'Enough of spoke of mercy & almes-dedes, vnked landes I-wonne, & nat wyth  
 Mercy! Did slagh & wyth brenny[n]ge. Whede? Alexander & Iulius Cesar,  
 Alexander and Caesar that wereñ lordes of al þe world; wonnen londes by such wey, 4  
 win by it! I wold Reymond wold me answer. Whan thay comeñ to vs vel  
 arrayede to fyghteñ, If þay hadde I-won ouer-hand & vs ouercome,  
 wolden thay, for almesse & for reuth, haw had *mercy* of vs? nay,  
 I trow nat. þerfor out-chese oñ of two: Other̄ do manly thynges, 8  
 wher̄fore we bene ycome; & the folke þat ys rebbell̄ ayeyn vs,  
 wyth-outten any noyse, wyth wepne hertely brynges out of dawes;  
 Either kill the rebels quietly, Other, yf we sholleñ do almes dede on hem̄, & ham̄ spareñ, as  
 Reymond hath seyð, out we wend to oūr shyppes, & turne ayeyñ, 12  
 or go home!' & let we the wreched men hold har lond, & brouken wythouten  
 any chalange." Heruyes dome lyket *better* than Reymondes; &  
 As no gallows are handy, the rebels are drown'd. weren the Cytezeyns to deth Idemed. Thay ne hadden no wone  
 of warytres; & þerfor þey ladden ham̄ to þe clyf of þe see, & put 16  
 ham̄ adoun, & drent ham.

## [CHAPTER XIV.]

Earl Richard Strugnil [\*Fol.7b.] **T**he men-tyme, the Erl Rychard, wyth the power that he  
 had arayed, was y-come to south wales; & whañ he hadde  
 wyth \* gret reuerence y-done hys pylrimage at sent dauyes, he put 20  
 hym to saylle, & hade good wynd, came ynto Irland with two  
 hundret knyghtes & othē, mō than a thousand. He arryued at  
 lands at Waterford, Aug. 23, fulfilling prophecies of Merlin and the Irish Saint Moling. weyseford on seynt Bertylmewes eueñ: Than was fulfilled a  
 prophecye that Merlyñ seyð of hys comynge; 'þe brond shal 24  
 come to-fore þe borned fyr; And rygh as the spark maketh the  
 brond come, Also þe brond shal make the fyr come after.' Anoper  
 prophecye, seynt Molynges seyð of that same: 'A mych man shall  
 erne to-fore; & þe most heeddes of desmond & ek of leynestre 28  
 he shal defouly; & wyth streynth he shall noblych the wey  
 opne to the wepned.' Amorow, whan the tythynge of ham̄ was  
 Reimund joins him. They assault Waterford, Tuesday, Aug. 25. I-spronge, Reymond went hym to the Erle with furtý knyghtes  
 with mych gladnes; & amorow, after þe holy-daye, They went 32  
 comynly al to þe syte of Waterford, & assaylled the touz ful fersly;  
 & twyes thay wereñ rebuked, & ful stalwarhly, of þe Cytezeyns.  
 Reymond, that by purueaunce & graunt of ham al was ymade

amonge ham al, *and* thus ham Sayde: "I-nowe Reymond opynly to A. D. 1170.  
 vs hath Spoke of mercy and almes-deddes, vn-kyd landis to wynne  
*and* nat wyth Slaght *and* wyth brennynge. whedyr Alexandyr *and*  
 Iulyus Cesar, that weryn lordys of al the worlde, wonnen londis  
 by such wey, I wold Reymond wolde me answeze. whan thay  
 commyn to vs wel arrayed' to fyghten, If thay had the bettyr, Cum ad  
 nos expug-  
 nandos  
 instructis  
 aciebus  
 adve-  
 nerunt.  
 vs had ouercome, woldyn thay, for almesse and for Pite, haue had  
 mercy of vs? Nay, y trow not. ther-for chese offe of two: Othyr  
 to do manly thynge, wher-for we ben come; and the Pepill that is  
 rebel ayeynnes vs, wythouten eny noyse, wyth wepyn hertely be-  
 rewys ham of lyfe / Othyr, yf we shall do almysdede on them,  
 and ham spare, as Reymond hath Sayd, go we to oure shippis, *and*  
 turnne ayeyne, *and* lete we the wrechyd' pepil holde har lond; *and*  
 kepyn without any chalange." Herueyes Iugement Plesid bettyr membris  
 contractis,  
 in maris  
 praecipiti-  
 um dati  
 sunt.  
 than Reymondes; *and* weryn the Citteseynnes to deth demyd'.  
 Thay had no galosis; and therfor thay laddyn ham to the clyfe  
 of the See, and put ham adouf, *and* drovnde ham al.

## [CHAPTER XIV.]

**T**he men-tyme, the Erle Rychard, wyth the Power that he Capitulum  
 xiiij<sup>m</sup>.  
 had' arraied, was come to Suth Walis; *and* When he had  
 with grete reuerence done his Pylgrymage at Seynt Dauyes, he  
 Put hym to sayle, *and* had good wynd', come into Irland wy[th]  
 two hundryd' knyghtis *and* othyr, more than a thousand'. he  
 londid' at Weysford on Seynt Bartolomewes evyn. Then was  
 fulfillid' a pprophesy that Merlynge Sayde of his comynge: "The prophetia  
 Merlini.  
 brond shal come to-for the brennynge fyre, And ryght as the  
 Sparke makid the brond come, Also the brond shall make the  
 fyre come aftyr." Anothyr *prophesy*, Molynges Sayd of that same: prophetia  
 Molyng.  
 "A mych man shal erne to-for; *and* the moste hedis of desmond  
 and also of leynystre he shal defenly; and wyth streynth he shal capita con-  
 culcans.  
 nobelych the wey opyn to the wepenyd'." A-morrow, whan the  
 thythyngis spronge, Reymond went to the Erle with fourty  
 knyghtis with mych gladnys; and amorrow, aftyr the holy day  
 thay went holy to the Cite of Watyrford, and assaylid' the toun  
 ful fresly; *and* twyes they weryn rebuky'd, *and* ful boldely, of the bis viri.  
 liter  
 repulsi  
 fuissent.  
 Citteseynes. Reymond, that by Purueyaunce and graunt of ham

A. D. 1170. prince, & formañ of al the host, sawe & awayted a place good for to assaylle: he cryed & cleped the wepned men to the assaut, & þay egrely assaylleden, & braken yn-to þe sytè, & folke-mele slowe the meñ yñ weyes & yñ houses, & wañ þe Cytè. In 4  
 They take Waterford. rathnyldes touf wereñ twey rýche meñ ytake, bot þrogh prayeř of Macmorgħ, that thedeř was thañ I-come, he was y-hold alyue. Macmorgħ brogħt hys doghtyř with hym, Eue by name, & spoused hyř to the Erle, & maden fast sekernesse betweñ ham. Wañ thys 8  
 Macmurgħ's daughter Eve is married to Earl Struguil. was ydo al, þe Erle left meñ for to kepe the cytè, & turned hym with the hoste to deuylyñ.

## [CHAPTER XV.]

They march, thro' Glendalough hills, to Dublin. **M**acmorgħ wýst that myche of the power of hař lond was I-come to helpen hanñ of dyuelyñ, & hadden beset 12 all þe wodde weyes & þe narrow weys thetherward: he left tho weyes, & lad the hoste throught the montaynes of Glyndelagh, al harmeles, rýght to the sytè. These cytezeýns, ouer al otheř, hated wereñ of hym, & that was no wonder; ffor yñ some tyme thay 16 slowen hys fadyř yñ the cytè; & after the harme, thay dydde hym mych sham, for thay burryd an hounde with hym yn the pute that he was yn I-leyde. Thay sent messagers to þe Erle, & namely the Erchebysshop laurence, & besoghteñ pees; & as thay 20 wereñ spekyng of pees, on oon half was Reymond, & on the otheř halue a ful hardy knyght, Myles of Cogan, with yonglynges well coueytouse of battaylle & of gettyng. Thay assaylled the Cytè, & breken In, & wan þe Cytè, wyth gret slaght of þe sytzeýns. 24  
 Reimund and Miles of Cogan assail and take Dublin. [\*Fol. 8a.] Natheles, the best parte of ham, wyth þe rychest & the derwarthest thyngys þat thay hadden, yn botes escapeden, & wenten yn-to þe north ylondes, wyth hastoyl, that was maystre yn the cyte, & har lodesmañ. That day byfel two Muracles yn the cyte: that 28 on of the Croice, yn the modeř chýrche of þe trýnyte, whyche the Cytzeýns wolden haue I-ladde with ham yn-to the ylandes yn the see; & for nothyng, thay ne myghth yt weccheñ out of þe place. That otheř, of a sergeant that hadde I-robbet the erche- 32 bysshoppes paleys, & þer-after come to-for þe rode, & offred a peny: fyrst, & este-sone, & at euery tym, the peny stert ayeýne to hym. he bethoght hym that god was nat wel I-quenyted of the robbery

al was made Prynce and forman of al the hoste, Saw and a-waytyd<sup>A.D. 1170.</sup>  
 a place goode forto assayle. he cried *and* callid the wepenyd men  
 to the assaute and<sup>d</sup> thay egyrly assaylid<sup>d</sup>, and brakyn Into the Cite,  
 and kyllid the men in weyes and in houses, and wan the Cite. in  
 rathnyldys toure weryn two ryche men take, *and* thay both were  
 be-hedyd<sup>d</sup>. Macsaghlyn of olan was also take, but throgh Prayer  
 of Macmurgh, that ther was than y-come, he was holde alyue. Melaglin  
 Macmurgh broght his doghtyr wyth hym, Eue by name, and O'Phelan  
 Spousid<sup>d</sup> hyr to the Erle and madyn fast syckyrnys betwene \*Ham// is taken,  
 Whan this was done al / the Erle Lefte men forto Kepe the Cite but kept  
*and* turnyde hym *with* the hoste to deuelyn // alive. [\*Fol.7b.]

## [CHAPTER XV.]

**M**acmurgh vndyrstode that myche of the pepill of the <sup>Capitulum</sup>  
 contrey was come to helpe ham of the Cite of deuelyn, <sup>xv<sup>m</sup>.</sup>  
*and* hadde be-sette al the wodd-weyes and the Narrow-weyes <sup>vias nemo-</sup>  
 thedyrward. He lefte thay weyes, and lad the hoste throw the <sup>rosas et</sup>  
 montans of Glyndelagh, al holde and sound, tyl thay come to the <sup>arctas</sup>  
 Cite. The Citesseynes ouer al othyr hatid Macmurgh; *and* they  
 wer hatyd of hym: and that was no wondyr. For in some tyme  
 thay slowyn his fadyr in the Cite; and aftyr the harme, thay dyd  
 hym moche shame, for thay buried an hounde *with* hym in the <sup>cum cane</sup>  
 buryles that he was In-leyde. Thay send messangeris to the Erle, <sup>cites tunc</sup>  
*and* namely the archebyschope Laurance, and besoghten Pees; and <sup>laverunt.</sup>  
 as thay weryn Spekyn of pees, on oone halue was Reymond and on  
 the othyr syde a ful hardy knyght, Miles de Cogan, *with* yonglynges  
 wel couetos of batail and of getyng: They assaylid the Cite, and  
 brokyn In, *and* toke the Cite *with* grete slaghte of the Citesenes.  
 Natheles, the beste parte of ham, *with* the rychest and the wourdyest  
 thynges that thay haddyn, in botis escapedyn, and wentyn into the <sup>naves et</sup>  
 north ylonde wyth hastoyl, that was Captayn in the Cite, and har <sup>scaphas ..</sup>  
 gournoure / That day befel two Miraclis in the Cite: that one, of <sup>intrantes</sup>  
 the cros in the Cee churche of the trynyte, wych the Citesseynes  
 wold haue take wyth ham into the Ilandys in the see / And for  
 no thynge thay myght not take hit out of the place. That othyr,  
 of a Sergeant that had yrobyd<sup>d</sup> the archebysshope-is Place; and <sup>sicut in</sup>  
 ther-aftyr come to-for the rode, *and* offerid a peny: fryst, and <sup>Topo-</sup>  
 aftyr, and in euery tyme, the peny styrt<sup>e</sup> ayeyñ to hyñ. he <sup>graphia</sup>  
 bethoght hym that god was not aplesid of the robbery that he had <sup>decla-</sup>  
 ratur. <sup>Op. v. 129.</sup>



A. D. 1170. that he had y-do: he turned hym than, & let take al that he had y-nom<sup>1</sup>, & baṛ hyt ayeyn, & went to þe rode & offred; & hy[s] offrynge the[r] abode. Whan þe Erl hade a few dayes I-ordyned for the stat of þe Cytè, he left theṛ Myles de Cogan, 4 keper of þe Cytè & of þe contre, & a partye of þe meyne wyth hym. And by entycement of Macmorgħ, that bethoght hym of þe old enmyte that he hade to the kyng of Mithe, he went hym and ravages Meath. O'Conor of Connaght to þe contrey, branten, slowen, & robeden, & broghten the contre 8 to noght, for none ne durst hym wythe-stond. Ocongħuṛ of Connaght saw that he was the next—as man that seethe hys neighbors hous berne, he may drede of þe sparkes—he sent Messagers to Macmorgħ yn thys wordes: “Ayeyne þe fourme 12 reproaches Macmurgħ, of ouṛ pees, thou hast imad come yn-to thys lond mych out-comenḁ folke. þe whylle that thou held the yn thj leynystre, we hyt tholleth eunyly; Now thou, as man that naght ne the thynkest on thyn oth, ne no reuth ne hast of thyn ostage, the 16 merres I-sete of thyn eldren lond, vnryghtfullyo uergoste. Make thjn out-comen men wyth-draw, & turne ajejne, or els sothly we shul the send thy sones heede.” Macmorgħ thys herd, & yaf hym a prout answaṛ, & sent hym to sey, that he haṁ wold hold, 20 & send after more & eke more; that he nold neuer reste tyl he hadde I-wonne Connaght, wyth the kyng-dome of al þe lond, as hys eldrenḁ sumtjm hyt hadden to-for hym. Oconnoghur had and cuts off his son's head. heṛ of grete dyspyte, & sore was atened, & let smyth of sonnes 24 heed, þat he had hym Itake fore ostage.

## [CHAPTER XVI.]

A Council of the Irish clerics is held at Armagh. The country's ill has come from enslaving English children. [\*Pol. 8b.] Aftyr this, worth gret spech yn-to all þe lond, & mych ferdnesse of the out-comenḁ men. Than gaddered ham al to-gedderes, al the clerkes & the wysmenḁ of þe lond at 28 ardmagh; & of thys folkes comynḁ, was mych I-spoke, & longe dalyaunce. At þe laste, comynly thay accordeden al heṛ-to, that, for the syṁ of þe folk, thys mesaduentur ham ys byfal; namely, that whan thay fondenḁ englysshe-menḁ chyl dren to sylleṁ, that 32 chepmen & robbers woldene brynge to the lond, thay \* were wonet to by ham, & do ham yn thraldome; & that throgħ goddys owne

<sup>1</sup> MS. ymon.

done. he turned hym than, *and* toke al that he toke wyth hym, A. D. 1170. and bare hit ayeyn, *and* went to the rode, and offerid; *and* his offeryngs ther abode. / When the Erle had a few dayes y-ordaynyd for the state of the Cite, he lefte there myles de Cogan, keperes of the Cite and of the contrey, and a partey of the meynne wyth hym. And by entycement<sup>1</sup> of *Macmurgh*, that be-thought hym of<sup>1</sup> *instinctu*. the olde enemyte that he had to the kyng of Myth, he went hym *As Mac-* to the contrey, brantyn, Slouedyñ and robedyñ, *and* broghten the contrey to nocht, for non ne durst hym wythstond. Oconghoure *hated* of connaght Saw that he was the nexte, (as a man that seth his *O'Rourke* evyncrystyñ his house breune, he may dred the sparkys;) he send *of Meath* messangeres to *Macmurgh* in these wordis: "Ayeyne the forume of *in insulam* oure pees, thow haste made come into this londe mych strange *advocasti..* pepill. the whyle that thow helde the in thy leynstre we hit *aequa-* tollid' euyñly. Now thow,—as man that nocht rekyth of his *nimitter* trowth, ne no pite hauest of thyn hostage,—the meris y-sette<sup>2</sup> of *sustinui-* thyn eldryñ lond, vnryghtfully ouer-goste<sup>3</sup>. Make thy strangeres\* *mus.* *2 metas* Wyth-draw, and turne ayeyne; othyr ellys Sothly we shall the *positas ..* sende thy Sonnys hede." *Macmurgh* this herde, and to hym yaua *3 insolenter* a prowte answer, *and* Sende hym to Say, that 'he ham wold holde, *excessisti* and send aftyr more, and eke more, / ande that he wold neuer reste, til he had take *and* conquerid al connaght, with al the kyngdome of al the lond, as his predesssouris had to-for hym.' Oconghoure here-of had grete indignacioñ, and gretly ther-of was *indignans* grewid'; And he comandid to Smyte of his Sones hede, that he yafe *Rothericus* hym for an hostage.

## [CHAPTER XVI.]

Aftyr this, Spronge grete Spech in-to al the lond, *and* *Capitulum* mych dreded' the strange comen men. Than gadderid *xvj<sup>m</sup>.* ham to-gederes al the clerkys and the wysmen of the land' at Ardmagh; and of this pepil-is comynge, was mych Speche and longe delyaunce. At the last, comynly thay acordid' al herto, that, for the synne of the Pepill, this mys-aduenture ham ys *tam a* by-fall, specialy that whan thay foundyn Englysh-men childryn *mercatori-* to sill, that Marchandis and roberes wold bryng to the lond, *bus, quam* they were woned to by ham, and pute ham in thraldome; And *praedoni-* *bus atque* *piratis*

A. D. 1170. wreth hyt was, that as syllers weren to-fore y-brought yn thraldome, also the byggers sholden after : ffor hyt was somtym that the folke of englond—The maner of har kyngdome was al I-hole—whan thay had non otheṛ thyng that pay myghten take to, rathar than thay wold any myssayse tholy, Thay wer I-wont to sylleṇ haṛ chyldeṛn & haṛ otheṛ kynnesmeṇ, both ynto Irlond & ynto otheṛ londes. Theṛ-for hyt may well be soth, that as the byggers, also þe syllers, oft serued wel, throgħ so loly gyltes to be y-brought yn 8 thraldome. Theṛ hyt was yn þat consaylle be-heght, & by assent of al comynly I-set, that al the englysshe-meṇ yn þe lond that yn thraldome weren, shold beṇ delyuered, & frely let goo whodyṛso they wold.

## [CHAPTER XVII.]

Reports are spread in England of Fitz-Gerald's keeping Irish land. Henry II forbids ships to go to and from Ireland; and orders all Englishmen home.

Her-aftyr spronge tythyngges of the Erle & of þe englysshe-meṇ ynto englond ; & , as maner ys, myche me made more ; & that the Erl hade aproped to hym, nat only leynestre, bot otheṛ londes also, that, by no ryght ne by law, to hym ne to hys wyf longen. The kyng sent anoon, & forebeed that, 'out 16 no lond that were yn hys power, ne shold no shyppeṇ passe yn-to Irland, ne no maner thyng for to brynge ; & al meṇ that yn-to Irland waṛ comen, shold ayeyn come yn-to englande, wyth-yn þe next estre, oṛ they sholden be dysheryted & ex[y]led out of lond 20 for euer.' The Erl saw that he & hys weren narow belad, both of hys men that hym wold leue, & eke that nothyng ne most hym come out of otheṛ landes, of pyng that hym nede was : by comune rede of hys men, he sent Reymond ouer to the kyng 24 that was feṛ yn gascoyne, & thus hym sent to say : " By thy leue, lord, yf y am welle vndyrstond, y went ynto Irland for to help thy trew man, Dermot Macmogh ; þerfor, that al that of hys herytage, otheṛ of opers yn þe lond, almyghty god me hath I-sent, 28 as hyt come of thy graunt & of thy good wylle, also, I wyll that hyt to the turne, to do theṛ-wyth what the lyketh."

## [CHAPTER XVIII.]

Thomas a Beket is martyrd.

Reymond went to the kyng with such mandement ; & the whyle that he folwed the kynges court, abydyng hys 32 answer, Thomas, the erchebyssshoppe of Cantrebery<sup>1</sup>, was martyred

<sup>1</sup> (In margin, in a later hand : The archebushop of canterbury called Tho. Beckett. 1171.)

that, throw godis his owyn wreth hit was, that as the sylleris A.D. 1170.  
weryn to-for broght in thraldome, also the byeris sholdyn be  
brogh[t] in thraldome aftyr / For hit was somtyme that the  
pepil of England the maner of har kyngdome was al y-holde:  
Whan thay had none othyr thyng that thay myght take to,  
Radyr than thay wolde suffyr any dyssease, thay wold syll har  
childyr and har othyr kynnes-men, both into Irland *and* into priusquam  
inopiam  
ullam aut  
inediam  
sustinerent.  
othyr landis. Therfor hit may wel be trouth that, as the byeris,  
also the Silleris, ofte Seruyd well, through So wicked doynge, to be  
broght in thraldome. There hit was in that consayll promysyd,  
*and* by assent of al comynly y-Set, that al the Englysh-men  
in the lond that in thraldome weryn, shold ben delyuerid, and  
frelly lette goo whedyr So thay wolde.

## [CHAPTER XVII.]

**H**ere-aftyr spronge tythyngis of the Erle and of the Capitulum  
xviij<sup>m</sup>.  
Englysh-men into England; *and* as the maner is, of mych  
they mad more; and that the Erle had appropierid to hym, not only fama de  
magnis  
semper  
majore,  
vulgante.  
leynystere, but othyr londis also, that, by no ryght ne lawe, to hym  
ne to his wyfe partenyd // The kyng sende anone, and comandid  
that 'no shippe, out of no lond that Partenyth to hym, sholde Passe  
into Irland; Ne no maner thyng forto bryng; and al men that  
Into Irland war comyn, sholde ayeyn goo into England wythin the  
nexte Estyr, Othyr they sholde be disherytid *and* exilid out of  
lond for euer.' The Erle saw that he and his weryn narrow bylad, in arcto  
jam  
positos.  
both of his men that hym wold leue, and also that nothyng shold  
come out of othyr landis of thyng that he had ned to / he toke  
consayle of his men, and Sente Reymond ouer to the kyng, that was  
fere in gascoyn, and thus hym Sende to say: "By youre lycence si bene  
recordor,  
lord, yf y be wel vnderstond, y wente into Irland forto helpe yowr  
trew man, Dermot Macmurg. Therfor, that al that of his [\*Fol. 8 b.]  
sic ad  
heritage, othyr of otheres, that y haue in the Land, that almyghty  
god to me \* Hath sende, as hit come of youre graunt *and* of youre eandem  
pro libito  
vestro  
nutuque  
redibit.  
good wyle, also y wille that Hit be turne to yow, to do ther-wyth  
whate Plese yow."

## [CHAPTER XVIII.]

**R**eymond went to the kyng with such mandement; *and* Capitulum  
xviij<sup>m</sup>.  
the whyle that he folwid the kynges courte, abydyng his  
answere, Thomas, the archebisshope of Cantreberry, was martirid

A. D. 1170. yn englond, nat wyth-out mych blame to al þe lond-folk, both  
 Arch-lered & lewed. That erchebyssopp, after many-fold martyrdome  
 bishop that he þolled, negh seuen yer that he was bashed out of englond  
 Beket that he þolled, negh seuen yer that he was bashed out of englond  
 sufferd for the ryghtes of holy chyurche, In sore & many wepynges, yn 4  
 seven years double heer about hys body—þat oñ, yn styd of shyrrh; that oper,  
 in exile, personally, yn stydde of breche—nyght & day yn holy prayer & redyng  
 and also yn holy wrytte; & o thynges that meste sorow broght to hys  
 thro' his hert, that al hys kyñ, men & wommen, yonge & old, wommen 8  
 persecuted kinsfolk, lyggyne yn chyld-bed, & old men that fore eld yroked weren yn  
 heer cradelys, & all otheer, clerkes & lewed, that me myght wytt  
 that sybrede or otheer frendshypp hadden to hym, al thay wereñ  
 I-dryue out of englond; & al they that wereñ of eld that þay 12  
 myghty othes swerē, swaren vpon the masse-boke that, as sone  
 as thay come ouer the see, thay shold go to þe erchebysshōppe,  
 [\*Fol. 9 a.] & shew hym the \* wrechednesse that þay sufferd for hys sake;  
 who ffor he shold, for reuth of ham, turnen hys hert, & graunt þe 16  
 sufferd for him. kynges wyll of þynge that he desyred. After such martyrdomes,  
 and many otheer þat he tholled yn hys lyue, whyche no manly  
 hert may bethynke to ful end, the hey martyrdome, that broght  
 Then came his chief Martyr- dom. hys soule to þe blysse of heuyn, & hys body to wyrshypp yn hert, 20  
 otheer many þynges be-týdden that men Aght well vnderstond;  
 þat ayeys hys fomen yede, opyn heed, & opened þe chyurch durē  
 whyche the monkes hadden I-loke, & seyde þat 'meñ ne shold  
 no castell make of holy chyurche'; & hys holy croune bade ayeyn 24  
 the naked swerdes for to smyte, & that yn the modyr chyurche,  
 heghest of al þe lond, & to-for the weued, that he of four knyghtes,  
 wodeer than wood houndes, tholled four woundes yn the holy croun,  
 & [n]on without,—so as þe croun oght betokne of proteccion to 28  
 He was slain in Canterbury Cathedral by four knights, before the Altar. clergy,—that he deth tholled yn the north syde of þe chyurche,  
 whyche betokneth Ihesu crystes passyoñ. & thus goddys owne  
 knyghte, wythouten any ferdnesse, tholled deth; yn hys lyf of thys  
 world, chaunged wel selyly for þe lyf that euer shal lest without 32  
 The end. And as seynt Tomas-ys day, Apostle, ys þe fyft day afor  
 Apostle Thomas died on Dec. 21; Beket on Dec. 29. yold, so ys thys Thomas day þe fyft day after. That Thomas  
 was candel I-set yn þe este of þe world; Thys Thomas yn þe west.  
 [That] was lyght to aly chyurche yn hyer yough, as [Thys] yn hyer eld; 36

in England, not wyth-out grete reprefe to al the land-pepill, both A.D. 1170.  
 lerid and lewid. That archebisschope, aftyr manyfolde martyrdome  
 that he Sufferid, / ney vije. yere that he was banneschid' out of septennalis  
 Englund for the ryght of holy church, In sore and many wepyngis, fere exiliis.  
 In doubill here about his body,—that on in styd of shyrt, that tam femo-  
 othyr in styd of breche,—Nyght and day, in holy prayeris and rali quam  
 redyngs in holy writte. And o thyng that meste Sorrow wrought corporali.  
 to his hert, that al his kynnes-men, yonge and old, women lyggynge nec aetati  
 in chyldbed, and olde men that for elde yrokyd weryn in her parcente,  
 cradelis, and al othyr, clerkys othyr lewid, that thay mygh[t] know, nec sexui  
 that weryn of his kynd, Othyr frendshipe haddyn to hym, al thay tam misera-  
 weryn dryw out of Englund. And al thay that weryn of elde, bili san-  
 that thay myght othys swere, Swaryn on the masboke, that 'as Sone guinis  
 as thay come ouer the See, thay shold go to the archebyschope, and universi  
 Shew hym the mesury that thay Sufferid for his Sake;' For he proscrip-  
 shold, for Pite of ham, turnen his hert, and graunt the Kyng his tione.  
 wyll of that, that he desyrid. Aftyr Such martirdomes, and many  
 othyr that he sufferid in his lyfe,—the whych in no mannes hert  
 may be thoght to ful end;—The hey martirdome, that broght his  
 Soule to the blysse of hewyñ, and his body to vyrchip in Erth,  
 Othyr many thyngis be-fel that men aght wel vnderstond; that quod ipse  
 ayenes His enemys yede, opyn hede, and oppenyd the church-durre, furibundis  
 whych the Monkes haddyn y-loke, and sayd that 'men shold not no hostibus  
 castel make of holy church.' And his holy crowne bare ayeyn the templi  
 nakyd Swerdes forto smyte, and that in the modyr chyrch, heghist fores  
 of al the lond, and to-for the auter / that he of foure knyghtes, aperuit, et  
 wodyr than wode houndis, tholled Foure woundes in the holy croun, aperto  
 and [n]on wyth-out,—So as the crownd oght to be know tokyn of vertice  
 protexcion to clergy,—that he deth Sufferid in the north syde of the gladiis  
 church, whych be-tokenyth Ihesu crystes Passion. and thus god- occurrens.  
 is owyn knyght, wyth-out eny ferd, sufferyd' deth; and his lyfe of  
 this world, chaunged' for the lyfe that euer shal leste wythout end.  
 And as seynte thomas-is day the apostyl, is the V. day afor yolde, <sup>1</sup> ille  
 So is this Thomas-is day, the V. day aftyr. That thomas was candil nascenti  
 y-sette in the Este of the World; This thomas in the weste. <sup>1</sup> [That] ecclesiae  
 was lyght to holy church in hyr youth, as [This] in hyr elde; and lumen  
degit, hic  
senescenti.

A.D.  
1170-1.  
As the  
Apostle  
gave his  
blood for  
the early  
Church, so  
Beket gave  
his for the  
aged one.

Among all  
saints, for

[<sup>1</sup> that  
tofore]

Beket  
alone were  
all kinds of  
miracles  
performd.  
He got a  
man fresh  
eyes and  
genitals.  
Merlin's  
prophecy  
of Beket.

[\*Fol.9 b.]

Beket died  
at 48 [that  
is, 53-4],  
on Dec. 29,  
1170.

[T. MSS.  
L. T. Ha.  
Cl. n. Op.  
v. 262 n.  
4.]

Macmurgħ  
dies in  
May, 1171.

& as he [the Apostle] commenced holy chyrche with hys blode whan  
che was arerynge, Also thys, [Beket,] whan she had longe I-stand  
& wox yn eld, & redy was to falle, wyth hys blode he ryght hyr vp,  
& sette hyr yn ryght stydde. And as he t[oke hym] selue to 4  
quellers ffor to areþ þe seknes of holy chyrche, also thys ne douten  
nat to taken hym-self to kene swerdes, & lyddeþ men hondes, foþ  
þe fredome of holy chyrche to sawe vnwemmed. The fourme of  
hys martyrdome, twey verses a latyn shortly comprehendeth, that 8  
thus mych ben to vnderstand: "ffoþ crystes spouse, vnder crystes  
tyme, yn crystes chyrche, crystes owne leman deyed." Amonge  
al the halweñ that almyghty god wrought yn erth, of selcouth  
myracys for to showeñ haþ holynesse,—as the blynd to see, the 12  
lame to goñ, þe dombe to speke, the deue to hyþ, lasers to clense,  
paralys to festnen, y-dropesie & al otheþ manere yueles to heleñ,  
the dede to areren, uel gostes to quetheñ, & al þe four elementes  
to haþ commaundement hadden,—he aloñ was y-wyrshypped with 16  
al these, & more þer-to, thaþ-to-foþ<sup>1</sup> was nat herd ne sey; ffor  
a mañ that hade hys eghen I-draw out of hys heed, & hys manly  
membres y-kytte of & y-cast away, come to hys tombe; & þrogħ  
besechyng of hym, god hym sent newe. Of thys holy martyþ, 20  
Merlyn seyð thus yn hys prophecye: "A newe martyþ shal aryse  
with newe myracles, that yn the worldes endyng, yn the west  
of þe world, by specyal vertue, mannys lymmes out I-draw & out  
I-corue, ayeyn shald make come. Sorow shal turne ynto yoye, 24  
whañ þe sonnes shal sle þe fadyþ yn hys modyþ wombe; prynces  
& hey men \* shal come out of þe este yn-to the weste, & lout ham  
to þe newe martyres fot-stappes." Al þys was openly I-seyð of  
þe holy martyþ seynt Thomas; he was þe whet corne þat fel yn 28  
erth, & mych fruyt forth broght. In þe yeþ of burth-tyme .xlvij.;  
of hys sacryfyng .viij.; of hys exil .vij.; yn the end of Decembre,  
yn þe yere of ouþ lordes yncarnacion .m.c.lxxj.; & was poppe  
of Rome, Alexandre the thyrd; Emperouþ of Almayne, ffrytheryke; 32  
kyng of ffrance, lowys. Whan the wentyr was I-passed, Dermot  
Macmorgħ deyed, þe begynenyng of may, & was bured at ffernes.  
A man grett of body; hardy yn fyght amonge hys folke; of lange  
& lome cryngye yn fyght, hys voys was somdel hors; leuer hym 36

as he *commencid* holy church wyth his blod whan she was arerynge,  
 Also this, whan she had long stond, and wox in elde, and redy was  
 to fall, wyth his blode he put hyr in good state, and therin  
 confermyd hyr. And as he toke hym-selfe to them that hym  
 berewid the lyfe, forto arere the sekenys of holy church, Also this  
 doutyd not to take hym-Selfe to s[h]arpe Swerdes, & wickyd men  
 hondes, \* For the fredome of Holy church to Saue Vn-Wemmede.  
 The fourme of His Holy martirdome, two Versis of Lateyã Sortely  
 comprehendyth, that thus mych ben to vndyrstond: "For crystis  
 Spouse, vndyr crystis tyme, in crystis churche, crystes owyn leman  
 died." / Amonge al the holy Seyntes that almyghty god wroght for  
 in erth of voundyrfull miracles, for to Show har holynes,—as the  
 bynd to se, the lame to gofe, the dombe to Speke, the deue to  
 hyre, leperes to clense, Paralyse to festnen, ydropesye and al othyr  
 maner sekenes to hele, the dede to arrere, the vickid Spyrytys to  
 ouercome, And al the iii<sup>e</sup>. elementes to har comaundement haddyn  
 —he alon was y-wyrchippid *with* al thes. For a man, that his  
 eghen was hym berewid, *and* his manly membris y-kute of and  
 cast away, come to his tombe; and throw besechyng of hym, god  
 hym sende newe // Of this holy martyr, Merlynges sayd thus in his  
 prophesy: "A new martyr shall ryse, *with* new Miracles, that in  
 the worldis endyng, in the weste of the world, by Special vertu,  
 manes lymes out y-draw and out y-corue, a-yeyn shal make come.  
 Sorrow shal make come Into Ioy, whan the Sonnes shal sle the  
 Fadyr in his modyr wombe. Princes and hey men shal come out  
 of the Este into the weste, *and* lout hame to the new martyr-is fote-  
 stappis." Al this was opynly Sayd of the holy martyr Seynte  
 thomas. He was the whet-corne that fel in Erth, *and* mych frute  
 forth broght. In the yere of his berth-tyme, xlviij.; of his Sacry-  
 fyng, viij.; of his exil, vije.; in the Ende of Decembre, in the yere  
 of oure lord-is Incarnacion, Ml. Clxxj; and was Pope of Rome,  
 Alexandre the iije.; Emperoure of almane, Fryderik; Kyng of  
 Fraunce, Lowys // Whan the wyntyre was ypassyd, Dermot Mac-  
 murgh dyed in the begynnyng of May, *and* was buried at Fernys.  
 A man grete of body; hardy in fyght amonge his Pepill; of lange  
 ofte cryng in fyght, his voyce was Somdel hors; Leuer hym was

A.D.  
1170-1.[\*Fol.9 a.]  
*ut eiusdem  
formam  
conservaret  
illaesam.**verus  
amator  
obit.**quod sepa-  
ratis  
membris et  
protectis,  
inaudito  
more re-  
posuit.*Nota de  
Sancto  
Thoma.*cum matris  
in utero  
patrem  
filii tru-  
cidabunt.*Descriptio  
Murcardi.  
(Op. v.  
237-8.)



A. D. 1171. was that man hym dredet than loued; þe noble & þe ryche he  
 Mac- wold brynge to noght; the mek<sup>1</sup> & the pouer he wold rere; al men  
 murgh's character. ayeyns hym, & he ayeyns al.

## [CHAPTER XIX.]

Hasculf,

with  
 Norsemen  
 in forty  
 ships, led  
 by John  
 the Mad,  
 lands

& marches  
 to attack  
 Dublin.  
 Miles of  
 Cogan and  
 the English  
 meet him,

roust the  
 Norse, and  
 drive them  
 to their  
 ships.  
 John the  
 Mad is  
 slain.

Hasculf  
 threatens  
 his con-  
 querors,

**A**ftyр that, about whyt-sontyde, hastoyl, that was some 4  
 tyme maystre of deuylyn,—as man that fayn was about for  
 to awreke hys old tene,—come wyt men of northwey & of þe north  
 ylondes, with ful grett folk, yn furty grett shyppes, & arryued  
 yn þe hauen of amlyffy, with haṛ lodes-maṇ, that hete Ioḥn the 8  
 Wood. They wenten out of haṛ shyppes, men well I-wepned,  
 sum with longe swerdes, some with Iren pletes & round sheldes  
 well I-bound about with Iren, swerdes & speres & axys ynowe,  
 & comen well ordeynly foṛ to assaylle the town on the eest half. 12  
 Miles de Cogan, kepeṛ of þe Cyte, kyndly stalwardly, & hardy,  
 wyth wel chosen folke, went out ayeyns ham, and yaf ham fyght;  
 bot strong hyt was, to hold fyght ayayn so many with so fewe:  
 thaṇ had he I-lost some of hys men; & O knyghtes theygh was 16  
 I-cut with þe kappe of hys haubergeon wyth a dynt of a dennysḥ  
 ax. nede he most turne yṇ ayeyne at þe yate, tyll that Rychard  
 de Cogan, Myles brother, wythe few men, that whylle styly went  
 out at the south yate, & sharply becryed ham behynd, & smote 20  
 vpon ham. throgḥ that, þat he come so fersly vpon ham, thay weṛ  
 so afrygh, that thay wyst nat on whych syde thay shold kepe the  
 fyght: yn a lytell whyl thay waṛ dyssconfyte, & toke ham to flyght  
 toward haṛ shyppes. these otheṛ come ham betwene, & slowe ful 24  
 many: theṛ was Ioḥn the Wood I-slayn, & ful mych folk wyth  
 hym, throught Walter de Redlesford, that ful stalwarth was yn the  
 fyght. Hascoyl was I-take fro the shyppe theṛ he was to I-flow,  
 & I-brought alyues yn-to the Cyte, & hys lyf I-graunted for 28  
 raunceon; bot as he stode yn court to-foṛ Myles, he put forth  
 lyddyryly a prout word & seyde, “wyt lytell power we comen now,  
 & thys nas bot assaye of our myght; bo[t] yf I lyue, aṛ hyt be lange  
 to, shal come otheṛ so mych as þese.” Whan thys was I-hard<sup>r</sup>—for 32  
 yṇ the mannys tonge hys oft lyf & deth, & me seythe eke, ‘Tong  
 breketh bon, thegh hym-self ne hawe none’—Myles bad that

<sup>1</sup> MS. mok. Lat. ‘humilium erector.’

tha[t] a man hym dreddyd than lowyd ; the nobil and the ryche A.D. 1171.  
 he wold brynge to noght ; the meke and the Pouer he wold awaunce ;  
 al men ayeynes hym, and he ayeynes al men //

## [CHAPTER XIX.]

**A**ftyр that, about whitsontyd, Hastoyl, that was Somtyme *Capitulum*  
 Maystyr of Deuelyn,—as man that fayne was about forto be *xix<sup>m</sup>.*  
 awengid of his old wreth,—come wyth men of North-Wey and of  
 the North ylundys, wyth many pepil, in fourty grete shippys, and *sexaginta*  
 londyd in the hauyn of Amlyffy, with har captayne that was callid *navibus.*  
 Ihoñ the Woode<sup>1</sup>. They wentyn out of har shippis, men wel *Ineano*  
 wepenyd, Some with longe Swerdys, Some with Iryñ Platys and *vel Vehementi.*  
 rounne sheldys, wel bound aboute with Iryñ, Swerdys and Speres *alii*  
 and axes ynow, and comyn wel ordeynly forto assayle the toun on *laminis*  
 the Eeste halue. \* Myles de cogan, Kepere of the Citey, Kynly [*\*Fol. 9 b.*]  
 Bolde and Hardy, Wyth Welle schosyn pepill, went out ayeynnes *innatae*  
 ham and yafe ham fyght ; but stronge hit was to holde fyght ayeyn *animosita-*  
 so many with so few ; than had he lost Some of his men ; and o *tis au-*  
 knyghtes thegh was kut with the lappe of his haubergeoff, with *dacia.*  
 a stroke of a dennysñ axe. nedes he moste turne aye at the yate, *cum panno*  
 tyl that Richard de cogan, Miles-Is brodyr, with few men, that *loricue*  
 whyle went out at the south yate, and sharply becryed ham *praecisa.*  
 behynde, and Smote vpon ham. throug that, that he come so Fresly *ipsos a*  
 vpon ham, thay were so aferde, that thay wyst not on what Syde *tergo*  
 thay sholde kepe the fyght / In a lytyll whyle thay wer dyscom- *acriter*  
 fyte, and toke ham to flyght toward har shippis. thes oper come *excla-*  
 ham be-twen, and kyllid ful many. ther was Ihoñ de woode *mando,*  
 y-slayn, And ful mych pepil with hym, throw Water de Redeles- *percussit.*  
 ford, that ful bolde was in that fyght. Hastoil was take fro the  
 shipe ther he was to fiede, and brogh[t] alyues into the Cite, and  
 his lyfe gravntid for Raunceoun ; but as he stode in courte to-for-  
 Miles, he sayd lewidly a prowte worde : “Wyth lytil pepil we come  
 now, And this was not but assay of oure myght ; but yf y lyue,  
 ar hit be lange to, shal come othir so mych as thes.” Whan this  
 was herde,—For in the manes tonge is ofte lyfe and deth ; And as *In manibus*  
 hit is Sayd, Tonge brekyth bone, thegh hym-Selfe ne haue non,— *linguae,*  
 Miles commandid that he shold anone out be-ladde, and to Smyte *mors et*  
*vita. Prov.*  
*xviii. 21.*

A. D. 1171. men shold hym anoōn out lede, & smyte of þe heed. & thus, for and is beheded. hys hauteyn & prout spech, he lost þe lyf that thaȝ-by-for mekely hym was graunted.

## [CHAPTER XX.]

[Fol.10a.] **S**one aftyr thys, many of thay that weren y-come 4  
 yn-to Irland wyth the Erl, & eke to-fore,—for the kynges  
 byddyngē that come to ham, as hyt ys to[l]d a-foōr,—leften the  
 Erl, & wenten yn-to england. The peple of yrland saw the erl  
 narow beladde, both of hys men That hym left, & of vytalle that 8  
 trukked, wher-of he hade grete plente theȝ-by-fore out of eng-  
 land. Thay gaddered ham to-gedders myche folk, al þe prynce  
 of the lond, with al haȝ poer, & besegeden deuelyn on euery 12  
 halue; & that was throgh *procuryng* of laurence, Erchebysshope  
 of dyuelyn, as men seyde, for loue of hys folk. he sent also hys  
*lettres*, with Oconghours *lettres*, kyngē of Connaght, to Gothred,  
 kyngē of Manne, & to otheȝ prynces of þe north ylondes, for to 16  
 be-sete the hauyn of dyuelyn; & large yiftes & presentes ham  
 yaue, & myche more hem behete, for to helpe ham. &, for thay  
 drede ham of al such manere of adventures, Throgh that, that the  
 englysshe-men hadden so wel I-conquered vpon þe yrysshe, Thay  
 comeȝ the rather ham to help; & yn lytell whyle came .xxxvi. 20  
 shypys ful of stalwarth men wel arayed to fyght, & besetteȝ the  
 hauen of amlyffy. Whan the Erl & hys men wereȝ well twey  
 monthes beleyn yn the syte of dyuelyn, & to ham come non helpe,  
 nether of þe lond ne on watyȝ, & vytaylle fast ham slaked; & (as hyt 24  
 ys oft I-found, selde be-falleth oon harme that more [ne come]) come  
 Donald, Macmorghes sone, of okenseley, to The Erl, & told hym  
 for that Robert steuenes-son was beseget yn hys castell that he had  
 rered at þe carryke, of þe Cytezeyns of weysford & the men of ken- 28  
 sely, well pre thousand men; & few men had wyth hym; [&, but  
 hym] come socours by the pryd day, that of hym, ne thay that  
 with hym wereȝ, neuer no more to thynke. In the syte of dyuelyn,  
 wer that tyme be-left with the erl, Moryche fytz-Geraud & Reymond, 32  
 that froȝ the kyngē was comeȝ newly; sory for ham-self & for  
 hars: & thegh þey weren yn grett angwysshe for ham-seleue, thay  
 wareȝ yn wel more for haȝ good brother & for hys, that amonge

As Henry  
 II's edict  
 leaves  
 Struguil  
 bare of  
 men and  
 food,

the Irish  
 muster a  
 big army,  
 and besiege  
 Dublin.

Gothred,  
 King of  
 Man, and  
 others,

with thirty  
 ships, beset  
 Dublin  
 Harbour.

After two  
 months'  
 siege, and  
 when food  
 is scarce,

news  
 comes that  
 Robert  
 Stevenson  
 is besieged  
 in Carrick  
 Fort.

Maurice  
 and Rei-  
 mund Fitz-  
 Gerald  
 are in  
 Dublin.

of his hede. And this had he for his proude Spech loste the lyfe A.D. 1171. that thar-by-for mekely hym was graundid.

## [CHAPTER XX.]

**S**one aftyr this, many of them that weryn come into Irland Capitulum xx<sup>m</sup>.  
 with the Erle, and also tofor,—by the kynges comandement that come to ham as hit is to-for told,—leften the Erle, and wentyn into england. The pepil of Irland Saue the Erle narrow by-lad, both of his men that hym lefte, and of vytayle that trukked; wher-of he had grette plente ther-before out of Englonde. Thay gaderid ham to-gederis mych pepill, al the princes of the londe with al har Power, and be-segedyn Deuelyn on euery syd. and that was by procvrynge of laurance, Archebishope of Deuelyn, as men sayd, for loue of his Pepil / Also he sende his *lettres*, with o-conghoure-is *lettres*, kyng of connaght, to Gothrede, kyng of Man, and to othyr Princes of the northe ylonde, for to be-Sette the hauyn of Deuelyn; and large yeftys and presentis ham yaue, and mych mor ham promysid, forto helpe ham. and, for thay dred ham of al Suche adventures, Throgh that, that the Englysh-men haddyn So wel conqueryd vpon the Irysh, Thay comyn the radyr ham to helpe. and in lytyll whyle came xxx<sup>ii</sup>. shippis, ful of bold men wel arrayid to fyght, and be-setten the hauyn of amlyffy. whan the Erle and his men weryn wel two monthys besegid in the Cite of Deuelyn, and to ham come no Soccovr on lond ne on watyr, [\* Fol. 10.  
 \* And Vytayle ham falid, (and as Hit ys oft founde, Selde befallyth one Harme that more ne comyth aftyr, and euer gaderyth to helpe more and more,) Come Donald, Macmurghes sone of Okensely, to the Erle, and tolde hym, for that Robert Steuenes-Sone was besegid in his castel that he had herid at the Karrike, of the Citesseynes of weysford, and the men of Okenseley, wel iij<sup>e</sup>. M<sup>r</sup>. men; And few men had with hym; and, but hym come Socoure by the thyrd day, that of hym, ne thay that with hym weryn, neuer no more to thynke. In the Cite of Deuelyn, wer that tyme lefte with the Erle, Morice fiz Geraud, and Reymond, that from the kyng was come newly, Sory for ham-Selfe and for haris. and thegh they wer in grete angwysche for ham-Selfe, they weryn in wel more for har good brodyr, and for his, that amonge his enemys was besegyð, in

*videntes  
 Hibernici  
 comitem  
 et suos,  
 tam suo-  
 rum jac-  
 tura, quam  
 victualium  
 defectu . .  
 jam defici-  
 entes.*

*sed cum-  
 lante  
 semper in-  
 commoda  
 fortuna  
 sinistra.*

*quasi  
 tribus  
 virorum  
 milibus*

*tam suo-  
 rum quam  
 sui non  
 mediocriter  
 anxietate  
 turbati.*

A.D. 1171. hys fomen was beseyget, yn place febly I-garnset, but a dych & a Maurice hegge of thornes vpon, & lytell ost ston-wal. Moryce arose vp Fitz- to-fore the erl & the knyghtes, & seyde: "Nat to delytes, ne Gerald to-delines set to drawen, come we nat yn-to thys lande; both<sup>1</sup> for to 4 harangs sechen aduentures, & prouen ou<sup>r</sup> streynth vpon peryl of ou<sup>r</sup> his men: heedes. We haue I-stond awhyle & heghest, & now we bene

" We were the highest: we are now the lowest. [\* Fol. 10 b.] y-turned to the lowest, for so goth þe sykenesse of thys world; euery gladnesse ys endet wyth sorowe, & euery selth hath wnselth 8 at þe end. After þe bryght day, cometh the durke<sup>2</sup> nyght; & after, the durknesse of \* þe nyght ys away I-dryuen with þe lyght of þe sone. Ar thys, the ouer-hand was yn all styddes ou<sup>r</sup>, & plente of alle good; nowe beth so beloken, that non help vs ne 12

" No help can come to us. may come, noþer by lond ne by waty<sup>r</sup>. On oper halue, Robert steuenes-sone, whos herdy herth opened vs þe wey yn-to pys land, ys beseged fe<sup>r</sup> wyt hys fomen y<sup>n</sup> folk place. What ybde we? haue we any hope that ou<sup>r</sup> lond-folk vs come to helpe? tha<sup>r</sup>-to ne 16

" Let us fight! Tho' few, we've heart, and can beat our naked foes." tryst we nat; fo<sup>r</sup> we beth now yn such law I-sette, þat as þe Iresshe we<sup>r</sup>, a<sup>r</sup> thys, to the englyshe, also þe englysshe beth now to þe Iresshe. tha<sup>r</sup>-fo<sup>r</sup> gow owt stalwartly, assayllen ou<sup>r</sup> fomen! thegh we few be, we be<sup>n</sup> me<sup>n</sup> of herth, & wel I-wepned! ne shal 20

The English sally out, in three small divisions against 30,000 Irish. neu<sup>r</sup> naked rascayll, thegh þey many be, haue myght ne power vs to wyt-stond." Whan moryce hadde thys I-seyd, Reymond, þat was I-smyte wyth the same sorow of herth, seyde to ham þe same wordes, & mych mo<sup>r</sup>, 'that thay wolde<sup>n</sup> allerformest smyth vpon 24

þe kyng of konnaght, & hym that was heed, & formest & heghest of ham alle.' Al that the<sup>r</sup> were<sup>n</sup>, helde<sup>n</sup> herto, & ren astryf to wepne ham, & leppen to hors, & deled ham a thre, thegh thay fewe were<sup>n</sup>. In þe formest, was Reymond with twonty knyghtes; 28

In þe othe<sup>r</sup>, myles wyth .xxx<sup>ti</sup>.; In þe pryde, the Erl & morice, with fourty knyghtes & Squerys; & men an-hors & a-foot, to euery of these I-sete, as hyt wold by-falle: thay went ham out of þe syte stylly, about noon-dayes, & with so few me<sup>n</sup> assayllyde<sup>n</sup> a<sup>n</sup> 32

Reimund Fitz-Gerald fights best. hostes of .xxx<sup>ti</sup>. thousand. Reymond, amonge the fyrst, smote vpon ham; & fey<sup>r</sup> to-fo<sup>r</sup> al othe<sup>r</sup>: he smote tweyne through-out wyth a spee<sup>r</sup>. Reymond & Moryce twey sonnes, Geraud & Alexander,

<sup>1</sup> but.<sup>2</sup> MS. druke.

place febilly garnesyde, but a dyche and a hegge of thornys vpon, A.D. 1171. and a lytil stone wal. Moryce aros vp to-for the Erle and the knyghtes, and sayd: "Not to delytes, ne ydylnes, come we nat into this land; but forto sechyn adventures, and proven oure Streynth vpon peril of oure hedys. we haue stonde awhyle, and hygh; and now we ben turnyd to the louyst; for So is the schavng of this world. the end of euery gladnes is Sorrow. And euery Surnesse hath vnurnes at the ende. Aftyr the bryght day, comyth the nyght; and aftyr, the durkenes of the nyght is a-way dryven with the lyght of the Sone. Afor this, the ouerhand was in al places our, and plente of al goode. Now ben we So belokken, that none helpe vs ne may come, nothyr by lond ne by watyr. On the othyr Syde, Robert Steuenes-Sone, whos bolde hert openyd vs the way into this lond, is besegid fer with his fomen in febyll place. Whate abyde we? haue we any hoppe that oure lond-pepil wil come to helpe? tharto ne trust we not / for we byth now in Such lawe y-Sette, that<sup>1</sup> as the Iryssh wer, or this, to the Englysh, Also the Englysh byth now to the Iryssh. Wherfor go we out boldely assaylyn oure enemys! thegh we fewe be, we ben men of herte and wel wepenyd! ne shaft neuer nakyd raskayl, thegh they many be, haue myght ne powere vs to wythstond." Whan Morice had this sayd, Reymonde, that was Smyte wyth the Same Sorrow of herte, sayde to ham the same wordis, and mych mor, 'that thay woldyn alther-formyst Smyte vpon the kyng of connaght / and he that was hede and formyst of ham al.' Al that ther weryn, heldyn herto, and went to wepyn ham, and leppyn to hors, and delyd ham on thre, thegh thay few were. In the formyst, was Reymond, with twenty knyghtes; In the othyr, Milis, with xxx<sup>ti</sup>. In the thyrd, the Erle and Morice wy[th] fowrty knyghtes, and Morice with forty knyghtis and Squyeris; and men an-hors an[d] a-fote, to euery of thys y-sette, as hit wolde befall. they went ham out of the Cite Softely, about noon dayes, and wyth So few men assayledyn an hoste \* of xxx<sup>ti</sup> M<sup>r</sup>. Reymonde, amonge the fyght, fryst Smote vpon ham, and ferre to-for al othyr. he Smote two through-out with a Spere. Reymond and Morices two Sonnes, Geraud and alex-

*Non ad delicias, viri, non ad otia vocati.*

*Auxilium nobis, nec mare mittit, nec classis inimica permittit.*

*ut sicut Hibernicis Angli, sic et Anglis Hibernici simus.*

*hora quasi post nonam.*

[\* Fol. 10 b.]

<sup>1</sup> In the margin, 'as we byth ynglys on to the gryssh, so we byth gryssh on to the ynglys.'

A.D. 1171. thegh they weſ fyrst y-sete yn þe latest of þe host, throgh kynd  
 The little stalwardnesse hertly smytteð out to the forrest, & many dydden  
 English host rout to deth. Alle þe otheſ fresshely foloweden after; & yn lytell  
 the 30,000 whylle dysconfited al þe hoste, & sloweð so many, that no tonge 4  
 Irish, ne myght tell. Oconnoghough, þat that tym satte yn bathe,  
 vnnethe escaped: thay folwed the dyscomfytuſ oñ euery halue  
 and return tyll þe nyght ham leth. Than thay turned ayeyne, & name haſ  
 to Dublin pelfre, gold & syluyſ, clothes & wepne & hors, & wenteð wyth 8  
 with great spoil. They mychel gladnesse yn-to þe syte. Amorow þay lefte good kypynge  
 march (too late) to yn the syte, & turneden toward weysford by Odroon, wyth baners  
 aid Fitz- y-lacet, foſ to socouſ Robert steuenes-sonne.  
 Steph.n.

## [CHAPTER XXI.]

[Fol. 11a.] **T**he mene time, the folke of Weysford, wythe þe power 12  
 Fitz- of Okensely, wel thre þousand men, ayeyn haſ othes I-sweſ  
 Stephen's & haſ trowth, Robert steuenesson al vnwardly, with fyue knyghtes  
 scanty & a few bow-men I-found withyn hys feble castel, thay stynt nat to  
 garrison defend themselves bravely. assaylle. thay defendet ham full stalwarthly, thegh they fewe weſ; 16  
 & namely a knyght that hete Wyllyam Not, aftyſ Robert, ouer al  
 otheſ best dydde. Whan thay myght nat wyth streynth spede,  
 thay bethoght ham that wyth falshed & wyth treyson they wold  
 The Irish come wyth-yn ham. They sent to þe dyche twey bysshoppes, 20  
 deceive them; that on of Weysford, that otheſ of kyldaſ, & otheſ mo wyth ham  
 yn habyt of relygyoñ; thay broght with ham massebokes, &  
 Corpus domini, & relykes many, & sworne vp-on ham al, & vpoñ  
 swear haſ owne soules, that 'dyuelyn was Itak; & þe Erl & morice & 24  
 Dublin is Remond, & the englisshe-men, euerychon I-slawe; the host of  
 taken, and its Chiefs slain. leynestre & of Connaght comyng to ham-ward; & for good of  
 They offer hym, thay weſ to hym y-come; that he shold yeld vp his castel,  
 the & me shold saue hym lyf & lym, & al his & al har good; for he 28  
 garrison a safe transport to Wales. was ham so fre & so meke lord, me shold trewly brynge hym  
 Their false words are believd, and the garrison are slain or imprisoned. comen, that nothyng nold spaſ hym.' Robert leued haſ speche &  
 haſ fals othes; he came out & yeldet hym & his, to ham & to haſ 32  
 trowth. Thay weſ no rapet out I-comen, that me ne name ham  
 euerychone; & some thay slowen yn þe place; some þay vndide  
 & betten liddyſly & bonden; & wyth ham selfe I-bounden, kesten

andyr, thegh they were fryst Sette in the laste of the hoste, throgh A.D. 1171.  
 kynly bolul<sup>1</sup> hertely Smyten out to the formyst, and many dyddyn *innatae*  
 to deth. Al the othyr freschely folwedyn aftyr; And in lytyll *tamen*  
 Space of tyme dyscomfyted al the hoste, and slowyn so many, that *strenuitatis*  
 no tonge myght tell. Oconghoure, that that tyme Satte in bathe, [<sup>1</sup> for  
 vnneth Escapid. thay folwid the dyscomfiture on euery halue tyll *bolnys,*  
 59/14.]  
 the nyght ham lette. Than thay turned ayeyne, and toke har *victualibus*  
 pilfre, gold and Syluyr, clothis, and wepyn and hors, and wentyn *et vecturis,*  
 with myche gladnes into the Cite. A-morrow thay lefte good *spoliis*  
 keypyng in the cite, and turned toward Weysford by Odroof, wyth *quoque*  
 baneres ylacyd, forto Socoure Robert Steuenes-Sonne. *et armis*  
*onerati.*

## [CHAPTER XXI.]

The men-tyme, the pepil of weysford, with the Power of *Capitulum*  
 Tokenseley, wel iij<sup>e</sup>. M<sup>t</sup>. men, ayeyn har othis Sworne and har *xxj<sup>m</sup>.*  
 trouth, Robert Steuenes-Sonne al vn-wittyng, with v. knyghtes *Stephani-*  
 and a few bowmen, fownde within his febil castel, thay stynte not *dem im-*  
 to assayle. thay defendyd ham ful boldely, thegh they fewe were; *provisum.*  
 and Specialy a knyght that was callid William Not, aftyr Robert,  
 ouer al othyr best dyd. Whan thay myght not with streynth  
 Spede, thay bethoght ham that with falshede and with treysone *ad con-*  
 thay wolde come within ham. Thay Sende to the dyche two *sueta*  
 bysshopis, that one of weysford, that othyr of kyldare, and othyr *fallaciae*  
 mo with ham in habit of religio. thay broght with ham masbokes *tela fig-*  
 and Corpus domini, and relykis many, and Sworn vp-on ham al, *menta que*  
 and vpon har owyn Soulys, that 'Deuelyn was take; and the Erle, *dolosa con-*  
 and Morice and Reymond, and the Englysh-men, euerychoffe were *currunt.*  
 Slayn; and the hoste of leynystre and of connaght comynge to ham-  
 ward; and for good of hym, thay were to hym come; that he sholde *Stephani-*  
 yelde vp his castel, and thay wold Sawe his lyfe, and al his, and al *dae ipsius*  
 har good; for he was to ham so fre and So meke lorde, they wold *commodi*  
 trewely bryng hym and his ouer into walis, or the grete oste of *causa.*  
 his enemys to hym were come, that nothyng wolde hym Spare.  
 Robert belewid har Spech and har fals othys. He came out, and <sup>2</sup> *alii ver-*  
 yeldyd hym and his, to ham and to har trouth. Thay were no *beribus,*  
 radyr out-come, than thay toke ham euerychone; and Some thay *alii vero*  
 Slowyn in the Place; Some thay vndide and bettyn vickydy<sup>2</sup>; and *vulneribus*  
*graviter*  
*afflicti.*



A.D. 1171. willych In preson. Nat long theſ-after, come soth tythyngges of  
 The Irish the dysconfytuſ of dyuelyn, & the Erles comyng toward ham.  
 traitors the thraytours, whan thay hyt wyster, thay setten haſ own touz  
 burn Wex- the thraytours, whan thay hyt wyster, thay setten haſ own touz  
 ford, and of weysford aſyſ, & barnen hyte; & wenteſ ham-self, with wyf & 4  
 go to the of chyld, & al haſ oſer good & haſ preſons, ynto þe Iland of begger-  
 Island of Begeri, yng, þat hys I-ſete yn the entre of the hauen of Weysford. Þe  
 with Fitz- chylde, & al haſ oſer good & haſ preſons, ynto þe Iland of begger-  
 Stephen. yng, þat hys I-ſete yn the entre of the hauen of Weysford. Þe  
 In the paas host of leynester come ayeysn hym yn Odrone, & yaf hym fyght  
 of Odroon, yn a paas of o thykke wood, strange yn hym selue, & comerous. 8  
 Striguil Theſ weſ many of the Iryſſhe y-ſlaw yn that fyght; & þe Erl &  
 defeats a al hys cameſ hole & sound yn-to þe pleyne, ſawe o man that he  
 Leinster per forleſe; & meyleſ, ouſ al otheſ, as hys wone was, stalwardly  
 force. hym thaſ byladde. ¶ After that, as thay comyſ toward Weys- 12

The Wex- ford men threaten to kill Fitz-Stephen &c. The English hear of the loss of the Carrick garrison, and weep for it.

ford, comeſ meſ ayeysn ham, & tolden ham the aduentuſ of  
 Robert, & of the touſes bernyng, & ſeydeſ ham ſykerly, that ‘yf  
 pay to ham wold vend anoon, þay wold ſle haſ preſons, & ſend  
 ham the heeddes.’ Whaſ thus was y-hard amongſ the oſte, who-ſo 16  
 had I-hard þe wepyng, & the wenyng, & the ſorow that thay  
 mad, he myght wel ſygge that ‘neuer-more ſych reuth was amonge  
 meſ I-ſey.’ he was maſ that noon otheſ was hys eunyng In all  
 goodness<sup>1</sup>, & enſampell to all knyghtes that any stalwarthneſſe 20

[\* Fol. 11 b.] wold begynnyng; \* ffor yn Wales & eke yn Irland many aduentures  
 both god & yuel had I-fond, that otheſ weren hys aduentures hard,  
 thegh thay ſom tyme welcomeſ wyth hym. He was man mych  
 of body, <sup>2</sup> fayr vſage, ſoft & rody, nat ful becumliche; grete 24  
 meet-yeuer, large & fre throgħ al thyng, & of grett ſolace yn  
 Iappyng & pleyng; bot to mych, & vnmeſurable, he yaf hymſelf  
 lecherye<sup>3</sup>. The Erl was man of ſuche manere; <sup>3</sup> he was ſamroed,  
 with grey eghen, wommanes vſage, & ſproty, ſmal ſpech, 28  
 ſhort nek<sup>3</sup>; on al otheſ manere he was of fayſ body, & alonge  
 fre & meke; ham that he hade nat to yeue to, he quemed ham  
 with fayſ ſpech: out of wepne, he was as redy to otheſ byddyng

<sup>1</sup> O virum, virtutis unicum, verique laboris exemplum.—*Op.* v. 271.

<sup>2-2</sup> vultuque decenti; et statura paulo mediocritatem excedente: vir dapsilis et largus, liberalis et jocundus, sed vino Venerique trans modestiam datus.—*Op.* v. 271-2.

<sup>3-3</sup> Vir subrufus, lentiginosus, oculis glaucis, facie feminea, voce exili, colla contracto.—*Gir. Camb. Op.* v. 272. Rolls Series.

boundy[n]; and with hym-Selfe y-bound, kesten vnmercably in A.D. 1171. pryson<sup>1</sup>. Not lange ther-aftyr, come trew thythynges of the dyscomfyture of Deuelyn, and the Erlis comynge toward ham. the traytours, whan thay hit Vndyrstode, thay Setten har owyn toun of weysford' a fyre, and brentyn hit / And wenten hame-Selfe, with wyfe and chylde, and al hare othyr good and har prisoneres, into the Iland of begeryn, that is at the Entrest of the hawyn of weysford: the Hoste of Leynystre come ayeynys hame in odroon, and yafe ham fyght in a paace of thyke wodde, strange in hym-\* Selfe, and comeros<sup>2</sup>. Ther wer many of the Iryssh Slayn in that fyght; ande the Erle and al his came hole and Sounde into the Playn, Saue o man that he there forlese. And Meylere, ouer al othyr, as he was woned, boldely hym there bore / Aftyr that, as thay comen toward weysford, came men toward hame, and toldyn ham the aduenture of Robert and of the tounes brennyng, and † Sayd ham Surly, that 'yf thay wolde to ham wende anoone, thay wolde sle har prisoneres, and Send ham the hedys.' Whan this was herde amonge þe hoste, who-so hadd' herd the wepyng, and the lementacion and the Sorrow that thay made, he myght wel say that 'Such Sorrow was neuer amonge men Sey' // He was man, that none othyr was his eunyng in al goodnesse, and Ensampil of al knyghtys that any boldnys wolde begynne. for in Walis, and also in Irland, many aduentures both good and euyl had fovnde, that offer weryn his aduentures hard, thegh thay Sometyme wel comyn with hym. he was man myche of body, fayr vysage, Softe and rody, not ful becomlych; good mette-yeuer, large and fre throgh al thyng, and of grete Solace in Iaypyng; but to mych, and vnmesurably, he yafe hym-Selfe to Lechery //

The Erle was man of Such manere: he was wyth-out doute of grey eighen, womanes visage, and Sproty, smale Speche, Short neke: on al othyr maner, he was a fayre body, and alonge fre and meke. thay that he hadd not to yew, he plesyd with fayre Spech<sup>3</sup>. Out of wepyn, he was as redy to otheres byddyng, as thay to hym.

<sup>1</sup> in carceres, et vincula contruduntur.—*Op.* v. 271.

<sup>2</sup> quamquam in sui natura arcto nimis et inuio, concidibus tamen plurimum arte munito.—*Op.* v. 272.

<sup>3</sup> Quod re non poterat, verborum suavitate componebat.—*Ibid.*

*ad insulam  
Begeri . . .  
quae et  
sancta  
vocatur.  
[\* Fol. 11  
a.]*

*† ex parte  
quoque  
proditorum  
firmiter  
asserentes,  
quod si  
ad illos  
accedere  
forte prae-  
sumant,  
praecisa  
sibi suorum  
capita  
statim  
cuncta  
remittent.*

*Descriptio  
Roberti  
fiz Steuen.*

*A big man,  
liberal, but  
lecherous.*

*Descriptio  
Ricardi  
Comitis.*

A.D. 1171. as otheṛ to hys: alle thyng he dydde by rede of hys meṅ, & nothyng wyth-out. Out of bataylle, he had more of knyght thaṅ of host-ledeṛ; yn bataylle, more ledeṛ than knyght; & yn al aduenturs of bataylle, he was stydfast, ful connyng, & tokne of 4 recet to al hys host; & for noṅ vnhap he ne amayed hymself, ne yn wanhope ne fel; ne for ne good chaunce, he ne made hym the prutter ne þe more hautayṅ; bot euer-more, yn al aduen[tu]rs, of stydfast herth & trewe. 8

## [CHAPTER XXII.]

The Earl of Striguil

sails to England, and finds Henry II at Newnham, Gloucestershire, ready to cross to Ireland. The Earl yields Dublin and all Laven-towns to Henry,

who goes to Pembroke, and waits there for a favourable wind,

[\* Fol. 12 a.]

Henry's Norse goshawk

Whan the erl hadde I-hard the trayson þat was I-done to Robert, wyth myche sorow of hert he went hym with the host to Watyrford; & þer he fond heruy of mountmorthy, that thaṅ wase neweṅ I-comeṅ out of englond from þe kyng, 12 & broght wryttes, & eke by mych amonested the erl that he shold wend to the kyng. he hade shyppe redy, & good wynd; he name heruy with hym, & went ouer; come to the contre of clandechestre, to Newenham, ther he fond the kyng with mychel 16 host, redy to pass yṅ-to Irland. & after myche speche betwene ham ymade, & myche dalyaunce, throug heruyes modelyng & comyng about þe erle, & eke hys besechyng, the kyng name of hym manred for to hold leynestre of hym; & the Erl graunted þe kyng, 20 dyuelyṅ, & all the hauen tounes vpon þe see, with haṛ Candredes & castelles þer-vpon y-set; & that otheṛ parte of hys conquestre, he & hys heyres sholdeṅ holdeṅ of þe kyng & hys heys. Whan thys was al on thys manere I-done, the kyng toke the wey yn-to 24 south Wales, & cam to pembroke; & theṛ yn þe contre abode with hys host longe whyle, aṛ he had wynd for to passe. The whyle that he was thaṛ, he hadde houndes & haukes, as man that mych delayed yn suche game. .O. day he went by the strond of þe see, 28 & baṛ a mych goshawke of northwey vpon hys hand. Than sat vp-on an hegh clyff ouer the strond, a faucon gentel, negh hys nest, theṛ he was woned to brede. The \*goshake sawe the facon, & a-bated to hym. the kyng that saw; & kest hym of hys hand; & 32 he nam hys flyght toward the facon, hym fore to henten: the facon sawe hym comyng, & nam hys flyght an heghe, & escaped of hym; þe goshawke turned ayeine to þe kynges hand; & aṛ

Al thyng he did by consayle of his men, and nothyng *without* / A.D. 1171. Out of battayl, he had more of knyght than of hoste-leder; in battayle / more ledder than knyght / and in al aduentures of *In praelio positus, fixum suis recuperationis et refugii signum manebat.* battayle, he was stydfaste, ful conyng, and tokyn of recette to al his hoste; and for no vnshap he was not aferde hym-Selfe, ne in vanhope ne felle; ne for no good chaunce, he was not the Pruttyr, ne the heyer; but euer-more, in al aduentures, of stydfaste herte and trewe.

## [CHAPTER XXII.]

**W**Han the Erle had herde the trayson that was done to *Capitulum* Robert, *xxij<sup>m</sup>.* with myche Sorrow of herte he went with al the hoste to watyrford; and ther he founde heruey of montmurthy, that that tyme was come out of England frome the kyng, and broght writtes, and Eke mych amonneschyd the Erle that he sholde wend to the kyng. he had ship redy, and good wynd; he toke heruey with hym, and went ouer; come to the contrey of clandecestre, to New-Enham, ther he found the Kyng with grette hoste, redy to Passe Into Irland. and aftyr mych Speche betwen ham made, and myche delyaunce, throug herueyes medlyng and comyng about the Erle, and also his besechyng, the kyng toke of hym concayle forto holde leynystre of hym; and the Erle graunted the kyng, deuelyn, *circum-ventu pariter et interuentu* and al the hawyn tonnes vpon the see, with hare caudredes and castelis there-vpon sette; and that othyr Parte of his conqeste, \* He *[\* Fol. 11 b.]* and Hys heyres sholde Holde of the Kyng and [his] Heyrys. Whan this Was on this manere done, the kyng toke the way into South walis, and came to Pembroke<sup>1</sup>; and ther in the contrey abode with his hoste longe tyme, ar thay had wynd to Passe. The whyle that he was there, he hadd houndes and haukys, as man that mych delytyth in Such game. O day, he went by þe see stronde, and bar a mych goshauke of Norway on his hande. Than Sate vpon an hey clyfe ouer the stronde, a faucon gentyll, ney his neste, ther he was wonyd to brede. the goshauke Saw the faucon, and abated to hym *laeva projecit* hym forto smyte. the faucon saw hym comyng, and toke his flyght an hey, and Escapid of hym. the goshauke turnyd ayeyn to the

<sup>1</sup> Et Penbrochiam veniens, pulcherrimam in brevi Milverdico portu [Milford Haven] classem conjunxit.—Gir. Camb. Op. v. 273.

A.D. 1171. he myght fully take to hym, the facoñ smote to hym from an heyght, & forceue hym the rygge, & kest hym adoune dede at the kynges foote. Al thay that hyt saw, hadden ther-of myche wondyr. Than bade the kyng, that fro that tyme, the bryddes of that facons 4 neste shold euer-moñ be I-kepte to hys owne be-houe; & so thay weñ, euery yeyr; & yn al hys kyng-dome wer noñ so good facons I-found, ne so bold.

## [CHAPTER XXIII.]

O'Rourke, king of Meath, **T**he while that thys was, Roueryke, the kyng of Myth,— 8 awayted that the erl was out of lond; & Reymond & lytel folk was beleft ar dyuelyn, the syte & þe contrey for to kepe,— with mych folke come to dyuelyñ about myd-heruest, & assaylled the walles of þe syte with gret streynth & loly crye, & wend 12 wel to haue I-take þe syte, & al þat þer-In was. bote ther streynthys & stalwarthnesse, hyt mote nedes shewe hymself: Myles de Cogañ & hys meñ preuely wenten out, & smote grymly vpon ham, so þat yn lytell whyl thay wereñ al dyscomfyted. Bot 16 roury hymself vnnethe escaped; & hys sone, a welle stalwarth man amonge hys folk, was thañ I-slawe, wyth many other.

## [CHAPTER XXIV.]

Nota: de<sup>1</sup> **A**fti<sup>r</sup> this, whan the kyng had I-dyght al that nede was to so noble comynge ynto Irlond, he went to seynt 20 dauyes; & besoght the holy mañ, seynt dauy, with grett deuocion & mych wurshyppe. And tho wedeñ hym come, & wynd at wylle. He put hym to saylle; passed the see, hool & sound; & arryued at Waterford on seynt lukes day, with fywe houndred knyghtes, 24 & men, an hors an a foot, fulle many. Than was fulfilled a prophycye that Merlyn seyde: "out of þe Este shal come a fyñ berynge, & shal Irlond al about for-swely." And seynt Molyng seyde þus: "Out of þe eeste shal come a stronge thondred, & shal 28 smyte yn-to þe weste, & al the streynth of Ormond adoun brynge." He arryued, the yeñ of hys kyngedome, senthe; of hys elde .xl.;

<sup>1</sup> Later note in right margin: 'For in Martilogis the king brought 400 great shippes into Ireland, and in short time subdued the whole lande, beinge governed by 5 kinges, all which submitted to the king, except the king of Connaght, who kept himself in woods and marishes.'

kyngys hand; and, Ar he myght fully take to hym, the faucon smote to hym from an hey, and for-clew hym the bake, and kest hym doune ded at the kynges fote. Al thay that hit Saw, ther-of had grete wondyr. <sup>1</sup>Than comandid the kyng, that fro that tyme, birdis of that faucon-is neste shold euer-more be kepe to his owyn behow; and So thay were, euery yere. And in al his kyngdome wer none So good faucones y-found, ne so bolde.

A.D. 1171.  
*1 singulis  
rex annis,  
circa nidi-  
ficationis  
tempora,  
propter  
falcones  
terrae  
illius, qui  
marinis  
in rupi-  
bus exclu-  
duntur,  
mittere  
consuevit.*  
Capitulum  
xxij<sup>m</sup>.

## [CHAPTER XXIII.]

**T**He mene-tyme that this was / Roueryke, the kyng of mythe<sup>1</sup>,—be-helde his tyme, and that the Erle out of lond was, and Reymond and lytil peple was lefte at Deuelyn, the Cite and the contrey to kepe,—wyth mych pepyl come to deuelyn about myd hervyst, and assaylid the wallis of the Cite with gret Streynt and grymly cry, and wend wel to haue take the Cite, and al that therin was. But ther streynthis and bolnys, hit mote nede Schow hym-Selfe : Miles de Cogan and his men priuely wentyn out, and smote grymly vpon ham, so that in lytyll whyle thay weryn al dyscomfyted. But Roury hym-Selfe vnneth Escapyd; and his Sonne, a wel bolde man amonge his pepil, was ther Slayn, with many oper.

*Sed quoniam  
virtus  
claudi  
nescit; et  
ignis oppressus, in  
flammam  
erumpit.*

## [CHAPTER XXIV.]

**A**fty this, whan the kyng had dygh al that nede was to nobyl comynge into Irland; he went to Seynt Dauyes, and besoght the holy man, seynt Dauy, with gret deuocion and myche wyrehippe. and then wynde and weddyr hym come at wille. he putte hym to sayle, and passyd the see, holde and Sounde; and londyd at Watyrford on Seynte Luke-is day, with fyue hundred knyghtes, and men an hors and a foote, ful many. Than was fulfillid a prophesy that Merlyn Sayd thus / “Out of the Este shal come a fyre brennyng, and shal Irland al aboute forswely.” And seynt Molyng said thus, “Out of the Este shal come a stronge thondyr, and shal smyte into the weste, and al the streynth of Ormond adoune bryng.” he londyt, the yere of the kyng-dome, the Senfte of his age, the xl; of our lordys incarnacion, M<sup>r</sup>. Clxxij; and was

Capitulum  
xxiiij<sup>m</sup>.  
*Nota de  
primo  
aduentu  
Regis  
Anglie in  
hiberniam.*  
*Veniet ab  
aurora  
turbo  
validus.*

<sup>1</sup> rex monoculus Medensis Ororicus . . . cum multitudine magna, circa kalendas Septembris, Dubliniam venit.—Op. v. 274.

A.D. 1171. of ouȝ lordes Incarnacion .M.C.lxxij; & was poppe, *Alexander* the thryd; Emperouȝ, ffryderyke; kynge of fraunce, lowyse.

## [CHAPTER XXV.]

Henry II  
has Fitz-  
Stephen

**T**he kynge abode at *Waterford* a fewe dayes. Theder come the sytzeyns of weysford, & broght to hym Robert 4 steuenesse-sonne, as for gret seruyce, & yn hope of good reward; ffor as myche as he come yn-to Irlond, lond to conquer, wythout auctoryte of hegheȝ prynce, & yaue otheȝ, ensample for to comen ynto the lond. The kynge, at the byggynnyge, told of hym grete 8

\* vnworthynesse; & edwytte hym, *witȝ* grete thretynge, of that grete boldnesse; & lete take hym, y-bound as he was, & gyued hym to another, & put hym yn *Rathnyldestouȝ* for to kepeȝ. Soine 12

per-after come the kynge of *Corke*, *Dermot Maccarthy*, & yeld hym to the kynge, & dydde hym homage, & `swaȝ hym hold othes, & delyuered hym ostages for to be to hym hold & trew, & beȝ hym truage euery yeȝ of hys land. ffrom thus, the kynge went wythe the hoste to *lysmore*, & theȝ was twey dayes; & fro 16 thus, went to *Casshle*. Theder came *donald Obreeȝ*, kynge of *lymeryke*, to hym vponȝ the watyȝ of *ssur*; & for to hawe pees, yeld hym to þe kynge yn al manere as *Maccathy* hadde done. The kynge set kepers both at *Corke* & at *lymeryke*; & to hym 20 comen the hoste of both contrees aftyr *Maccathy* & *Obreen*, & yeld ham to þe kynge, & becomen hys meyn by othes & ostages; so that theȝ was none that waȝ of any name yn al *Monestre*, that by hys good wylle ne yeld hym to the kynge. Whan thys was al I-done, 24 the kynge, *witȝ* mych wyrsshyppe & wyth ryche yiftes, lete euery maȝ wend yn-to hys owne lond, & went hym-self by *Tybrach* ayeyne to *Waterford*. þer was ayeyne *Robert* y-broght to-for hym. The kynge saw hym, & bethoght hym of þe gret goodnesse þat 28 was yn hym, & of hys stalwarthnesse & hys hardy hert; of many good seruices that he & hys hadden I-done, wyth mych trauaylle & grette perille of lyue: he had grett reuth of hym yn hys hert; &, through besechyngge of hegh men, al hys wreth, wyth good hert 32 he hym foryaf, & delyueret hym out of prysouȝ, & lete delyuere hym hys londes þat hym wereȝ be-nomenȝ, of *Weysford* & of þe

[\* Fol. 12  
b.]

put in  
prison.  
The King  
of Cork  
does  
homage to  
Henry II;

so do the  
King of  
Limerick,

and all  
the best  
folk of  
Munster.

Henry II  
returns to  
Waterford,

pardons  
Fitz-  
Stephen,  
and re-  
stores him  
his lands.

pope, Alexandyr the thyrd; Emperoure, Frederike; kynge of A.D. 1171. Fraunce, Lowys.

## [CHAPTER XXV.]

**T**He Kyng abod at Watyrforde a few Dayes. Thedyr come [Fol. 12  
the Cytteseynys of Weysford, and broght to hym Robert <sup>a.</sup> *Capitulum*  
Steuenes-Sonne, as for grete Seruyse, and in hope of good reward, *xxv<sup>m</sup>.*  
for-as-mych as he came into Irland, lond to conquere, wythout *quasi sub*  
auctorite of heghyr Prince, and yaue othyr ensampil forto come *praetextu*  
into londe. The kynge, at the begynnyng, tolde of hym gret *obsequii,*  
Vnuorthynys; and reprewid hym, with grete trefyng, of that grete *eo quod*  
boldnes; and lette take hym, bound as he was, and gywid hym to *Hiberniam*  
anothyr, and Put hym in Rathnyldys toure forto kepyn. Sone *citra ipsius*  
ther-aftyr come the kynge of Corke, Dermot Maccharthy, and *assensum*  
yelde hym to the kynge, and dyd hym homage, and Sware hym olde *primus*  
othis, and delyuerid hym hostagis forto be to hym holde and trew, and *intraverit,*  
ber hym truage euery yere of his land. From thens the kynge went *alique*  
with the hoste to Lysmor, and ther was two dayes; and fro thens *malig-*  
went to Cassell. Thedyr came Donal Obreyne, kynge of Lymerik, *nandi*  
and to hym on the watyr of Sure; and for-to haue pees, yelde hym *occasione*  
to the kynge in al maner as Macchardy hadd' done. The kynge *praesti-*  
Sette keperes both at Corke and at Lymerike; and to hym come the *terit,*  
Best of both contreis aftyr maccharthy and Obref, and yelde ham *vincum*  
to the kynge, and be-comyn his men by othis and hostagys, so that *et cap-*  
ther nas none that was holde of any reputacion in al Monester, that *tivum*  
by his good wyll ne yelde hym to the kynge. Whan this was al *adducunt.*  
done, the kynge, with mych vyrcchip and wyth ryche yeftys, lette *rex videns*  
euery man wend into his owyn lond, And wente hym-Selfe by *virum*  
Tybraght ayeyne to watyrford. ther was ayeyn Robert broght *tantis for-*  
to-for hym. The kynge Saw hym, and bethoght hym of the grete *tunae peri-*  
goodnesse that was in hym, and of his boldnys and his hardy herte, *culis, et*  
of many good seruyces that he and his haddyn donē with mych *toties, ex-*  
trauayl and grete Perel of lyfe. He had of hym grete Pitē in his *positum.*  
herte; and, throw besechyng of good men, al his wreth with good  
herte he hym for-yaue, and delyuerid hym out of prisone, and  
delyuerid hym his londys that of hym wer take fro, of Weysford



A.D. 1171. contrey about. Some syggeñ that the kynge lete to-draw the  
 Master Gerald says no-thing of traitors being drawn and quarterd.  
 traytours that hym betrayed; Bot Maystre Geroud ne telleth  
 nothyng *per*-of; & theŕ-fore I ne tel hyt nat to sothe, bot hyt  
 oght well be so.

4

## [CHAPTER XXVI.]

Whan þe kynge had thus I-do, he left at Waterford, Robert  
 beranardesson, wyth mych meyne; &, by Ossery, name the  
 wey toward dyuelyñ. In that wyage, the kynge of Ossery came  
 to hym, & yeld hym to the kynge; & whan he hade I-bydde 8  
 awhylle at dyuelyñ, thedeŕ come Al þe heghest Iresshe-meñ of  
 leynestre, & besoghten pees, & yolden ham to the kynge. Roryke  
 O'conghouŕ, the kynge of Connaght, ayeysn the kynges messagers  
 at the watyŕ shynnen,—that ys to wytteñ, hugñ þe lacy & wyllyam 12  
 Henry II's messen-  
 gers.  
 Al-delines sone,—theŕ he yeld hym to þe kynge; & the kynge of  
 Myth Also; So that theŕ nas none heghñ mañ yn Irland, that ne  
 come to the kynges owne body, or sent messagers for to be-comen  
 hys man, & yeld hym to hym, sawe only thay of vlnestre. Than 16  
 Prophecies was fulfylled a prophycye that seyñth Molyngse seyð: “To-foŕ hym  
 [\* Fol. 13 shall foot-<sup>a</sup>falle þe prynces, & trogh<sup>1</sup> boxom-fastines<sup>2</sup> the lyme of  
 a.] pees shul vnderfonge.” Merlyn seyð an-other: “Tho is lyght, the  
 of St. foules of the Iland shollen togedder fle; & the most of ham, with 20  
 Moling and har wenges I-brant, shollen ouerthrowen yn thraldome; the fyf deles  
 Merlin. shollen be broght yn-to on, & the syxt shal ouercome the strengest  
 The Irish nobles comen to þe kynges court to feste; & myche wonder ham thought 24  
 wonder at the fine meals and decorations at Henry II's feast.  
 of the noble seruice that þey *per* saw, & of the myche plente of  
 mete & of drynke, of bordes I-sette, & fayŕ clothes vpon; the hegh  
 seruice of panetrye & buttellerie, & ryche vessels of gold & syluer;  
 the many manere metes of kechen, on the manere of Englonð, 28  
 whych thay had neuer *per*-to-fore I-sey. After that þe fest was  
 heghly & fayŕ I-hold, euery man went wyth gladnesse yn-to hys  
 owne. In that tyme, weren bowemen at ffynglas I-horberowed,  
 & wenten ynto chyrche haye, & hewen adoun trees, that seyntes 32  
 by old tyme hadden *per* I-sete: *per* came sodeyñ deth vpon ham,  
 euerychoñ. [See Giraldus's *Topogr. Hibern. Opera*, v. 135.]

Sacri-  
 legious  
 bowmen  
 die sud-  
 denly.

<sup>1</sup> A later overline *h* is above the *tr* of 'trogh.'

<sup>2</sup> or 'fastmes.'

and of the contrey aboute. Some sayne that the kynge lette to draw the traytours that hym betrayed. But Maystyr Geraud ne tellyth nothyng ther-of; and therfor y ne tell hit not for throuth, but hit oght wel be so.

## [CHAPTER XXVI.]

Whan the kynge had thus donē, he lefte at watyrford, Robert Barnardessonne, with mych pepill; and, by Ossory, toke his way to Deuelyn. In that vyage, the kynge of Ossory came to hym, and yolde hym to the kynge. and whan he had bydd awhyle at denelyn, thedyr came all the heghyst Irysh-men of leynstre, and be-soghten pees, and yeldyn ham to the kynge. Roryke Oconghoure, the kynge of connaght, ayeynēs the kynges messaungeris at the watyr of shynnyn,—that is [to] Say, hugh de Lacy and Willam aldelines Sone,—ther he yelde hym to the kynge; And the kynge of Myth also; So that ther was no man of any reputacioun that he ne come to the \* Kyngys owyn Body, or Sent messangeres forto Becomyn Hys man, Saue only thay of vlyster // Than was fulfillid a prophesy that Seynt Molyng sayd: “To-for hym shal foote-fall the pryncys, and, through buxumfastnys, the lyme of pees shal vndyrfonge” // Merlyng sayd another prophesy: “To his lyght, the foulous of the yland shullyn to-geddyr fle; and the mest of ham, with har wynges y-brante, shullyn ouer-throwyn in thraldome<sup>1</sup>. the fywe delys shal be broght into one, and the Syxte shal ouercome the Strongyst placis of Irland” / Whan the Mydwyntyng came, many of the heghest men comyn to the kynges courte to feste; and mych wondyr thay had of the nobil seruyce that they ther Sawe, and of the mych plente of mete and of drynke, of bordys sette, and fayre clothis vpoñ; the hey Service of panetrye and buttellerye, and rych wesselis of golde and Syluyr; the many maner metys of kechen, on the maner of Eng- lond; whych they had neuer ther-to-for Seyn<sup>2</sup>. Aftyng that the feste was ryaly holde, euery man went wyth gladnys into his owyn. In that tyme weryn bow-men at Fynglas y-herberowid, and wentyn Into church-hay, and hewyn adovn trees that Seyntys by olde tym had ther Sette: there came Sodayn deth vpon ham eueryoñ.

<sup>1</sup> corruent in capturam.      <sup>2</sup> Why wasn't this crane bit englisht? 'carne gruina, quam hactenus abhorruerant, regia voluntate passim per aulam vesci coeperunt.'—Op. v. 280.

Capitulum  
xxvj<sup>m</sup>.

nunciis  
regis . .  
occurrit.

[\*Fol. 12  
b.]

procedent  
principes,  
et fucato  
sub foedere  
pacis  
amorem  
consequuntur.  
sextus  
Hiberniae  
moenia  
subvertet.

A.D. 1172. **T**he lond was than yn good pees by-foꝛ þe kynge, & Henry II, wishing to purify Irish life, assembles the Clergy at Cashel. þe pees wel I-hold: the kynge had wel y-hard that þe folk of the lond was of vnclene lyf, & ayeyne god & holy chyrche; he thoght that he wold brynge the folk ynto better lyf, & myche desyr hadde theꝛ-to; he leth assembly al þe clergie of þe londe at Casshell, & that me enquered & herd openly the fylthede of the lond-folk yn whych thay ladde haꝛ lyf; & setten hyt yñ wrytte, vndeꝛ the bysshoppes sele of lysmore, that was eke legat of þe court of Rome, & heghest of dygnyte ouer al thay that theꝛ weꝛ; & þe statutes of holy chyrche Whych yit meñ halte, yn þe manere þat holy chyrche ham holte yn Englund, he lete thaꝛ sette: whych statutz, yn the wordes that thay wereñ theꝛ I-swewed, ys non harme thegh me expresse ham here :—

## NARACIO. [CHAPTER XXVIII.]

NARACIO. **I**n the yer of ouꝛ lordes Incarnacioñ m.c.lxxij, the forme yer that þe kynge of england, henry, Irland wan; Crystyen, bysshoppe of lysmore, & legat of þe court of Rome<sup>1</sup>; 16 Dougher, Erchebysshoppe of Casshell; laurenz, Erchebysshoppe of dyuelyñ; Cathel, erchebysshoppe of Connaght; wyth leed bysshoppes, Abbotes, priours, & many other prelates of holy chyrche yn Irland, throug the same kynges commaundement comeñ to-geddeꝛ yn þe See of Casshell; &, for þe state of holy chyrch to brynge yn-to better fourme, helden theꝛ haꝛ conssaylle. To thys conseyl, comeñ these from the kynge I-sent: a noble man Rolf, abbot of byldewdys; Ralf, Erchedekene of landaf; Nychol the prest, & otheꝛ many, the kynges clerkes & hys messagers. The statutes oꝛ constytucions of that consaylle beñ these here I-wrytten, & by the kynges auctoryte I-stablet. ¶ The fyrst ys, that crysten men In Irland shvllen leueñ haꝛ kynnes-wommen<sup>2</sup> that crysten men In Irland shvllen leueñ haꝛ kynnes-wommen<sup>2</sup> 28 [† Fol 13. b.] their concubine kins-women, and marry legally. 2. Children shall be baptized in church fonts. † Late sidenote in MS.: 'Establishment of orders for the Clergy, and matters of Religion.'<sup>2</sup> repudiato cognatarum et affinium contubernio, legitima contrahant matrimonia, et obseruent.—*Op.* v. 282. <sup>3</sup> catezizentur. <sup>4</sup> baptizentur.

**T**he lond was than in good pees by-for the kyng, and the pees wel holde. the kyng herde that the pepil of the londe was of vnclē lyfe, and ayeȳn godd and holy churche. he thogh[t] that he wolde bryng the pepil Into bettyr lyfe; and mych desyr had therto. he Sende for al the clergy of the lond at Casshel; and that he Enquerid and herde opynly the fylthed of the lond-pepill in whych thay lad har lyfe; and Setten hit in writ, vndyr the Bischopis sele of lysmore, that was also legat of the courte of rome, and heyghest of dygnyte ouer al thay that there were. and the Statutes of holy church, whyche yit men halte <sup>1</sup> in the maner that holy church ham holte in England, he lette thare Sette: Whych Statutes, in the Wordis that thay weryn ther Shewyd, is none harme thegh y expresse ham here:—

[CHAPTER XXVIII.]

**I**N the yere of oure lord-is incarnacyon M<sup>i</sup>. Clxxij, the fryste yere that the kyng of En[g]land, henry, Irland conquerid<sup>2</sup>, Crystyn, Byschope of Lysmore, and Legate of the Courte of Rome; Dougher, Archebyschope of Cassel; Laurance, Arcebishope of Deuelyn; Cathel, Arcebyschope of connaght; with othyr Byschopis, abbotis, pryorys, and many othyr prelatys of holy church in Irland, by the same kyngys comaundement comyn to-geddre in the Cee of Casshel; and, for the State of holy church to bryng into bettyr state, heldyn ther har consayle. to this Consayle comȳn thes frome the kyng, that is to say: a nobyl-man Rolfe, Abbote of byldewais; Ralfe, Archedekyn of landaf; Nycol the Preste, and othyr many of the kyngys clerkys and his messagers // The Statutes or constytuciones of that consayle ben this her writtyn, And by the kynges auctorite Stabelid<sup>r</sup> // The fryst is, that crystyn men In Irland sholde lewe j<sup>m</sup>. har kynnys-women, whych thay haue ar this holde to har will out of Spoushode, and lawfully spouse othyr women, \* and Spoushode Lawfully Holde // The Seconde is, that the chyldryn at the church dore sholde be y-primseined of the prestes honde, and in the holy fantstonys in hare modyr chyrchis to be yfullid. The thyrde, that ij<sup>a</sup>.

*Capitulum xxvij<sup>m</sup>.*

*tam enormitatibus quam spurcitiis.*

*Statuta Cassellensia.*

*<sup>1</sup> quae adhuc extant.*

*Capitulum xxvij<sup>m</sup>.*

*Catholicus Tuotuenensis (Conactensis, Harl. 177).*

*Nicolaus capellanus.*

*cognatarum et affinium.*

[\* Fol. 13 b.]

<sup>2</sup> conquesid, MS.

- that euery crysten man lawfullych pay hys tethynges to hys parochy chyrche, of corne & of al otheṛ thyng that a yeṛ hym aneweth<sup>1</sup>. ¶ The ferthe, that al þe londes of holy chyrche & haṛ possessiours, of al herthly askyng be quyte; & namely, that no kynges ne other heye men, ne heṛ sonnes, ne heṛ meygnees, mette ne herbrowe yn chyrche londes, ne ask, ne wyth streynth ne be so hardy to take; & that Cursed me[te] that four syth a yeṛ was wonet to be asked yṇ chyrche tounes, & of the next neighbors, neuer eft be asked. ¶ The fyft, that of manslaghttre that lewed men doth, whan man maketh fyṇ w<sup>it</sup>h hys fomaṇ, the clerkes that ben hys kynnes-meṇ, no þyng ne yeue ne yeld ther-to; bot, as thay beṇ gyltles of the dede, also be thay harmles of þe payement. ¶ The syxth, that whaṇ a man ys seke, he shal make testament openly to-for hys prestes of the parorch, & to-fore hys neighbors; & after hys dettes & seruantes hyre out take, dele hys catel a thre; yf he hath wyf & chyldeṇ, that on to hys spoused wyf, that other to hys shyldreṇ, The thryde to hys testament. And yf he hath non chyldeṇ by spouse, the good be y-deled bytwene hym & hys wyf, euery Ilyche; & yf the wyf deyeth, the goodes be I-deleth a thre bytwene the housbond, & the chyldeṇ, & the wyf. ¶ The .vij. that whaṇ a man otheṛ a woman deyeth, haṛ wathe<sup>2</sup>, & the seruyce of holy chyrche, & the buryeng, be man-shyply I-done.
- ¶ The .viij. that al meṇ & women wyrshyppe holy chyrche, & oft go to chyrche; & holy chyrche yṇ al seruyce be gouerned on the maner that hyt ys yn England. In al these thynges, the kynges ynto the lond come, many defautes weṛ yn the land I-found, & mych horynesse or oryble synnes that me ne aght nat to speke of, that—through grace of god, & by the kynges purueyaunce & hys myght—weren amendet, & yn better wonne I-bro3th. ¶ The prymat of Ardmagh was nat at thys conssaylle, ne thedeṛ myght come, for he wase old Man & feble; Bot he come theṛ-after to dyuelyṇ, & graunted yn al thyng the kynges purueyaunce. In thys tyme was the wedeṛ so stronge, & the wynd so awayward, that yn al the wyntyr ne myght no shyppe com ouer yn-to Irland.

<sup>1</sup> 16th century side-note: 'the privileges and frydom gyven to the church, and londs ther of.' <sup>2</sup> ?mistake for 'wache,' or *th* used for *k*, as on p. 67, l. 4.

euery crystyn man lawfully pay his thethis to his Parashe church, A. D. 1171-2.  
of corne, and of al othyr thynges that a yere hym aneweth // The iii<sup>j</sup>.  
iii<sup>j</sup>e. that al the landis of holy church and har Possessiones of al animalium,  
Erthly askynge be quyte; and namely, that no kynges†, ne othyr hey frugum,  
men, ne her Sones, ne her menyces, mete ne herbrow in church ceterarum-  
londys, ne aske / ne with streynth ne be So hardy to take; and that que proven-  
Cursed met that foure tymes a yere was wonyd to be askyd in tionum.  
church townes, and of the nexte neghbores, neuer aftyr to be axed [† MS.  
<sup>1</sup>.  
The V<sup>e</sup>, that of manslaghtre that lewid men doth, whan men makyth v<sup>e</sup>.  
fyne with his enemy, the clerkys that ben his kynnyes-men, nothyng quoties  
ne yeue therto; but, as thay ben gyltes† of the dede, also thay be inle cum  
harmeles of the pament. The vj<sup>e</sup>. that whan a man is seke, he inimicis  
shal make testament opynly, to-for his preste of the parash and suis com-  
to-for his evyncrystynnes and aftyr his dettis and his seruauntes ponunt.  
vags out-take, dele his catel athre. yf he haue wyfe and chyldryn, [† MS.  
that on to the Spousyd wyf, that othyr to his chyldryn, the thyrd glytles.]  
to his testament. And yf he haue no childe [by] Spouse, the good be <sup>2</sup> inter  
y-delid<sup>2</sup> betwen hym and his wyfe, euery y-lyke. and yf the wyfe ipsum et  
deyeth, the good be y-delid at thre <sup>2</sup>, betwene the hosbonde, and the liberos  
chyldryn, and the wyfe / The vij<sup>e</sup>, that whan a man oper woman bipartiri  
deyeth, har wache, and the seruyce of holy church<sup>2</sup>, and the burienge, debent.  
be wyrchply done // The viij<sup>e</sup>. that al men and women wyrchply vij<sup>e</sup>.  
holy church, and ofte go to church; and holy church in al seruyce be <sup>2</sup> et missa-  
gouerned on al maner that hit is in England. In al thes thynges, rum et vigi-  
the kyng Into the lond come<sup>4</sup>, many defautes were in the land found, liarum ex-  
and mych felth or orribil synnys that y ne oght not to Speke of, hibitioe.  
that,—by the grace of god and by the kynges purueyaunce and his multimoda  
myght—weryn amendid, and in bettyr state broght // The Primat malorum  
of Ardmagh was not at this consail, ne thedyr myght come, for he genera.  
was olde man and febill. But he come ther-aftyr to deuelyn, and [<sup>5</sup> Harl.  
graunted in al thyng the kynges Purueyaunce<sup>5</sup>. In this tyme was 177 ends a  
the weddyr so stronge, and the wynd so awayward, that in al the chapter  
wyntyr ne myght no shipp come ouer Into Irland. the kyng here too,  
and leaves  
out the  
Archbp.'s  
white cow.]

<sup>1</sup> et quod de villis ecclesiarum cibus ille detestabilis, qui quater in anno a iuinis comitibus exigitur, de cetero nullatenus exigatur.—Op. v. 282.

<sup>4</sup> Abl. abs.—Nam ante ipsius adventum in Hiberniam.—Op. v. 283.

A. D. 1171-2. The kynge went to Watyrford, & abode ther̄ a whyle, & ful mych desyre adde for to hyr tythynges from beyont see. & of the knyghtes that he fond \*yn Irland, he drogh̄ to hym sleghly for o coste the beste: as Reymond, Myles de Cogan, wyllyam Masturel, & other, for to make hys part þe strenger̄, & the Erles parte the fobler[<sup>so</sup>]. ¶ After the myd-lente, come shyppes yn-to Irland, that hard tythynges hym broght, & lydder, bothe out of engeland & out of fraunce, And normande, & other londes; ffor ynto Normandy 8  
 A. D. 1172. He hears bad news: weren ycome twey cardinales, from the poppe Alexander y-sent (that oon heght *Albertus*, & that other *Theodynus*), for to serchen & enqueren of the holy martyres deth, seynt Thomas: ryghtful men, as me vnderstond, & to that lawfully y-chosen / natheles thay 12 weren Romayns; & such folweth oft coueytise; &, bot the kynge come the rather to ham, the kyngedome of england, & al the londes that he was lord of, sholden be entredyted. & (as me fynd oft <sup>1</sup>, good aduentures comen oft slowly & aloon, bot mesaduentures 16 ne cometh neuer-more aloon;) wyth thay tythynges comen other mychel wers, & of more *perylle*; ffor the kynges sone, henry, the eldest, whyche he so fayne was about to crowne kynge of England, & other tweyn of hys bretheren, (that throuḡ yought & foolrede 20 hym folwed, & many drogh̄ to ham, both of england & of beyend þe see,) waren I-swore to-greddē to entre vp-on the kynge, & bynyn hys londes, The whyle that he was yn Irland: & wel may be that hyt was I-purueyed bytween ham, ar he ynto Irland wente. 24

¶ Whan the kynge thys herd, he was <sup>2</sup> yn grete anguysshe. sory he was at the begynnyge, þat he, gyltles, was I-retted of the holy mannes deth; sore he was afred that hys londes shold bene I-shent throught that lydder dede of hys sonne; sore hym for- 28 thoght, that he the lond of Irland so sone most fore-lete, whyche he hade y-cast for to streynth *with* castell, & stable yn pees, the next somer that was to comen. Of al thys, he was yn many thoghtes; & spake ther̄-of fyrst to hymself, þer-after to hys men. 32 Aftȳ many redes, he sent some of hys ynto England byfore hym; & ther̄-after he purueyed how he myght sykyrlychest kepe Irland.

and keep it.

A. D. 1171-2.  
 [\* Fol. 14 a.]

Henry II gets the best Irishmen on his side.

A. D. 1172. He hears bad news:

the probable Interdict on his land, and

the treasonous conspiracy of his sons.

He is grievd,

as he wanted to fortify Ireland,

<sup>1</sup> MS. est.

<sup>2</sup> MS. way.

wente to watyrford, and abode ther awhile, and grettely desyr hadd A. D. 1171-2.  
 forto hyr thythyngis from be-yont see. And of the knyghtes that  
 he found in Irland, he drew to hym wylely for o Purpos, the beste,  
 as Reymond, Miles de cogan, Willam Masturel and othyr, forto A. D. 1172.  
 make his parte the strongyr, and the Erlis parte the febelier / Aftyr  
 the myd-leynte, come shippis into Irland that<sup>1</sup> screwid thythynges naves ad-  
 veniunt,  
 tam gravi-  
 tatis nun-  
 ciae, quam  
 pravitatis.  
 hym broght / out of England, and out of Fraunce, And Normandye,  
 and othyr londes. For into Normandy weryn come two cardynalis,  
 from the pope Alexandre Sende,—that one was callid Albert, and  
 that othyr Theodoin,—forto serche and e[n]quere of the holy martires  
 deth, Seynt Thomas. (ryghtful men, as y-vndyrstode, and to that  
 lawfully chose.)<sup>2</sup> Natheles, they were Romanys; and such \*folwyth [\* Fol. 13  
 b.]  
 ofte covetys<sup>2</sup>; and, But the Kyng come the Sondyr to Hame<sup>3</sup>, the  
 Kyngdome of England, and al the londys that he was lord of, <sup>3</sup> nisi citius  
 eis rex  
 occurrerit.  
 Sholdyn be Entredytyd; and (as y fynd ofte, good aduentures comyn  
 ofte Slowely and aloon, but mysadventures ne comyth neuer more  
 al-oon,) Wyth thay thythyngys, comyn moche wors, and of moche  
 more Pereyl. For the kynges sone henry, the eldyst, whych he So  
 fayn was to crowne kyng of England, and othyr two of his  
 bretheryn (that throw youuth and fooly hym folwid, and many drew fratrum  
 puerili  
 levitate  
 to hame both of England and of beyonde See,) ware Swern to-giddre/  
 to Entyr vpon the kyng and take his landis, The whyle that he  
 was in Irland: And hit may wel be, that hit was Purveyed be-twen  
 ham, ar he into Irland went // Whan the kyng this herde, he was in  
 grete a[n]gwysche: Sory he was at the begynnyng, that he, gylties,  
 was yretted of the holy manys deth<sup>4</sup>. Sore he was aferd, that his  
 londes sholde ben shente throw that vngoodly dede of his Sonnes.  
 Sore hym forthoght, that he the londe of Irland so sone moste leue,  
 whych he had Purposid to streynth wyth castelis, and stabil in pees, tam incas-  
 tellare  
 quam  
 firma etabi-  
 lire pace.  
 the nexte Somer that was to come. Of al this, he was in many  
 thoghtys, and spake therof fryst to hym-Selfe, theraftyr to his men.  
 And aftyr many consalys, he Send Some of his men into England  
 to-for hym; And there-aftyr he Pvrueyed how he myght Svrly kepe  
 Irland /

<sup>1</sup> thad, MS.

<sup>2-3</sup> sed tamen Romani.—*Op.* v. 285.

<sup>4</sup> se tanta tam immerito suspicione notari.—*Ibid.*



A.D. 1172.

Henry II  
leaves  
Leaders  
at Dublin  
to keep  
Ireland,and sails  
from Wex-  
ford on  
Easter  
Monday.  
At St.  
Davids, in  
Wales,a Welsh-  
woman  
complains  
to him,[Fol.14 b.]  
he goes on,and she  
appeals  
for ven-  
geance on  
him, to the  
stone of  
Lechlavar,  
the  
'speaking  
stone'  
(prophe-  
sied  
of by  
Merlin  
which lies  
over a  
stream N.  
of the  
church  
yard.As a corpse  
was carried  
over it, the  
stone  
spoke.

He left at dyuelyn, the cyte & the contray to kepe,  
hught de lassy, wyth .xx.<sup>ii</sup> knyghtes; Robert steuenes-sone,  
& Moryce fytz Geraud, wytht other .xx.<sup>ii</sup> at Waterford; hunfrey  
de boun, Robert Bernardessoñ, & hugh de Gundeuyll wyth .xl.<sup>ii</sup> 4  
knyghtes; At weysford, wyllyam Al-delines-sone<sup>1</sup> & phylppe de  
Breuse wyth .xx.<sup>ii</sup> knyghtes. And a morow after Estre day  
herly, he dydde hym to saylle at Weysford, & arryued at  
seynth dauyes, sone after none. Whan he come a lond, he went 8  
wyth grete deuoccion to the modyr chyrche, as a pylgrymage,  
a-foot, with a burdoñ yn hys hond. Come the chanons of the  
chyrche ayeine hym at the whyte yate, & with fayr processiouñ,  
with mych reuerence, & with mych manshype, hym receyued. As 12  
þe processyoun yede a rewe to-for hym, come a walche womman,  
& fel hym to þe feet, & made a myche mone, yn hyre langage,  
of the bysshope of that place. The [kyng] stode, & herd hyr  
mone || of an ynterpretour-es mouth that hyt hym told; & for he 16  
went forth, & dydde hyr no ryght anoon as tho wolde, she smote  
hyr handes to-gyddre, & bytterly began to crye tofore ham Al,  
a walshe langage, "A-wreke vs to-daye, lahlauar! A-wreke our  
kynred & our folke of thys man!" That that vnderstode hyr 20  
speche, put hyr away, & fore-bade hyre cryyng; & sho so myche  
the more cryed yn the same manere, & hoped to an old prophecy  
that Merlyn seyð: "The kyng of england that shal wyn Irland  
shal be I-woundet yn Irland of a man with a rede hond; & as 24  
he cometh ayeine by south wales, he shal deye vpon lehlauar:"  
Dat was þe name of a stone, that lay ouer a streme by north the  
chyrche heye of seynt dauyes, yn stydde of a brygge. The stone  
was of Marbel wel fayr, & smothe of mannes geynge, & hadde 28  
.x. feet yn leynth, & .vi. yn brede, & a foot thykke. And ys 'lehlauar,'  
a walshe, as mych to sygge as 'a spekyng stone.' And hyt was  
ytold, that som tyme as me bað a dede body ouer that stone,  
he begañ to speke; & wyth the spech he clauē throught; & yit 32  
the clyft ys I-sene, & yit yn-to thys day me be-bereth no dydde  
body ouer that stone. The kyng come to that stone, & bethoght

<sup>1</sup> Weisefordiae, vero Guillelmo Aldelini filio, Philippo de Hastings, et Philippo de Breusa.—Op. v. 286. [William Fitz-Audeline.]

**H**E leste at Deuelyn the Cite and the contray to kepe Capitulum xxix<sup>m</sup>.  
 Hugh de Lacy with xx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtes, Robert Steuenes-Sone  
 and Morice fiz-geraud, wyth othyr xx<sup>ti</sup>.; at Waterford Humfrey de A. D. 1172.  
 bonn, Robert Barnardes-Sone and Hugh de Gondeuyl, with xl. Hugone de Gunde-  
villa.  
 knyghtes / At Weysford, Willam Aldelines sone and Philip de  
 Bruse, with xx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtes. And amorrow, aftyр estyr-day, Erly  
 he did hym to Sayle at Weysford and londid at Seynt dauyes  
 sone aftyр noone. Whan he come alond he went wyth grete  
 deuocion to the modyr church as a Pylgrymage afoote with a devoto  
peregrin-  
antium  
more,  
pedes,  
baculoque  
suffultus.  
 stafe in hande. Come the chanones of the church ayeynes hym  
 at the white yate; and wyth fayre processiou<sup>1</sup>, wyth mych  
 reuerence and wyth mych wirchip, hym resceiwid. And as the  
 Procession yede arew to-for hym, come a Walch woman, and fel  
 to-for his feete, and made mych mone in hyr Speche of the Bischoп  
 of that Place. He stod, and herde hyr complaynte of an inter-  
 pretoure-es mouth that hit hym tolde; and, for he wente forth, and  
 did hyr no ryght anoone as sho wolde, She smote hyr handis to-  
 giddyр and bittyrly began to cry to-for ham al in walch Speche:  
 "A-wreke vs to-day, lathlaur! wreke our kynred<sup>2</sup> and our pepil  
 of this man!" Thay that vndyrstode hyr Speche, Put hyr away,  
 and forbade hyr cryyngе. She so mych the more cried in the  
 Same maner, and hopid to an olde prophesy that Merlyngе sayde<sup>3</sup>:  
 "The kyngе of England that shal conquere Irland [shal be wounded  
 in Ireland of a man<sup>3</sup>] with a rede hand, and as he comyth ayeyn by  
 South walis, he shal dye vpon lethlaur": that was the name of quoniam  
jus suum  
incon-  
tinenti non  
est assecut. s.  
 a stone, that lay ouer a streme<sup>4</sup> by north the churchey of Seynte  
 dauyes, instyd of a brige. The stone was of marbill, \* Wel fayr  
 and smoth of men goyngе, and was of x fote in Leynth, and vj in  
 Brede, and O foote thykke. And is 'lethlaur' in walch, as mych  
 to say as 'a spekyngе stone': and hit was tolde, that Some tyme  
 that whan ther wase a dede body y-bore ouer that stone, he began  
 to speke; and wyth the speche he clewe throug<sup>5</sup>-out; and yit the  
 clyfte as Seyn. And sithyn on-to this day, thay berryth no ded  
 body ouer that stone. The kyngе come to that stone, and bethogh[t]  
Lapis loquax  
ipso conatu  
crepuit  
medius.

<sup>1</sup> canonicorum ecclesiae processionem . . . inuenit.—Op. v. 286.

<sup>2</sup> alludens illi fictitio vulgari, nec vero Merlini proverbio, quo dici solebat.—Op. v. 287.

<sup>3</sup> throught, MS.

A. D. 1172. hym of that propheeye. & he stode at þe stones end & grymly hyt  
 Henry II be-hold ; & awhyle ther-after, boldely yede ouer a good paas. & whan  
 walks over the stone, he was ouer, he turned ayeyne to þe stone, & deynously þus seyð :  
 and asks ' Who 'll " Who shal heten-forward beleue Merlyn the leyer ? " A man stode 4  
 now be- þer besyde & herd, & wold, hys thankes, saue þe prophetes sawe,  
 lieve the Answard the kynge & seyð, " Thou art nat that kynge that shal  
 liar Mer- Irland conquer ; ne Merlyn ne speketh nat of the." Thus the  
 lin !' kynge went yn-to the chyrch, yn seynt Andrees & seynt dauyes 8  
 He hears wyrshyppe I-sette, & herd hys masse of a preste that was I-found  
 Mass, and goes to fastyng, as god wold. After masse, he eete hys mete ther, & after  
 Haverford, mete wente to hauerford, than ouer .xl. myle ; ffrom thens he wente  
 and Normandy. hastily yn-to englande ; out of enland yn-to Normandy, & come 12  
 to-for þe cardynalls with mych buxumnesse at Custance. Ther,  
 He swears after myche dalyaunce & many wordes I-spoke, he excused hym  
 that he didn't slay by othes of þe holye Martyres deth, that he was nat by hym I-slaw ;  
 Beket, but bot he ne for-sok nat that he nas for hym ; & perfor he vndretoke 16  
 he does penance, such penaunce as holy chyrche hym wold loke. Þe cardynals, he  
 sent ayeyne wyth myche wyrshyppe ; & noon he went to þe marche,  
 & ther he spake with the kynge of ffrance. þer, (through besechyng  
 of hegh men, & namely of phylepe þe erl of flaundes, that from 20  
 and makes seynt James was ryght than I-come,) the pees was made betwene  
 peace with the twey kynges, of the wreth that was betwene ham for the  
 King Lewis of France. forseyd martyres deth ; ffor-thy that þe kyng of ffrance, with  
 otheþ mychel & myghty men, name an hand to the erchebyssshopp 24  
 whan he shold turne ayeyne yn-to England, [ayeyn] the pees  
 between the kynge & hym. ffor þer was pees thus y-made betwene  
 the kynges, al the harme þat the sones with haþ allyees hadden  
 throught to do, was I-lost tyl þe next yere theþaftyr. 28

## [CHAPTER XXX.]

[Fol. 15 a.] **W**nder this, as the lond of Irland was yn good pees  
 vnder ham that weren In lefte, the lond for to kepe,  
 byfelle that a day of parlement, at a certeyne place, was betaken  
 Hugh de by-twene Hugh de lacy, whom the kynge had I-yeue dyuelyn to 32  
 Laot and O'Rourke, kepe with trust, And þe kynge of Myth. a nythe, whan the  
 King of Meath, parlement shold ben a morow, a knygh[t] that was Moryce fytz  
 meet. Geraudes neuw, & Robert Gryffyn by name, thocht yn hys

hym of that prophesy, and he stod at the stone his ende, and grymly A.D. 1172.  
 hit be-helde; and a whyle ther-aftyr, boldely yede ouer a good  
 pace. *and* whan he was ouer, he turnyd' ayeyne to the stone, *and*  
 deynously thus sayde: "Who shal, fro this forth, beleue Merlynge verbum hoc  
 the lyer?" A man stode ther bysyd, and herde, *and* wolde, his indig-  
 thanks, Sawe the prophet-is Saynge, Answerid the kyng and nanter  
 Sayde, "Ye ben not that kyng that shal Irland conquere, ne emisit.  
 Merlyng Spekyth not of yow" / Thus the kyng went into the  
 church of Seynt Androwis and seynte dauyes, and herde his  
 masse of a preste that was founde fastyng, as god wolde. Aftyr  
 masse he ette his mette and aftyr mette went to hauerford' than quasi per  
 othyr xv myle. Frome thens he went forth hastely Into England, miliaria  
 out of England into Normandy and come to-for the cardynals duodecim  
 with mych buxumnesse at Custaunce. Ther, aftyr mych delyaunce abinde  
*and* many wordys spoke, he excusid hym by othys of the holy distans.  
 martyris deth that he was not by hym Slayn, but he forsoke  
 not that he was for hym. And ther-for he vndyrtoke such  
 Penance as holy church wolde hym enyōyn. the Cardynalls,  
 he sende ayeyn with mych wirchip; and anoone he went to the ad mar-  
 marche, *and* there he spake wyth the kyng of Fraunce. There, chiam cum  
 (through besechyng of good' men, *and* namely of Phylippe the Erle Francorum  
 of Flandris, that frome Seynt Iamys was than come,) the Pees was rege Lodo-  
 made between the two kynges, of the wreth that was between ham vico . . .  
 for the forsaid martires deth; <sup>1</sup> For-they that the kyng of Fraunce, <sup>1</sup> puta  
 with othyr mychel men *and* myghty / And vndyrtoke to the quem  
 archebischope, whan he shold turne Into Englan, ayeyn the pees Anglorum  
 be-twen the kyng *and* hym. For ther was Pees thus made rex archi-  
 between the kynges, al the harme that the Sounes, with hare praesuli in  
 allyences, haddyn thoght to do, was left til the nexte yere Angliam  
 ther-Aftyr. . . . fide-  
jussorem  
donaverat.

## [CHAPTER XXX.]

VNdyr this, as the lond of Irland was in good pees Capitulum  
 vndyr ham that weryn lefte, the londe for-to kepe, by-fel xxx<sup>m</sup>.  
 on a day, that a certayn Place, to a parlement was sette, be-twen  
 Hugh de Lacy, to whom the kyng had yewe Deuelyn to  
 kepe wyth truste, and the kyng of myth. On a nyght, whan et regem  
 the Parlemt sholde ben amorrow, a knyght, that was Morice monoculum  
 fiz-geraudes eme, *and* Robert Gryffyn by name, thoght in his Ororictum  
Medensem.

A.D. 1172. slepe that he saw a mych flote of wyld swyne yernynge vp-on  
 Griffith hugh & moryce; & a boore amonge ham, myche & grygly ouer al  
 Fits- other̄, come toward ham, & with hys tuskes wold haue smytten  
 Gerald's dream: he ham̄ & I-slawe, yf he stalwarthly ne had y-come betwene, & 4  
 saves  
 De Laci, & I-slawe the bore, & I-holpe ham bothe. A morow, thay went to þe  
 Maurice place ther þe parlement was I-sette, at a place that me hath seth  
 Fitz- y-cleped 'rorykes hylle': fyrst thay helden har parlement from  
 Gerald. fer̄, by messagers goynge betweñ; thē-after thay name sekernesse 8  
 The inter- of othes I-sworne, & comen to-geddre by forward; natheles few,  
 view is at & ylych fale on ether̄ halue, and thay vnwepened,—bot the one, her  
 Rorik's swerdeis; & the other̄, her̄ sparthes,—& ether of har folke somdel  
 Hill. fer from ham. Gryffyn, that with Moryce was to the parlement 12  
 Griffith I-come, was ful thought-ful of the vysyoñ that he sawe. he name  
 keepsseven trusty to hym seuyñ knyghtes of hys owne kyn, than that ho moost  
 knights near. truste to har stalwardnesse, & drowen ham on the on halfe of  
 the hylle, as neyght as thay myght leppen vpon har stedes, with 16  
 sheldes about hā nekkes, & speres an-hond; & for a coste,  
 pleneden & prykkeden har hors ayeyñ other, so that, yn whych  
 halue the parlement turned, throught encheson of such pley thay  
 myght be fonden Redy. Roryk & hugh helden hā parlement 20  
 of many thyng; bot of nothyng thay myght nat accord, & begyn  
 to departe a wrethe. The traytour Roryk had yn hys thocht þe  
 O'Rourke treacher- traysoñ þat he hadde I-purueyed. he made semblant, & draw hym  
 ously at- tacks De by-halues as for to pyssen, & made tokens to hys men that thay 24  
 Laci. hastely shold come to hym. Whan he thys hadde I-done, he  
 turned ayeyne wyth hys sparthe an hegh, hys wysage al blak with  
 Maurice ful snel goynge. Moryce was Iwarned of hys neuue, of the  
 Fitz- vysyoñ that he sawe; stod, & beheld al thys. he hent out þe 28  
 Gerald warns De swerd, & cryed vpon hugh, & mynyed hym, & dyd hym-self ayeyne  
 Laci, the traytour, for to defend hym. The traytour ran to hugh, hym  
 for to smyte; har latymer yed betwene hym & the dynt; & he  
 smote hym of the oon arme, fast by the sholdre. Moryce stode, & 32  
 who is saved by his inter- preter, and campled wyth hys swerd ayeyne the sparthe, & lowd cryed to har  
 men. & ar hugh myght be yn any state, hym-self fō to helpe,  
 [¶ Fol. 15 through grete hastynge, he felle twys || abak; & vnnethe, through  
 b.] helpe of Moryce, that hym defendet thus, Hugh escaped wyth hys 36  
 escapes alive.

Slepe that he Saw a mych flote of wylde Swyn yernynge vpon  
 Hugh and Morice; and a bore amonge ham, mych and grymly *horribilem*  
 ouer al other, come to ham, and wyth his tuskys wolde haue *et grandem*  
 smytten ham Slayn, yf he boldely ne had come betwene, and *prae aliis.*  
 Slayne \* the Boore, and Holpyd Hame Both. On the morrow, [\*Fol. 14  
 they Went to the Place ther the Parlement was sette, at a place b.]  
 that Sedyn is callid "Rorike-is hille." Fryste thay heldyn har  
 Parlement from fere, by messageres goynge betwen; ther-aftyr thay  
 toke Surtey, and othis Sware, and comyn to-giddyr aftyrward.  
 Natheles fewe, and ylyke many on euery syde, and thay vnwepenyd;—  
 but the on, her Swerdys; the othyr, her Sparthes,—and her felle-  
 chip in euery syde fere fro ham. Gryffyn, that wyth Moryce come to  
 the Parlement, was ful thoughtful of the vysion that he Saw; he  
 name to hym Sewyn knyghtis of his owyn kyn, tham that he  
 most truste to har bolthenys, and drowen ham on the one halfe  
 of the hille / as neye as thay myght, Leppen vpon har stedes,  
 with sheldis about har nekkes, and Sperres in honde, and for oo *ex indus-*  
 Purpos pleydyn and prikkedyn in the felde ayeine othyr, So that *tria torna-*  
 in what syde the Parlement turnedyn, throgh encheyson of Suche *mentis*  
 Pley, thay myght be foundyn redy. Rourik and Hugh kepten har *Gallieis*  
 Parlement of many thyngis; but in nothyng they myght acorde, *praeludia*  
 and begon to de-Pert, as in wrethe. The traytoure Rourik had *faciebant*  
 in his thought / the trayson that he hadd Purueyed: he made  
 semblant, and drow hym be-sydis as forto Pissyn, and made tokyn *simulans*  
 to his men that thay hastely sholde come to hym. Whan he this *ad min-*  
 had done, he turned ayeine with his sparth an hey, his face al *gendum.*  
 blake with ful snel goynge. Morice was warnyd of his eme by the *vultu*  
 vvsyon that he sawe; stode, and be-helde al this. he toke out *pallido.*  
 his Swerde, and cried vpon Hugh, and mynyd hym, and did hym-  
 Selve agayn the traytoure, forto defende hym. The traytoure rane *prae-*  
 agayn hugh, hym forto smyte. har latymer yed betwen hym and *muniens et*  
 the stroke; and he smote of hym the oone harme of, fast by the *auscitans.*  
 shuldyr. Morice stode, and camplid with his Swerde ayene the *virii inter-*  
 Sparthe<sup>1</sup>, and loude cried to har men. And ar hugh myght be *pretis . . .*  
 in any state<sup>2</sup>, hym-Selve forto helpe, throgh grete hastynge, he fel *letalii*  
 twies a-bac; and vnneth, throgh helpe of Morice, that hym defendid *vulnere*  
*brachium*  
*amputavit.*  
<sup>1</sup> *contra*  
*securim*  
*gladio*  
*confligebat.*

<sup>2</sup> staste, MS.

A.D. 1172. lyf. The whyll that thys was, Rorykes men ful many come to hys clepyng, out of dales & wodes about, yernynge to ham wyth speres & with sparthes, for to bryng hugh & Moryce out of dawes. Than Gryffyn & hys felewes comen yernynge vp on har 4  
 O'Rourke hors styffly to ham. þe traytoure saw ham comynge, & lep to hors that to hym was broght, & wold do hym to flight; & as he lepe, is slain by Maurice Fitz-Gerald. vp come Gryffyn, & wyth hys spere smote hym & hys hors throught, & slowe hem bothe. Wyth hym weþ I-slayne þay that, yn so 8  
 mych perylle, the hors hym broght; & hy[s] heed I-smytten of, & yn-to england þer-after to the kyng I-sent; & al hys men yn-to al the felde dyscomfyte, & I-slawe ful many. Rolf, Robertes sone fytz Stephen, was the otheþ stalwardthest that daye yn the felde<sup>1</sup>. 12

## [CHAPTER XXXI.]

[Fol.16 a.] Maurice was a mane ful wyrshypful & chamfaste; vysage wel colowred; becomlyche; lytel of body, sumdele more þan lytel, & lasse than metlych. of hert, & body, wel I-thewed; nothyng hauteyne. of k[i]ndly goodnes, he was good; & leuer 16  
 hym was be good, than be sey good; hys maner was euer-more to hold hym methelyche. man of short spech & lytel, bot of fayþ wordes, as he that more hadde yn hert than yn mouth, more of wytte & reyson þan of spech. <sup>2</sup> Nat forthy<sup>3</sup>, whan tyme was, & nede 20  
 to sp[e]ken, to good reyson forth bryng, — as lettred as he was, as wytty he was<sup>2</sup>. In thyng that byfell to bataylle, swyth hardy, & vnnethes of stalwarthnesse any was hys better; natheles, of perille to take, he was nat to hastyf ne to fool-hardy. bot as he was 24  
 thus, & of purueaunce thyng to begynne, Also he was stronge & stydfast yn thyng Whaþ he hyt hadde begune. he was sobre, wel I-thewed & chaste, lawful, & stydfast, without blame.

He spoke little,  
 was very bold, but not fool-hardy,  
 was strong and stedfast.

## [CHAPTER XXXII.]

A.D. 1173.

In April, Henry II's three sons, In the next auriþ theþ-after, þe yonger kyng henry, þe 28  
 kynges sone, the lyddernysse that he hadde I-thought to hys

<sup>1</sup> The twelve lines on the back of fol. 15, 'a bak (p. 74, at foot) . . . felde,' were first written by mistake on fol. 16, but afterwards struck out.

<sup>2-3</sup> Et tamen, cum sermonem res exigebat, ad sententiam dicendam sicut serus, sic scientissimus.—*Op.* v. 297. <sup>3</sup> ? MS. Rat forthly.

thus, Escapid wyth his lyfe. the whyle that this was, Rourik his A. D. 1172.  
 men, ful many, come to his callynge, out of dalis and woddis about,  
 rynnynge to ham *with* Speres and Sparthes, forto berew hugh *and* *cum jaculis*  
 Morice the lyfe. Than gryffyn and his fellouys come rynnynge *binis et*  
 vpon har hors styfly to ham. the traytoure Saw ham comynge, *securibus*  
*and* lep to hors that to hym was broght, *and* wolde do hym to  
 flyght / And as he lep, vp come gryffyn, *and* wyth his spere  
 smote hym *and* his hors throught-out, *and* slayne them both. wyth *cum ipso,*  
 hym were Slayn thay that, in so myche Peril, the hors hym broght / *tribus ejus-*  
 and his hed Smytten of / *and* into England therafter to the *dem fami-*  
 kyng hit sende; and al his men into al the feldis discomfite, and *liaribus.*  
 Slayn ful many / Rolfe, Robert-is Sone, fiz-Steuyñ, was the othyr  
 boldyste that day in the felde.

## [CHAPTER XXXI.]

**M**Orice was a man ful wyrchippul *and* shamefaste; <sup>1</sup> vysage Capitulum  
 wel colorid; becomlych; lytil of body, sume-whate more xxxj<sup>m</sup>.  
 than lytel *and* lasse than metlych. of herte and body, wel thewed; Descriptio  
 nothyng couetyng. of \* Kyndely goodnes, He was good <sup>1</sup>; *and* Maurici fiz-  
 Leuer hit Was to Hym to Be good, than to Be sayde good. his geraud.  
 maner was euer-more to holde hym methelyche. man of Shorte [\*Fol. 15  
 Speche *and* lytyll, but of Fayre wordis, as he that more had in a.]  
 herte than in mouthe, more of witte and Reyson than of speche. *plus pec-*  
 Nat forthy, whan tyme was, and nede to Spekyn, to good reyson *toris ha-*  
 forth bryngge,—as letterid as he was, as witty he was. In thyng that *bens quam*  
 befel to battayl, Swyth hardy. But as he was thus, *and* of *oris, plus*  
 Purueyance, thyngge to begyn, Also he was stronge *and* stydfast *racionis*  
 in thyngge whan he hit hadd begonne. <sup>2</sup> he was sobyr, wel *quam ora-*  
 condicionyd *and* chaste, lawful and stidfaste, wyth-out blame <sup>2</sup> / *tionis, plus*  
*sapientias*  
*quam elo-*  
*quentiae.*

## [CHAPTER XXXII.]

A. D. 1173.

**I**N the nexte Aurel ther-aftyr, the yongyr kyngge henry, the Capitulum  
 kynges Sonne, the Wickidnys that he had thoght to his xxxij<sup>m</sup>.  
 fadyr done / nolde no longyr helle, wyth his two bretheryu that

<sup>1-1</sup> vultu colorato, decentique; mediocri quadam modicitate, tam mediocribus minor, quam modicis major; vir tam animo quam corpore modificato, nec illo elato, nec hoc dilutato; innata vir bonitate bonus.—*Op.* v. 297.

<sup>2-2</sup> Vir sobrius, modestus et castus; stabilis, firmus atque fidelis.—*Ibid.*



A.D. 1173. fadyr nold no lenger hellen; with hys twey brethered̄—that ys to wytte, the Erl of peytou & the erl of brytayn<sup>1</sup>—wenten to the Henry, Richard and Geofrey, get French help, and rebel. kynges of ffrance, whose doghter he hadde I-spoused, & purchased helps of hym for to wer̄ vpon hys fadyr. The encheson̄ whēr-for̄<sup>4</sup> hyt was, Mayster Geraud ne telleth nat, ne I ne cañ nat sey; bot many hegh & Rych men he hadde to consaylle & to helpe, both of England & of beyend the see; many openly & wel; most, illy &

Henry II dernelly. The old kynges, the yonger kynges fadyr, for̄ the fortune<sup>8</sup> that hym come to on̄ euery halue so vnwarly, was ful sorowful.

draws most of his men from Ireland. They come to him at Rouen. [† Fol. 16 b.] He commits Ireland to Earl Striguiland Reimund Fitz-Gerald. ¶ Nathales, through gret sleight & hegh herth, he made fayr semblant, & heped to god; & on̄ euery syde that he myght, yn al maner he besoght help. He sent messagers ynto Irland, & mad come ouer<sup>12</sup> to hyn the meste parte of the knyghtes & of the good meygne pat he ther hadde I-lefte. Thay come to hym at the cyte of Ruem, & he bethogh hym that † hyt was perylle to leue har lond vnkepet; ther he betoke þe Erl Rychard al þe lond to kepe, & sette to hym<sup>16</sup> Reymond as hys othē hand; ffor the erl for-soke al out & out, pat he that kepynges wold nat receyue, bot yf he hadde Reymond with hym for to helpe.

## [CHAPTER XXXIII.]

Most Irish, hearing of the Princes' rebellion, turn against Henry II. The English demand to be put under Reimund Fitz-Gerald. They invade Offaly, in Leinster. **T**he Erle [&] Reymond, with hār power, wenten yn-to<sup>20</sup> Irland; &, for the folk of yrland hade y-hard of the mych stryff that was betwene the kynges & hys sonnys be-yent the see,—as folk pat styddefast ys yn vnstedfastnesse, & lawfully ham holt to vnlawfulnesse,—the most parte of the prynces of þe lond, ayeyn<sup>24</sup> har trouth I-found, þay turned ayeyn-to the kynges. The erl hadde sone I-spend the traysour that he broght ouer wyth hym; & whan the meygne lacked spendynges, & nat speden yn prayes takynges vnder heruy, that was conestable ouer the meygne, & euer hadde<sup>28</sup> enuy to Reymond, Thay wenten ham to the erl comynly by one accorde, & sey hym wel, that 'bot yf he wold sete Reymond ouer ham, thay wold leue hym euerychone, & wend yn-to england; oper, that wel wors was, thay wold turnet to hār enemyes ayeyns har<sup>32</sup> heed.' As the meygne wold, Reymond was I-sette ouer ham; thay name than hert to ham, & wenten vpon the Ofolanes yn the dees,

<sup>1</sup> Pictaviae scilicet et Britanniae comitibus.—Op. v. 297-8.

is to Say, the Erle of Peytou *and* the Erle of Brytayne, wentyn A.D. 1173.  
to the kynge of Fraunce, whose doghtyr he had Spousid; *and* ad Lodo-  
Purchasid helpe of hym forto were vpon his fadyr. The encheyson vicum,  
wherfore hit was, Maystyr Geraud ne tellyth not / ne I ne can Francorum  
not say; but many hey men he hade to consayl and to helpe, regem.  
both of England *and* of beyonte see; many opynly *and* wel; multo  
[more] falthyr pryuely. The olde kynge, the yongyr kynges fadyr, plures  
for the fortvne that to hym was fal on euery syde so vnwytyngly, occulte  
was ful Sorroful. Neuer-the-las, by grete Sotylte *and* hey herte, habens, et  
he made fayre semblante, *and* trystid to god; *and* on euery syde fautores.  
that he myght, in al maner he besoght helpe. he sende messageres  
into Irland, *and* made come ouer to hym the meste Parte of the  
knyghtes and of the good mennye that he ther lefte. Thay come  
to hym at the Cite of Ruem. *and* he be-thoght hym that hit was ad urbem  
Peril to leue har londe vnkepte: ther he be-toke the Erle Richard; Rotkoma-  
al the londe to kepe, and sette to hym Reymonde as his othyr genssem.  
hande; For the Erle forsoke out and out, that he that kepyng custodiam  
wolde not resewe, but yf he hadde Reymond wyth hym, hym illam sus-  
for to helpe. cipere  
omnino  
renuerat.

## [CHAPTER XXXIII.]

**T**he Erle and Reymond, *with* har men, wentyn Into Capitulum  
Irland; and, for þe Pepil of Irland had herde of the grette xxxiiij<sup>m</sup>.  
stryfe that was betwene the kyng and his Sonnes be-yount the  
See,—as Pepyl that stydfast is in vnstydfastnes, *and* lawfully ham gens sola  
holde to vnlawfulnes,—the most Part of the Pryncis of the londe, constans  
agayn har trouth y-founde, thay turned agayn the kynge. The incon-  
Erle had spende the tresoure that he broght ouer wyth hym; *and* stantia.  
whan the fellochipe lackid spendyng, *and* not Speddyn in Prayes-  
takyng, Vndyr heruey, that was constabil ouer the menny, and deficien-  
euer had envy to Reymond; Thay wenten ham to the Erle tibus  
comynly by oone acorde, *and* sayde to hym wel, ‘but that he quoque  
wolde sette Reymonde ouer ham, thay wolde lewe hym euerichone, stipendiis.  
*and* wende Into Englande; othyr, that wel wors was, thay wolde  
turne to har enemys agaynes hame’ / And as the menny desyrid,  
Reymonde was sette ouer hame. thay take then herte to ham, in Offelanos  
*and* wenten vp-on the Ofelans in the deseses, and toke grette insur-  
genges.

A. D. 1173. & name grett *praves*, arrayed ham nobly wyth hors & wepne.  
 Lismore, From thens thay wentten to lysmore, & the cyte, & al þe contre  
 &c., and about, robbeden & *prayed*en, & by the see wey senten many grete  
 take much prey. *praves* to Watyrford; & of pylfre & thynges that thay namen, thay 4  
 fylled .xiiij. far costes that weren I-come fro Waterford yn-to the  
 The hauen of dongaruame. As thay weþ wynd abydynges, theþ come  
 English fleet fight a þe men of Cork from by west, by the see, yn xxxij shyppys, & many  
 Cork fleet, men theþ-In, for to take thay other. Theþ was the fyght styffely 8  
 I-yeuen, of these twey fletes yn the see: That oon assaylled that  
 other grymlych with stones & with sparthes; the other weren  
 welle I-wepned, & with-stode styffly with arblastes & with bowes.  
 At þe end, thay of Corke weren descomfyted & ouer-come; heþ 12  
 rout it, and kills men, shyppys I-take; heþ men I-slawe, & I-caste yn the see. Adam de  
 and take their prizes to Waterford. herford & phylep de Wellase, that weren I-sette ouer thay yong-  
 Reimund marches, Watyrford wenten with grete yoye. Reymond herd speke of thys 16  
 fyght, & tythynges to hym come; he toke with hym xx<sup>ii</sup> knyghtes  
 & an hundreth bowmen, & went by the see wey thederward.  
 Than come to hym tythynges þat dermot, þe prynce of desmond,  
 was, with myche hostes, comen to lysmore, to helpe ham of Cork. 20  
 Dermot daren't face him. Reymond went hym thederward. Þe prynce that herd, & turned  
 Reimund has 4,000 cattle. the contrey, robbed & *prayed*, so that he hadde with hym at hys  
 turny[n]ge aye toward Watyrford, four thousand kyne; & as thay 24  
 [¶ Fol. 17 a.] wer comynges || by narrow weyes wyth har *prave*, come the Ireshe-  
 The Irish take some. men of þe contray, & henten a party of har kyne, & wenten al  
 quyttten with ham to wodde. þe crye arose, & Reymond<sup>1</sup> (as man  
 that ouer was formost redy) went aftyr, with on priuisant man an 28  
 hors wyth hym; come to the woddes ense<sup>2</sup>, theþ the theues  
 He pursues them into a wood. weren an hydynges. Whan he hadde I-faylled of þe preye, &  
 wolde turne ayeine, hys felewes folyly entyced hym for to wende  
 yn-to þe wodde, & he so dydde. Whan thay weren wel with-yn, 32

<sup>1</sup> The Latin text gives this exploit to Meiler: Gir. Cambr. *Op.* v. 309-10, 'et in primis Meilerius, ut erat praeceps semper et probus, satellite quodam comitatus equestri, praedones usque ad silvae condensa est persecutus.'

<sup>2</sup> Ends.

Prayes arrayed ham nobely *with* hors and wepyñ. From thens A.D. 1173.  
 they wentyn to lysmore; \* and the Cite and the contrey about, [\*Fol. 15  
 robbodyn *and* preedynd, *and*, By the See-vey, Sendyne many gret b.]  
 • prayis to waterford; and of pilfre *and* of thynges that they toke,  
 they fillid xiiij<sup>e</sup>. farcostes that weryn come from watyrford into naviculas  
 the havyn of douñ-garvan. As thay were wynde abydynges ther, tredecim.  
 come the men of Corke from be weste, by the See, in xxxij<sup>d</sup>. Shippis,  
*and* many men therin, forto take the othyr. ther was the fyght bellicosus  
 fressely yewyn of this two flittes in the See. That oone assaylid refertus  
 the othyr grymly *with* stones and *with* Sparthis; the othyr wer viris.  
 wel wepenyd, *and* wythstod styfly *with* arblastes *and* *with* bowes<sup>1</sup>.  
 At the Ende, thay of Corke weryn dyscomfyted and ouer-come;  
 Her shippis take, her men slayne, *and* caste Into the See. Adam  
 de herforde *and* Philippe<sup>2</sup> the wellsshe, that weryn sette ouer  
 thay yonglynges, *with* mo shippes *and* gret begetes of wepyn cum armis  
 and of Pylfre, to Watyrford wentyn *with* gret Ioy. Reymond<sup>3</sup> et oneribus.  
 herde speke of this fight, *and* tythynges to hym come: he toke  
*with* hym xx<sup>d</sup>. knyghtes and an hundrid bowmen, *and* went by per mari-  
 the see-way thedyrwarde. Than com to hym tythyngis that timam  
 Dermot, the prince of desmonde, was *with* myche hostys comyn viam.  
 to lysmore, to helpe ham of Corke. Reymonde wentyn hym  
 thedyrward: the prince that herde, *and* turned agayn, *and* durst  
 hym not abyde. And Reymonde wente Ferdyr Into the<sup>3</sup> contrey,  
 robbid *and* Prayed, So that he hadd *with* hym at his turnynges  
 agayn toward watyrford, iijij<sup>e</sup>. M<sup>t</sup>. kyne. and as thay were comynges  
 by naroweis wyth har Pray, come the Iryssh-men of the contray, ad silvas  
*and* tokyn a party of har kyne, *and* wentyn al quyte *with* ham to de plano.  
 wodde. the cry aros, *and* Reymond, as man that euer was formyst  
 redye, went aftyr, *with* one pruyisant man an hors *with* hym, come  
 to the woddys syd ther the thewis were an-hydynges. Whan he had  
 falid of the pray, *and* wolde haue turne agayne, his fellowis folely juuene in-  
 Enticed hym forto wende into the wodd; *and* he so dide. Whan stigante  
temerario

<sup>1</sup> dum isti lapidibus et securis acriter impetunt, illi vero, tam sagittis quam laminis ferreis quibus abundabant, promptissime resistunt.—*Op.* v. 309.

<sup>2</sup> Philippe, MS.

<sup>3</sup> the the, MS.

A.D.  
1173-4.  
Reimund is  
attackt,  
but cuts  
his way  
thro' his  
foes.

the Irysshe-men rysse to ham on euery halue, & leyd ham oñ, & anoõn-ryght the yonge mañ was al to-hakked to-for hym; he yarne to snellych for to socur̄ hym, & was assaylled oñ euery halue; & he, as man, hent out the swerd & leyd on about hym, & smot of that mañ the hond, þat otheṛ the arme, þe pryde the heede by þe sholdres; thus he opened hym the wey, & come out to hys men, & brogħt twey sparthes fast on hys sheld, & thre on hys hors<sup>1</sup>; bot all hool & sound, & harmeles of body, he escaped. 8

## [CHAPTER XXXIV.]

A.D. 1174.

Reimund  
goes to  
Wales.  
Hervey is  
made Con-  
stable.

Whan thys was y-done, & the meygne was noblych arrayed both byl ond & eke by watyṛ, come tythynges to Reymond, that hys fadyṛ Wyllyam fytz Geraud was dede. Reymond went ouere yn-to Walys, to take seysyne yn hys fadyṛ<sup>12</sup> landys; & heruy was the whyle eft<sup>2</sup> y-made conestable of þe meygne: he wold fayne entremette hym to do some thyng the whyle that Reymond was out of londe, & made the Erl & the meyne wend to Casseñ for to weren yn Monestre; he sent eke<sup>16</sup> after the meyne of dyuelyn to come to ham. And as thay come through Ossery, & laye a nyght yn a place thaṛ thay supposed to be al sykeṛ, Obreen, the kyng of thomone, was sykeṛ, & awayted haṛ comynge by good spies. he aroos with mych folk vpon hem<sup>20</sup> erly a day yn the mcrowenyng, & smot vpon ham vnwytyngly, & slogh fouṛ knyghtes that wereñ ouer ham, & fouṛ hundred ostmen. Whan the tythynges heṛ-of come to the Erl, he turned ayeayne to Waterford with mych shame, & held hym thaṛ as man<sup>24</sup> that was beseget, that he cam nat fro thennes. And for thys aduentuṛ, the folk of Irland wyth oo hert al to-gyddre aresen vpon the englysshe, & slow ham yn-to al theṛ thay myght ham fynd. The kyng of Connaght come eke ouer the shynen yn-to Myd,<sup>28</sup> & fond al þe castels wast & voyde; he brant & keste ham adoun to ground, tyl he come ryght to dyuelyn. The Erl saw þat he was narow by-ladde: by consaylle of hys men, as the last remedy of lyue, he sent hys lettres to Reymond ouer yn-to Walys, yn these<sup>32</sup>

Donnell  
O'Brien  
slaughters  
the Dublin  
men.

The Irish  
massacre  
the Eng-  
lish.

<sup>1</sup> tres secures Hibernicas in equo confixas, duasque in clipeo portans.—Gir. Camb. Op. v. 310.

<sup>2</sup> MS. est.

they wer *with*-In the Irysh-men rysse to ham on euery halue *and* leyde on ham, *and* anoone the yonge man was al to-hackid to-for hym. He rane forto socoure hym, *and* was assaylid on euery syde. And he, as man, toke out his Swerde, *and* leyde on aboute hym, *and* Smote of, that man the honde, that othyr the harme, the thyrde the hede by the sholdris; thus he oppenyd the wey, *and* come out to his men, and broght two Spares faste on his shelde, and thre on his hors; but al holde and Sounde *and* harmeles of body he Escapid.

A.D.  
1173-4*exserto  
gladio,  
viam sibi  
vir ani-  
mosus viri-  
bus ape-  
ruit.*

## [CHAPTER XXXIV.]

A.D. 1174.

**W**han this was done, *and* the meyne was nobely arrayed both by londe *and* also by watyr / come thythyngis to Reymonde, that his Fadyr willam fiz-geraude was dede. Reymond wente ouer into Walis, to take seysyne in his Fadyr landis; And heruey that tyme was made constabil of the meny. he wolde fayn entremitte hym to done sumthyng, the whyle that Reymonde was out of londe; *and* made the Erle *and* meny wende to cassell forto werryn in monestre. He sende also aftyr the meny of deuelyn to come to ham. And As thay come through Ossory, *and* lay a-nyght in a place thar thay demyd to be al Sure, Obreen, the kyng of Thomonde, was Sure, *and* awayted hare \*comynge By good Spies. He aroose, *with* mych Pepil, vppon Hame, erly a day in the mornynge, *and* Smote vppon ham vn-wittyngly, *and* killid iiij. knyghtis *and* weryn ouer hame, *and* CCCC men. Whan the thythynges herof come to the Erle, he turned agayne to Watyrford *with* mych shame, *and* helde hym ther as man that was besegid, that he came not fro thennes. And for this aduenture, the Pepil of Irland *with* oo herte al-to-giddy arysen vpon the Englysh, *and* Slowen ham in al places that thay ham myght fynde // The kyng of Connaght come also ouer the shynnyfi into Myth, *and* found al the Castelis waste *and* wyoyde. he braunt *and* keste ham doune to grounde, til he come ryght to Deuelyn. The Erle Saw that he was narrow bylad: by consail of his men, as the laste remedy of lyue, he sende his lettres to Reymond, ouer into Walis, in thes wordis: "As rath as

Capitulum  
xxxiiij<sup>m</sup>.*aliquid  
agere  
videretur.*[\*Fol. 16  
a.]*qui aliis  
praeerant.**unanimiter  
insurgunt.**in arcto  
jam posi-  
tum.*

A.D. 1174. **Striguil asks Reimund's help, and promises him his sister Basile.** wordes: "As rathe as thou hast I-sey these lettres, ne leue nat to come to socour vs wyth good myght: & thy desyr of basyle, my sustre, lawfully for to spouse, anone at þy comynge, wythout faylle thou shalt haue." Whan Reymond hadde thys I-herd, both for the 4 maydnes loue þat he so longe hadde desyred, & for to proue hys stalwardnesse, & socouþ hys lord yn hys mychele nede, wyth Meyler, hys emes sone, he dyght hym al þat he myght yn such hast, so that he hadde thretty || knyghtes of hys owne kyn, & thre hundred 8 bowmen, the choyse of al Wales: he put hym to saylle, & arryued at Weysford yn fyftene shyppes. That same tyme, the men of Weysford hadden I-purueyed ham to vndo al þe englysshe, wher-so me myght ham fynde. Whan thay sawe the shyppes comynge yn þe hauyn, & 12 baneres that thay wel knowe; þroght þat comynge so fersly, that trayson was y-lefte; & anoon Reymond went wyth hys men to Waterford, & broght thens the Erl stalwarthly to Weysford. 16 fressel, that was keper of Waterford, went after the Erl by þe water of Sur, yn botys with hys men; &, as þay wer yn the watyr, the lydder gyddes that hym shold lode<sup>1</sup>, slowe hy[m] & al hys men, & turned ayeyne to the Cyte, & gadered ham to-gedder al þe 20 Irysshe-men, & smyt vpon þe englesshe, & slowe al that thay myght fynd yn hous & yn wey, men & wommen, yonge & old, without any sparynge, saue thay that escaped yn-to Rathe-vyldestouþ; & throug ham was the toun I-saued, tyl the traytours þer-after come to pees, & euer ther-after the lasse beleued & loued. 24 Reymond, whan he hadde thys I-se[u]yd the Erl, he miniyed the Erl of hys beheste. The Erl sent anoon to dyuelyn aftyr hys susteþ, and went neuer from Weysford, fort sho was with mych wyrshyppe I-spoused to Reymond. Whan he was I-spoused, & 28 al þe day was Ihold yn yoy, gladnesse, & mych plente of mete & drynke, & the nyght aftyr, yn delytes of chambre as ham beste lykod, came tythynges that Oconghouþ, kynge of Connaght, hadde I-destrued al myght, & was I-come wyth myche power 32 yn-to the contrey of dyuelyn. Reymond was nat slowe, nether for loue of hys fayþ wyf ne for the moche feste, bot anoon a morowe he toke hys men wyth hym, & went toward dyuelyn.

<sup>1</sup> for lede.

ye haue sey thes *lettres*, ne lette not to come to socoure vs with A.D. 1174.  
 good myght: *and* youre desyre of Basyle my Sustre, lawefully forto et deside-  
 Spouse, anone at youre comyng, *with-out* fayl ye shall haue" // rium tuum,  
 Whan Reymond hadd this herde, both for the maydes lowe that he in Basilia  
 so longe had desiryd, *and* forto prow his myght, *and* socoure his sorore mea  
 lorde in his mychel nede, *with* Meyler, his emys sone, he dight hym tibi  
 al that he myght in such haste, so that he myght haue / *and* legitime  
 hadde xxx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtes of his owyn kyne, *and* CCC bowmen, the coyse copulanda.  
 of al Walis. he putte hym to sayle, *and* arryued at Weysforde in de electa  
 xv. shippis. that same tyme, þ<sup>e</sup> men of Weysforde hadd Purveyed Kambriae  
 ham to vndo al the Englysh, wherso thay myght ham fynde. juventute.  
 Whan thay Saue the chippis comyng Into hawyn, and baneres  
 that thay wel knew; throw that comyng So Fresly, that trayson adventu  
 was lefte; and anoone Reymonde went wyth his men to watyrforde, tam subito.  
*and* broght thens the erle boldely to Weysforde. Fresell, that was Fretellus,  
 keper of watyrforde, wente by the watyr of Sure in botis *with* his custos.  
 men; and, as they were in the watyr, the liddyr gides that hym ab iniquis  
 Sholde lede, slayfe hym *and* al his men, *and* turned agayn to the Ostmannis.  
 Cite, *and* gaddrid' ham to-geddyr al the Irysh-men, *and* smyte  
 vpon the Englysh-men, *and* slayne al thay that thay myght fynde  
 in hous, in wey, men *and* women, yonge *and* olde, *with-out* any in plateis  
 sparyng, Saue thay that Escapid' into Rathevyldestoure; *and* et domibus.  
 through ham was the touffe Sawid, tyl the traytours ther-aftyr  
 come to Pees, *and* euer ther-aftyr the lasse belewid *and* lowid. /  
 Reymond, when he hadd thus I-Sawid the Erle, he mvnyed the  
 Erle of his promes. the erle sende anoone to deuelyn aftyr his revocatam  
 suster; *and* Wente neuer frome Weysforde till that she was, *with* a Dublinia  
 myche wyrchipp, Spousid to Reymonde. Whan he was spousid, Basiliam,  
 and al the day was holde in Ioy *and* gladnys, *and* mych Plente  
 of mette and drynke, and the nyght aftyr in delytes of chambyr, in thalami  
 as ham beste plesyde / Came tythyngis that o-conghoure, kyng of deliciis  
 Connaght, hadd destrued al Myth, *and* was come *with* grete hoste nocte con-  
 into the contrey of Deuelyn. Reymond was not Slow, nethyr for sumpta.  
 lowe of his fayre wyffe, ne \* for the moche feste; But amorrow He nec vino,  
 toke His men *With* Hym, *and* Went towarde Deuelyn. O-con- retardatur.  
 [ \* Fol. 16  
 b.]



A.D. 1174. Oconghou<sup>r</sup> hadde *per-to-forne* assayed hys mayne, y-douted hym  
 O'Conor the more; he ne abode nat wyth hym, bot was gladdē to take  
 retires. homward. Reymund let restore & arere that was destrued throgh  
 Reimund homward. Reymund let restore & arere that was destrued throgh  
 rebuilds his pe wer<sup>r</sup>, & fale castels ryght vp, & broght yn-to rather state; 4  
 Castles and & for dred of hym, the lond wax yn good pees a good whyle, that  
 restores & for dred of hym, the lond wax yn good pees a good whyle, that  
 peace. none Iresshe-ma<sup>n</sup> ne durst hym styrre, wer to begynne.

## [CHAPTER XXXV.]

A.D. 1173-4. **T**his while the kyngē was yn mych stryf, wel two yer,  
 Henry II ayey<sup>n</sup> hys thre sonnes & ha<sup>r</sup> allyes, both yn englande 8  
 livd in & yn normandy & garioigne; & so was I-peyned with<sup>t</sup> trauaylle  
 strife. yn wepne & wakyngē nyght & day, that no man ne myght mora.  
 The worst Bot, for ne wors fomanne may be, pa<sup>n</sup> thay that ma<sup>n</sup> moste  
 was, that trusteth to, o thyngē was, that meste tene hym dydde: that pe 12  
 his trusted Body- knyghtes that he hadde I-chose, hys body to kepe, yn whose  
 guard deserted to hondes hys lyf & hys deth he be-taght, for the moste dele euery  
 his rebel nyght wenten to hys sones pryuely; so that, whan the kyngē  
 sons. oft-tymes asked afty<sup>r</sup> ham, thay war nat I-founde. Natheles, the 16  
 bataylle that was of so dotous begynnyge, hadde so good endyngē  
 that, for the vnryght that hys sonnes hym dedde so vnk[i]ndely,  
 But he won hyt semete better tha[t] he sought by power of god, than by erthly  
 all fights, power; ffor yn al places, the *ouerhand* was hys. And as hyt semete 20  
 fyrste that hyt was for wreth of sey<sup>n</sup>th Thomas-es deth that pat  
 [||Fol. 18 vnha<sup>p</sup>e hym || betydde, Also hyt semed *per-afty<sup>r</sup>*, Whan he  
 a.] hadde I-done asseth to holy chyrche, & pees made wyth the  
 holy martyr, wyth teres & rēpentaunce of herte, al hys tene, 24  
 by God's throught goodys helpe, hym turned to gladnesse: ffor afty<sup>r</sup> the  
 help. mych tene & trayson<sup>d</sup> pat he hadde Itholled al two yer, at pe  
 laste was pe bataylle I-smytte<sup>n</sup>, at the whych, betwen the twey  
 His sons Ther war the kynges sonnes dyscomfyt, progh Rauf de 28  
 were Glanuyl, that was mayster of pe kynges hoste. Ther was I-take  
 routed, and pe kyngē of scotland, & pe erl of shestre, & pe erl of leycestre,  
 & so fele gret men, bothe of england & of beyent see, that vnnethe  
 me fond prisons to ham. Ther<sup>r</sup>, afty<sup>r</sup> al pe trauayl pat pe kyngē 32  
 obliged to hadde, & pe enuy, & pe costes al two yer, come pe sonnes to pe  
 make fadyres pees, & maden asseth, falsly, as hyt was *per-afty<sup>r</sup>* wel  
 peace (a false one). Is Hewed yn deede. Of þus vntrowth, spake Merlyn yn hys

ghoure had thertofoꝛ assayed his meny, *and* douted hym the more. A. D. 1174.  
 he wolde not abyde hym, but was glade to take homwarde. et castris  
Medias...  
dirutis...  
 Reymonde lette restore and arere that was destrued by the werre;  
 And fale casteles ryght vpe, and broght into radyr state. *and* foꝛ jam repa-  
ratis et in  
statum  
redactis.  
 dred of hym, the londe wax in good pees a goode whyle, that none  
 Irysh-man ne durst hym not styre, werre to begynne.

## [CHAPTER XXXV.]

A. D.  
1173-4.

**T**his whyle the kyng was in myche stryfe, wel two yere,  
 agayn his Sonnes *and* har alliance, both in Englande and in  
 Normandy, *and* gascoygne; *and* So was peyned with trawail in  
 wepyn, nyght and day, that no man ne myght more. But, foꝛ no  
 wors enemy may none be, than thay that a man trusteth moste to,  
 O thyng was, that most angyr hym didd: that the knyghtes that he  
 hadd chose his body to kepe, in Whos handis his lyfe and his deth  
 he betoke, foꝛ the mor Party, euery nyght wentyn to his Sonnes  
 priuely; So that, whan the kyng ofte-tymys askyd after hame, thay  
 were not founde. Natheles, the battayll that was of So doutos  
 begynnyng, hadd So good Endyng that, foꝛ the vnryght that his  
 Sonnes hym didde so vnkyndely, hit Semyd bettyr that he focht by  
 Powere of god, than by Erthely Powere. Foꝛ in al Placys, the ouer-  
 hande was his. And as hit Semyd fryst, that hit was foꝛ wrethe of  
 Seynte Thomas-es deth that that vnhape hym befell, Also hit  
 semyd ther-aftyr, whan he hadd done asseth to holy churche, *and*  
 pees made with the hooly martyr, with terys and repentaunce of  
 herte, al his tene (by godys helpe) hym turned to gladnys. Foꝛ  
 aftyr the mych tene and trayson that he hadd sufferid al two yere,  
 At the laste, was the battayll Smytten, at the whyche, be-twen the  
 two hostys, Ther were the kynges Sonnes dyscomfyte, by Ralfe de  
 Glanvil, that was Maystyr of the kynges hoste. Ther was take  
 the kyng of Scotlande, and the Erle of Chestre, and the Erle of  
 leycestre, and So many grete men, both of England *and* of beyonte  
 See, that vnneth thay found prisonys to ham. Ther, aftyr al the  
 trauail that the kyng hadde, and the Envy, and the costys al two  
 yere, come the Sonnes to the faderis Pees, *and* madyn asseth, falsly,  
 as hit was ther-aftyr wel Shewid in dede. Of this vntrouth, Spake  
illi quoque  
quos cu-  
bicularios  
sibi milites  
elegerat.  
propiti-  
ante nobili  
martyre  
Thoma,  
lacrimis et  
devotione  
jam pla-  
cato.  
umbratili-  
que magis  
quam vera  
concordia.

Capitulum  
xxxv<sup>m</sup>.

Merlin of  
Culidon's  
prophecy of  
the Rebel-  
lion of  
Henry II's  
sons.

prophecyes, & scyde: "The sonnes shullen agylte ayeyn þe fadyr  
for hys gyltes, & the rather gylte shal be enchesonð of þe gyltes  
þat after shullen comen. The sonnes shullen aryse vpon þe fadyr;  
& for to awreke hys felonye ayeyne þe wombe, the tharmes shal  
swer ham togydde. In the man of blode, the blode shall aryse,  
& wanhoply shal hys pynsyng be, tyl that scotland þe penaunce  
of hys pylgrymage bewepe."

## [CHAPTER XXXVI.]

Henry II  
had grey  
eyes, a red  
face,

and a big  
belly,  
tho, to  
lessen it,  
he'd hardly  
rest his  
body. All  
day he was  
out hunt-  
ing, and  
rode a high  
trotter;

at night he  
stood.

When once  
he'd seen a  
man, he  
knew him  
again.

The kynge henry the other, was <sup>1</sup> a man sauwrede, rounde  
heed, & round grey egheñ; roghly lokyng, & rede yn wreth;  
vysage rede bernynge, grete speche, neke somdel logh of þe  
sholdres, brest thyk, armes staluathe, of fleshy body; & more  
of kynde than of glotony, grete of wombe; for he was, as to prynce  
belongeth, [of] mete, & of drynke ful meen & for-berynge <sup>2</sup>; & for  
to a-quenche that gretnesse, he put hymself to ful mych trauaylle,  
that wnneth he lete hys body haue eny reste, ether by day other  
by nyght; ffor, wynter, & somer, he arose euer more yn the dawn-  
yng, & herd fyrst hys seruyce of holy chyrch; theſe-aftyr, most  
what al þe day he wold ben out, other wyth houndes other wyth  
hawkes, for yn thay two thynges he delyed hym swyth mych  
wythal; & vnnethe he wold ryde any amblyng hors, bot myche  
trottyng hors, for to trauaylle hys body the more. Aftyr al hys  
trauaylle a-day, vnnethe he lete hys body haue a lytell reste for to  
syte to hys mete the whyle that he eete; & anoon aftyr mete,  
& namely aftyr soppe, anoon he wold aryse & stonde, & so dryue  
forth al þe meste parte of the nyght, so that al þe court was  
oft ennyede theſe-of. þe man that he ones yn lych beheld, euer eft  
he hadde knowleche of hym; & dyng þat he hadde ones herd,  
euer eft he hyt wold vnderstond; þe man that he ones hated,  
vnnethe he wold euer eft <sup>3</sup> loue; & man that he ones loued, vnneth

<sup>1</sup> vir subrufus, caesius (= lentiginosus), amplo capite et rotundo, oculis  
glaucis, ad iram torvis, et rubore suffusis, facie ignea, voce quassa, collo ab  
humeris aliquantulum demisso . . . corpore carnosio, et naturæ magis quam  
gulæ vitio, citra tumorem enormem et torporem omnem, moderata quadam  
immoderantia ventre praeamplo. Gir. Cambr. *Op.* v. 302.

<sup>2</sup> Erat enim cibo potuque modestus ac sobrius; et parcimoniae, quoad  
principi licuit, per omnia datus. Gir. Cambr. *Op.* v. 302. <sup>3</sup> MS. est.

merlynge in his prophetes, and Sayde : " The Sonnes shullyn agylte agayn the Fadyr for his gyltes ; and the radyr gylte shall be encheyson of the gyltes that aftyr shullyn come. The Sones shall aryse vpon the fadyr; and forto aw[r]eke his felony agayne the wombe, the tharmes shal Swere ham to-giddyr. In the man of blode, the blode shal aryse; and wanhoply shal his Pynsyng be <sup>1</sup>, til that Scotland the Penaunce of his Pylgrimage bewepe. ' *et ob acelaris vindictam in ventrem viscera conjurabunt.*

## [CHAPTER XXXVI.]

**T**he kynge henry the othyr, was a man same rede, rounde hede, and rounde grey eynn ; row lokyng, and rede in wreth ; Visage rede, brennyng ; \* grete Speche ; neke somdel shorte of the Soldrys, breste thyke, of fleschy Body ; ande, more of kynde, than of glotony, gret of wombe ; for he was, as to prynce belongyth, of mete and of drynke ful meen and for-beryng ; and forto aquenche that gretnes, he put hym-Selfe to ful mych trauayl, <sup>2</sup> that vnneth he lette his body haue enny reste, othyr by day othyr by nyght. For Wyntyr and Somer, he aros euer-more in the dawyng, and herde fryst his seruyce of holy church ; theraftyr, most part al the day he wolde be out, othyr with houndys or with haukes ; for in thay two thyngys he deltyed gretly with-al / and vnneth he wolde ryde any hamlyng hors, but mych trottyng hors, for to trauail his body the more. Aftyr al his trauayl a-daye, vnneth he lette his body haue a lytil reste forto sitte to his mette. the whyle that he ette, and anoone aftyr mette, and namely aftyr soper, anoone he wolde arysse and stonde <sup>3</sup>, and So dryue forth al the moste Parte of the nyght, So that al the courte was ofte wery of his wakyng. the man that he onys in lyche be-helde, euer he hadd knowlege of hym ; and thyng that he hadd ones herde, euer aftyr he wolde hit vndyrstonde. the man that he onys hattyd, vnneth he wolde euer aftyr loue ; and man that he onys lowyd, vnneth he wolde euer aftyr hate. Whan

<sup>1</sup> et desperabilis fiet afflictio.—Op. v. 301.

<sup>2-3</sup> sibi nec pacem ullam nec requiem indulgebat. Venationi namque trans modestiam deditus, summo diluculo equo cursore transvectus, nunc saltus lustrans, nunc silvas penetrans, nunc montium juga transcendens, dies ducebat inquietos : vespere vero domi receptum, vel ante coenam vel post, rarissime sedentem conspexeris.—Op. v. 302.

Capitulum  
xxxvj<sup>m</sup>.  
Descriptio  
Henrici  
regis terciij.  
[\*Fol. 17  
a.]

immo-  
derata  
corpus  
vexatione  
torquebat.

totam  
statione  
continua  
curiam  
lassare  
consue-  
verat.

Henry II described.

He lov'd meekness, and hated pride.

he wold euer eft hate. Whan any vnhappes hym befelle, noman meker ; eftē whan he was yn sekernesse, no man sterneſ. Suert ayeyn the bold, meke wyth ham that weren vnder y-brought, hard amonge hys owne, & priuely large amonge vnkouth ; & openly 4 mekenesse & debonerte he louede ; pryde & hauteynesse he hated, & wold brynge vnder fote.

A.D.

1174-5.

[CHAPTER XXXVII.]

Henry II does not forget his Ireland.

[\*Fol. 18 b.]

He gets a grant from the Pope, of the Lordship of Ireland, and a charge to reform the folk to the laws of the Church,

No[ta] teno[rem] bullee [A.]drian.

to withstand sin, and better bad doings.

Thegh þe kyngē wer wel longe yn grete nuy & grete anguyshe throught hys sonnes, as hyt ys to-fore I-told, 8 natheles, amonge otheſ nedes, he ne forget nat hys Irland. He lete take the *lettres* that waſ Imade yn the consaylle of Casshele, of the vncleue lyf & the horyble synnes that the folk of Irland lyueden In, || other-wyse than crysten men oght lyuen ; & the 12 *lettres*, al ensealed as thay wer, he sent by hys messagers to the Court of Rome, to the pope Alyxsander that than was ; & thaſ he dydde the purchace, that by auctoryte of the pope, & by hys concent, was to hym I-graunted the lordshype of the lond ; & þe 16 lond-folke, that crysten shold be, & al clene was out of ryght reule of crystendome & ryght byleue, to bryngēn ynd-to ryght lawe of holy chyrch, yn the manere of England. That pryuelege forth, wyth anotheſ, that rather was purchaced of þe pope Adriañ, 20 that was to-fore Alexander, was I-sent ouer yn-to Irlande by Nychole, pryour of Walyngford, & Wyllyam Aldelines sone ; & was a consaylle of al the clergye of Irland I-gaddered to-gyddre at Waterford: theſ weſ the pryueleges I-shewed & I-radde 24 solempnelych to-fore ham, & I-graunted heghlygh by consentement of al the comynes. The forme of thay preuyleges, as thay wer endyted yn the Court of Rome a latyne, ne myght I nat comly setten yn Englyshe, & þerfor I lyt leue ; bot the meste 28 streynth ys thys :—Whan the pope Adryan hadde herd opynly the euyle lyf, & þe synfule, that þe folk of Irland ladden, wors than wyld bestes, & out of constytucions of holy chyrch & ryght byleue, he graunted the kyngē that he shold ynto Irland wend, for to 32 adresse & sprede þe termes of holy chyrch, for to wythstond & lete the ruine of syn, for to Amend the lyther thewes, & sette þe good,

any vnhappy hym be-felle no mane mekyr. Whan he was in sickyrnys, no man sternyr. Smyrte agayn the bolde, meke wyth ham *olemens in subactos.* that weryn vndyr-brought; harde amonge his owyn, ande Pryuely *diffusus in extraneos.* large amonge strange men; and opynly meknys and debonerte he lowyd; Pryde and hauteynesse he hatyd, and wolde brynge vndyr-fete.

## [CHAPTER XXXVII.]

A.D.  
1174-5.

**T**hegh the kynge were wel longe in gret angwysche throgh *Capitulum xxxvij<sup>m</sup>.* his sonnes, as hit is to-fore tolde, natheles, amonge othyr nedys, he foryate note his Irlande. he take the letteres that ware *suas tamen inter agendum Hiberniae non im-memor.* made in the Consayl of Cassell, of the vnclene lyfe and the horribil Synnys that the Pepil of Irland lyuedyn In / In othyr wyse than crystyn men oght lyue; and the lettres, al Ensealid<sup>d</sup> as they were, He sende his messagers to the Courte of Rome, to the Pope *ab Alexandro tertio, tunc praesidente, privilegium impetravit.* Alysandyr that than was, and thar he did Purchase that, by auctorite of the Pope and by his concent, was to hym grauntyd the lorchippe of the londe, and the londe-Pepill that crystyn shold be, and al clene was out of Ryght rule of crystyndome and ryght belewe, to brynga into ryght lawe of holy church, in the maner of England. That pryvylege forth, with an othyr <sup>1</sup> that radyr was *quod idem rex ab Adriano ... perquisit-erat.* Purchasid of the Pope Adriane, that was to-fore Alexandyr, was sende ouer Into Irlande by Nycole, pryoure of Walyngeforde, and *in publica audientia ejusdem privilegii, cum universitatis assensu solemniter recitatae facta fuit.* Willam Aldelines-sonne; and was a consayle of al the clergy of Irland y-gadderid to-giddy at Watyrford. ther wer the pryuy-legis y-shewyd, and y-radd Sollempnelych to-fore ham, and grauntyd hyghlych of al the comynys. The fourme of thay Pryuylegis, as they wer endyted At Rome a-latyne, y may not comly sette in Englysh, and therfor y \* Hit Leue; But the mest streynth is this: *[\*Fol. 17 b.]* Whan the Pope Adryan Hadd Herde opynly the evyl lyfe, and the synfull, that the Pepell of Irland laddyn, wors than wilde bestis, *Nota tenorem bulle Adriane.* and out of constituciones of holy church and ryght be-lewe, he graunted the kynge, that he sholde into Irland wende, forto adresse and sprede the termys of holy church, forto wythstonde and *et vitiorum plantaria inde extirpanda.* lete the ruene of synne<sup>2</sup>, forto a-mende the wickid dedis, and sette the good; forto En[e]che religion of crystyndome, So that hit were

A.D.  
1174-5.

for to eneche relygyoun of crystendome, so that hyt war wyrshype to god, & helte to the soules; & the folke of þe lond, manshyply hym shold vptake, & worthy as lorde; saue ryghtes of holy chyrche vnwemmed; & to seynt petyr & þe holy modyr chyrche of Rome, of 4 euery hous a pany to rent, a yer, yn Irland, as yn England. Thys pryuclege was I-purchased of þe pope Adryan; & a clerk hyt purchased, that hette<sup>1</sup> Ithōn of Salusbury; & the pope, by the same clerk, sent to the kyng a gulden ryng, yn name of Seysyne 8 of the lond. the pope Alexandre next aftyr hym confermed that same yift; & euery eþer of ham amonested & parted from god almyghty, & betheght þe deuyl al ham that yn any tyme þer-ayeyne wold come.

All oppo-  
nents are to  
go to the  
Devil.

12

## [CHAPTER XXXVIII.]

A.D. 1174.

Now again  
for our  
Knights'  
deeds in  
Ireland.  
Hervey of  
Mont-  
maurice,  
jealous of  
Reimund,

Off þe kyng And of hys sonnes, & of the purchace that þe kyng dede, ys Inowe Itold shortlyche: now we wyllen turne ayeyne to our knyghten gastes yn Irlande. The lond of Irland was yn good pees vnder Reymond-ys kepyng; bot 16 heruy of MOUNTYNORTHY,—that euer hadde enuy to Reymond, & saw that hys selth & hys wyrshype wex euer more & more,—fore he ne durst nat openly showe the felony that was yn hys hert, he bethoght that he wold dernely; he made hym semblant of myche 20 loue; besoght ful yorne þat he most allyaunce haue to har kynrede, & namely, that he moste haue to wyue a gentyl-wommañ, Moryces doghter, fytz Gereud, that hegh Neste. Thys mayd was hym Igraunted, & he hyr spoused; & þat þe kynrede sholden the 24 fasteþ be Ibound togydyr, by procuryng of Reymond & of hym eke, þe Erl yaf helyn, hys sustre, to Wyllyam, Moryces eldest sone: þe erl seut eke aftyr Moryce, that was than Iwent ynto Walys; & at hys comyng, he yaue hym þe haluendele of Ofelañ, & þe 28 castel of wykyñlo; & þat oþer haluendele he yaue Meyler. In the tyme þat þe pees was, & þe lond yn good state, byfel that Obren, the kyng of Thomon, ayeyne hys trouth & ayeyn the kynges pees, began to withdrawen hym from the kyng, & noght nold be 32 bowyng to hym, ne to ham that wer vnder hym yn þe lond.

marries  
Nesta  
Fitz-  
Gerald.

O'Brien,  
King of  
Limerick,  
rebels.

<sup>1</sup> MS. 'sette' for 'hight, hette, or hete,' p. 94, l. 22 below: 'per Johannem Salesberiensem,' v. 316.

vyrchipp to god, *and* helth to the Sowlys ; *and* the Pepil of the londe, maushiply hym sholde vp-take, *and* worthy as lorde ; Saue the ryght of holy church vnwemyd ; *and* to seynt Petyr *and* the holy modyr churche of Rome, of euery hous a peny to rent, a yere, in Irland as in England. This pryuylege was Purchasyd of the Pope Adrian. / *And* a clerke hit Purchasid that was callid Ihon of Salysbury ; *and* the Pope, by the Same clerke, Sende to the kynge a golde ryng, in tokyn of Seysyn of the londe. *And* the Pope Alexandyr nexte aftyr hym confermyt that Same yfte ; *And* euery othyr of ham amonessed *and* Partid from god almyghty, *and* betoke the deuyl al ham that in any tyme ther-ayeynnes wolde come.

A.D.  
1174-5.

*salva beato  
Petro, et  
sacro-  
sanctae  
Romanae  
ecclesiae,  
sicut in  
Anglia sic  
et in Hiber-  
nia, de  
singulis  
domibus  
annua  
unius  
denarii  
pensione.*

## [CHAPTER XXXVIII.]

A.D. 1174.

**O**ff the kynge *and* of his sonnes, *and* of the Purchas that the kynge did, is y-now tolde Sortelych. Now we will turne agayne to oure knyghten gestis in Irland // The londe in Irland was in good pees vndyr Reymonde-is keypyng ; but heruey of montmorthy,—that euer hadd envy to Reymonde, *and* Saw that his goodnes *and* his wyrchippe [wex] euer more *and* more,—for he nedrust not opynly show the felony that was in his herte, he be-thoght that he wolde Pryuely / he made to hym semblant of mych loue ; be-sogh[t] gretly that he sholde alyaunce haue to har kynryde, *and* namely, that he haue to wyue a gentyl woman, Morices doghtyr, fitz-geraude, that was callid Neste. This mayde was to hym graunted, *and* he hyr Spoused. *and* that the kynred sholde be fastyr bounde to-giddy, by procuryng of Reymonde *and* of hym also, the Erle yaue Ellyn his sustyr, to Willam, Morices Eldyst Sone. the Erle sende also aftyr Moryce, that was than went into walis ; *and* at his comyng, he yaue halfe to hym of Ofelan, *and* the castel of wickylow ; *and* the othyr halfe he yaue to Meyler. In the tyme that the Pees was, *and* the londe in good state, befel that Obreen, the kynge of Thomonde, agayn his trouth *and* the kynges Pees, began to wyth-drawe hym frome the kynge, *and* wolde not be bowyng to hym, nethyr to ham that wer vndyr hym in the londe.

Capitulum  
xxxviiij<sup>m</sup>.

*Videns . .  
ejusque  
succosus  
de die in  
diem am-  
plius pros-  
perari.*

*Nota  
matrimo-  
nium inter  
Herueium  
contrahi et  
Nestam  
filiam  
Maurici  
fitz-geraud.*

*medium  
Ophelanie  
cantare-  
dum . . .  
cum Wi-  
kingelo-  
nenst  
castro.*



[Fol. 10  
a.]  
A.D. 1175.  
Reimund  
marches to  
Limerick;  
but is  
stopt by  
the Shan-  
non.

Reymond told þer-of myche vnworthynes, & yn lytyl whyle gadered  
to-dedderes [so] hys hoeste, so that he hadde an hundert knyghtes  
& .xx.<sup>ii</sup>, thre hundret other an hois, & .cccc. bowmen afote, &  
about al-halwen-tyde went toward lymeryke. Whan thay wer theder 4  
I-come, thay hadden grete lette of the grete watyr of þe shynen,  
that was betwen ham & þe sytè, so that thay myght nat ouer  
wende: the yonglynges—that wel coueytouse wer ham self to  
aunaunce, her stalwarthnesse to showe, & also wynnyng to gete & to 8  
hawe,—weren wel sore a-tened þat thay myght nat ouer to þe syte  
that was ham so neght, for þe watyr þat was so depe & so streit  
rennyng betwene, & eke so stony by the ground. As the formest  
of ham waren houyng vpon þe waterys brynk, was a yonge 12  
knyght amonge ham, newly I-dobbet, *fayr & stalwa[r]th*, Reymondes  
Neuowe, that hete Dauy the Welsse<sup>1</sup>: thogh grete couetyse that  
he hadde, ouer al otheṛ to wyn the formest pryce, ne dredet nat to  
do hym-self to so horyble perylle of deth; he smote hys hors with 16  
the spores, & ouer-threwe adoun ynto þe watyr, þat was so depe  
& so stony. the horse was myche & stronge, & come sone vp  
aboute the watyr wyth hym. he wysse the hors sydlyng ayeyns  
the watyr asquynt, & come ouer on the otheṛ syde, & cryed to hys 20  
men, & seyð that he hadde a ford I-found. bot, for he fond no man  
þat hym wold felowe, bot o knyght that hete Geoffrey Iudas<sup>2</sup>, he  
turned ayeyne by that same wey, & þe knyght with hym. he come  
ouer hole & soun; bot þe knyght, progh þe streyntnesse of þe 24  
watyr, was I-throw adoun, he & hys hors, & y-drent to-for ham al.  
Whan Meyler, that theder was wyth Reymond I-comen, þys saw,  
he hadde grete enuy that such hardynesse shold be I-teld of any  
other, & nat to hym: vpon the hors þat hym baṛ, he put hymself 28  
yn the watyr, & hardylyche, wyth-outten any ferdnesse, passed ouer  
þe other syde. The cytzeyns sawe hym comyng so al-oon; thay  
comen ayeyn hym, some for to kepe hym vpward at hys comyng  
out of þe watyr, for to mak hym turne ayeyne; otheṛ, to vndo hym 32  
ryght yn the watyr. The knyght was stalwarth, & boldly putte  
hym vp bytwene twe perylle:—on on halue, þe wode-yernyng

His  
nephew,  
Dauy the  
Welshman

swims the  
river  
aslant;

but as only  
one knight  
follows  
him, he  
swims  
back.

Meiler  
then

crosses the  
Shannon.

<sup>1</sup> David agnomine Walensis. *Op.* v. 321.

<sup>2</sup> Galfridus Judas. *Ibid.*

Reymonde tolde therof gret vnworthynys, *and* in lytyll whyle A.D. 1175.  
gaddrid to-gidderis his hoste, So that he hadd an hundred knyghtes circa  
*and* xx<sup>ti</sup>, thre hundrid oþer an hors, and CCCC bowmen afoote; kalendas  
and aboute al-halwyn-tyde wentyn toward lymerike. whan they wer Octobris.  
thedyr come, they hadd gret lette of \* the watyr of the Shynnyfi, [\*Fol. 18  
that Was Betwen Ham and the Cite, So that thay myght not ouer- a.]  
wende. the yonglynges—that wel couetos wer ham-selfe to iuuentus,  
aunaunce, har myght to show, and also wynnyng to gette *and* to tam lucri  
haue,—wer sore greuyd that thay myght not ouer to the cite that quam  
was ham so nyghe, for the watyr that was to depe, and so Streyte laudis  
rynnynge betwen, *and* also so stony by the grounde. As the cupula,  
fyrste of ham was abydyng vpon the watyres brynke, was tanquam  
a knyght amonge ham newly dobbid, fayre *and* stalwarth, Rey- ad aquas  
mondes Eme, that was callid Dauy the Welsse: throug gret Tantali  
couetyse that he hadd, ouer al othyr to wyn the formyste price, he posita.  
dreddit not to do hym-Selfe to so horribill Perel of deth. he horren-  
smote his hors *with* the Sporis, *and* ouer-threw adoune Into the dumque  
watyr, that was depe *and* ful of stonys. the hors was mych *and* moris  
stronge, *and* come Sone vp abow the watyr *with* hym. he wisshed periculum  
the hors sydlynge ayeynes the watyr asquynt, *and* come ouer on the laudis  
othyr syde, and cried to his men, *and* seyde that he had a forde amore con-  
founde. but, for he found no man that hym wolde follow, but temnens.  
O knyght that [was] callid Geffrey Iudas, he turned agayn by that Cursum  
Same wey (*and* the knyght come *with* hym) holde and Sounde; but itaque  
the knyght, throug the Strey[t]nys of the watyr, was caste down, he fuminis  
and his hors, *and* drounde to-for ham all / whan Meyler, that lateraliter  
thedyr was *with* Reymonde come, this Sawe, he hadd gret envy obliquans.  
that Such boldnys sholde be tolde of any othyr, and noight of hym : militem  
vpon the hors that hym bare, he Put hym-Selfe in the watyr, *and* illum, in  
boldely, wyth-out any ferde, Passid ouer the othyr syde. The redeundo,  
Citteseynys Saw hym comynge out of the watyr so al-oone: thay amnis im-  
came agayn hym, some forto kepe hym vpward at his comynge out petuosi  
of the watyr, forto make hym turne agayn; othyr, to vndo hym violencia  
ryght in the watyr. The knyght was stronge, and boldely Putte raptum, ad  
hym vp be-twen two Perelis :—on oone halue, the wode rynnynge ima sub-  
mersumque  
non re-  
duxit.

A.D. 1175. watyr so gryslly ; on otheṛ halue, hys fomen, that with stonys & with  
 Meiler is fawes hym leyden on, both at þe watyr, & vpon the wallys of the  
 stoned and town, þat ryght vpon the watyr stode. He pute hys sheld & hys  
 shot at by the Limerick men. heed wyth the helme ayeyns the dyntes, & hertely held hym amydde 4  
 al þat harme, alone, wythout any helpe, ful unseker on al syde : þe  
 Reimund crye was ful horyble on euery halue. And Reymond, that was at þe  
 last of þe hoste, as hede & lodesman & prynce of al þe hoste, herde  
 the crye, & wyst nat yit what hyt was. He come anoon hastily 8  
 thrughe al þe hoste, tyl he come to þe watyr ; & when he sawe hys  
 neuue on that otheṛ syde, so narowe byladde, & on al syde besete  
 so narowe, he hadde grete angwysse yn hys hert ; & sharpe &  
 calls on his byttryly bygan to cry to hys felowes : " Men that so stalwarth 12  
 troops to ben of ryght kynd, & yn so fele Anguysshes with vs hath youṛ  
 streynth assayed, cometh forth, men ! the way ys open to-for vs,  
 & the ford that noon of vs ne couth, throgħ hardynesse of ouṛ  
 y-found. folow we now the herty knyght, that so stronge ys 16  
 save Meiler. byladde, & let me hym neuer so neygh to-for our eghen be I-shent ! "

He and all With that word, Reymond was þe fyrst that put hym yn þe watyr ;  
 his host & al þe hoste aftyr dyde ham yn aduentuṛ, & yn goddys grace,  
 swim the & wenten ouṛ al quyte, bot o knyght that hete Guy, & twey fote- 20  
 the Shannon, and take Limerick. men. her fomen flowen <sup>2</sup> to-fore hem ynto the Cytè, & thay braken  
 yn aftyr, & wan the cytè, & slown ful many of þe cytzeyns, &  
 dreyntten. Thay fonden ther so myche gold & sylueṛ & other  
 rychesse, that for that, & eke for the maystre || that god ham sent, 24  
 [¶ Fol. 19 b.] thay told lytel of the perylle & the lostes that thay hadde ther-to-  
 fore. Nowe arede ye, whyche was the hardyest of these thre  
 Which was the boldest of the three ? knyghtes ? whether he, that wythout any man to-fore hym, put  
 Davy, Meiler, or Reimund ? hym yn-to the watyr for to techen al the other the weye ; Atheṛ 28  
 he, that, aftyr ensample of hym, & the horyble death of ham that  
 weren I-dreynt to-fore har eyghen, passed the watyr, & al-one sette  
 so hardyly hys body to mark amonge so many fomen ; Other he,  
 that aftyr ham both, so hardyly & so boldly, with al the hoste, put 32  
 hym yn so gret perrylle ? Thus was, as the <sup>3</sup> tyme, lymeryk I-wonne

<sup>1</sup> MS. fawes. Lat. creberrimis lapidum jaculorumque jactibus. *Op.* v. 322.

<sup>2</sup> MS. slown. Lat. fugatis in urbem hostibus, v. 322.

<sup>3</sup> ? for 'at this.'

watyr so grymly; on the othyr syde, his enemys, that wyth stones A. D. 1175.  
*and with* fawis hym leydyn on, both at the watyr, *and* vpon the creberri-  
mis lapi-  
dum jacu-  
lorumque  
jactibus.  
 shelde and his hede *with* the sallet<sup>1</sup>, agayn the strokys, *and* hertely  
 helde hym amynd al the Perelis al-one, *with*-out any helpe, ful<sup>1</sup> galeam  
ictibus  
clipeumque  
praeten-  
dens.  
 vnsure on al sydis / the cry was ful horribill on euery syde. And  
 Reymond, that was at the laste of the hoste, as hede and ledder and  
 prynce of al the hoste, herde the cry, *and* wyst not what hit was.  
 he come anoone hastily throw al the hoste, til he come to the watyr;  
 and whan he Saw his eme on that othyr syde, so narrow besette, acriter ex-  
clamavit:  
Viri, qui-  
bus virtutis  
vigorem  
insitum  
novimus a  
natura,  
quorumque  
in tot an-  
gustis ani-  
mositatis  
vires ex-  
perti  
sumus.  
 he hadd grete angwysche in his herte; and sharpe and bittyr began  
 to cry to his fellows, "Men, that So bolde ben, of ryght kynde, and  
 in so many angwyschis *with* vs hath youre streynth proued, come  
 forth, men! they way is oppenyd<sup>1</sup> to-for vs; and the forde that noone  
 of vs knew, throug boldnys of oure is founde. followe now the herty  
 knyght that so stronge is by-ladde; *and* lette we neuer so ney to-for  
 oure eyyne be shente!" wyth that worde, Reymonde was the fryste  
 that \* Put Hym in the Watyr; and al the Hoste aftyr did Ham in  
 aduventure, and in goddys grace, *and* wenten ouer al quyte, (but  
 o knyght, that was callid Guy, *and* two footmen,) <sup>2</sup>her enemys  
 kylledyn to-for hem, into the Cite<sup>3</sup>, *and* Slowyn ful many of the  
 Citteseynes, and dreyntyn<sup>2</sup>. Thay foundyn ther so mych golde and  
 Siluyr, and othyr riches, that for that, and also for the Maystry that  
 god ham sende, thay tolde lytel of the Perel and the lostis that thay  
 hadd ther-to-fore. Now ared þe, whyche was the boldyst of this  
 thre knyghtes: Whedyr he that, *with*-out any man to-for hym, put  
 hym in the watyr forto techyn al the othyr the wey; Othyr he that,  
 aftyr Ensampill of hym, and the horribil deth of ham that weryn  
 drovnde to-for har eyyn, Passid the watyr, *and* al-one sette so  
 hardy his body, to marke, amonge so many ennemys; Othyr he that,  
 aftyr ham both, so hardy and so boldely, *with* al the hoste, Put hym  
 in so grette Peril. Thus was as this tyme limerike take on

<sup>2-3</sup> fugatis in urbem hostibus, non sine grandi civium strage, muros statim irruerunt; et urbe potiti cum victoria, spoliis plurimum ditati et auro, periculi damna lucri simul et laudis honore compensarunt. v. 322-3.

<sup>3</sup> The English copier of this MS. has jump't from the first 'Cite' to the second—see lines 21, 22 opposite,—and put 'killedyn' = 'slowen' l. 22 opp. for 'flowen,' l. 21 opp.

A. D. 1175. one a tywesday<sup>1</sup>; Watyrford I-wonne one a tywesdaye, & dyuelyn also: nocht for o coste was that day awayted *per-to*, bot as hyt byfelle by cas & by adwentu<sup>r</sup>; & nat wythout skyle, ffor the tywesday, by hethen men day yn the old world, was I-sette to a god<sup>4</sup> that day cleped Mars, & was I-hold god of bataylle; & on that day thay fonden, þat whoso bataylle besoght, he shold spede better than yn oþer dayes.

## [CHAPTER XXXIX.]

Reimund  
Fits-  
Gerald

was a far-  
seeing, self-  
restraind  
man,

watchful at  
night,

liberal,

and most  
skilful in  
War.

Now I wille yowe telle these twey stalwarth knyghtes,<sup>8</sup> Reymond & Meyler, whych thay weren. Reymond was a man brod of body,<sup>2</sup> somdel more than metlyche, yolowe he<sup>r</sup> & sam-crysp, grey eyghen & depe, somdel heyghe nose, neb rody, wel I-hewed, glad semblant & cleer<sup>3</sup>; man of moche methē & of<sup>12</sup> grete *purueyaunce*; nothyngē delycion, nother of mete ne of cloth; heet & cool, al I-lyche, wel he myght suffre; man of mych trauaylle; tholmode yn wreth; as redy he was to *serue*, to queme ham that he was ouer, as to be I-*serued* of ham. Whan he hoste<sup>16</sup> ladde, he was so besy about to kepe the host, that oft he left slepe al the nyght, & wandredde about, spyenge & crynge for to look þat noon harme ne shold betyde, & for he wold euer fyrst be redy, yf hyt nede wer. & shortlych to sygge hys thewes & hys<sup>20</sup> maneres, he was man free & meke, queynt & *purueynge*; & thegh he wer swyth hardy & wel taght yn wepne, of quenyntyse & of sleyght yn syght, & of selth yn bataylle, he passed al other<sup>3</sup>; & thegh he yn both wer myche to preyse, he was better leder of<sup>24</sup> hoste þan knyght.

## [CHAPTER XL.]

Meiler  
lookt dark  
and stern.

Meyler was a man of durk semblant; blak eghen, & rogħ lokyngē; sterne semblant; of body, somdel more than methlych; ful stalwarth, wel I-brested, smal mydel<sup>4</sup>, armes & other<sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Later note in margin: 'The<sup>r</sup>-aftyre hyt was I-socoured one a tywesday.

<sup>2-2</sup> *staturaeque paulo plus quam mediocris; capillis flavis et subcrispis, oculis grossis, glaucis et rotundis, naso mediocriter elato, vultu colorato, hilari, ac sereno. Op. v. 323.*

<sup>3</sup> *et quanquam animosus plurimum, et armis instructus, prudentia tamen rebus in martiis et providentia praecebat. v. 324.*

<sup>4</sup> *staturae paulo mediocri plus pusillae; corpore tamen pro quantitatis captu pervalido; pectore quadrato, ventreque substricto. v. 324.*

a tyvysday, therafter hit was socourid' on a tywysday, waterford A. D. 1175. was take on a tyvysday, and deuelyn also. noight for oo Purpos *nec per industriam* was that day wayted therto, but as hit befell by case and by *haec, sed casu solo* aduenture, and not with-out skylle. For the tyvysday, by hethyn *contigisse.* men tyme in the olde worlde, was sette to a god that is callid Mars, and Was holde god of battayle; And on pat day thay fovndyn, that who-so battayl be-soght, he sholde spede bettyr that day than in othyr dayes.

[CHAPTER XXXIX.]

**N**Owe y wille you telle thes two bolde knyghtes, Reymond *Capitulum xxxix<sup>m</sup>.* and Meyler, whych they weryn // Reymond' was a man *Descriptio Reymundi Le gras.* brode of body, somdel more than metlych, yolowe here, and sam-crysp; grey eyn and depe, Somdel hegh nose, face rody we[1] hewid, glad, semblante, and clere; man of mych mette and of grete Puruey- *Vir modestus et providus, nec cibo nec veste delicatus.* aunce / nothyng delycious, nothyr of mete ne of cloth; <sup>1</sup> hette and colde, al y-lyke, wel he myght suffyr; man of mych traual; tholmode in wreth; as redy he was to Serve, to queme ham that he was ouer, as to be seruyd of ham <sup>1</sup>. Whan he hadd host, he was so byssy about to kepe the hoste, that ofte he lefte Slepe al the nyght, and Walkid about, Spyenge and crienge forto loke that noone harme ne sholde befall, and for he wolde euer fryst be redy, yf hit nede were. And Sortely to Say his condicionys and his maneres, he was man fre and meke, queynt and Purueyyng; and thegh he wer *providus et prudens.* Swyth hardy, and wel taght in wepyn, of queyntyse and of Sleght <sup>2</sup> *multum quidem militis habens, sed plus ducis.* in fygh[t], and of Selth in battayl, he Passid al othyr; and thegh he in both were mych to Preyse <sup>2</sup>, he was bettyr ledder of hoste than knyght.

[CHAPTER XL.]

**M**Eyler was a man of durkesemblant; <sup>3</sup>blake eeyne and rogh *Capitulum xl<sup>m</sup>.* lokyng; sterne Semblante; of body, somdel more than <sup>1</sup> *oculis nigris et torvis.* metlych, ful bolde, wel brestyde, smale myddyl, armys and othyr

<sup>1-1</sup> caloris et algoris ei patientia par: vir patiens irae, patiensque laboris. Quibus praesidebat prodesse magis quam praeesse, potiusque minister quam magister videri volens.—*Op.* v. 324. (No Latin here for 'Whan . . . nede were.')

lymnes ful bony, more synowy than fleysly. he was knyht ful  
 Meiler was never afraid of any enterprise. He'd win or die. But he, and all the knights, robd the Church.  
 hardy & enuyouse; he was neuer aferde ne agryse to begynne  
 thyngē yn fyght that any man oght done hym on, Ather wyth  
 otheṛ y-meued<sup>1</sup>. In euery fyght, he was þe fyrst to begynne, & the  
 lasts that hyt wold leue. Al þe stalwarthnese that any man myght  
 do, he wold passe, or suffre deth; the maystrye & prys to wynne,  
 otheṛ deye,—nothyngē he ne sette betwene. Of al thyngē, bothe  
 these knyghtes weṛ to preyse myche wyth-al, neṛ hyt that thay, 8  
 throug couetyse, oft byname holy chyrch heṛ ryghtes; bot more  
 harme ys, & mychel to mourne, that defaute hadden meste al ouṛ  
 knyghtes from the forme begynnyngē. What was Robert  
 steuenessōn & hys sonnes yn hāṛ tyme? what, Moryce fytz 12  
 Geraud & hys sones? what, Robert debarry, of whom ys to-fore  
 I-told? what, myles de seynt dauy? both Robertes & Moryce  
 neuueuē, that with þe formest boldly come ynto Irland? what,  
 Robert fyz henry, Meyleres brotheṛ? what, Reymond de Cante- 16  
 tone? what, Robert de barry the yonge? what, Reymond hues-  
 sone? what, otheṛ of the selue gentrye, many & I-nowe, whych  
 hyt waṛ stronge to namen al by nam? for no mane ne myght hyt  
 bethynk, bot hāṛ stalwarthnesse ne heṛ good deddes shold neuer 20  
 wend out of mynd. Thay weṛ a folke & a kynrede, on two halue,  
 kyndly, stalwarth, & hardy; on other halue, of þe kynde of ffraunce,  
 & theṛ of wel I-taght yn wepne of myche \* neubre (?) of kynred  
 & kynd stalwarthnesse euer more to heṛ ende. Whan Reymonde 24  
 hadde I-wonne the sytē of lymeryke, he ordeyned & purueyed  
 how the cytē myght be best I-kept; he lete bryngē thedeṛ  
 vyttaylle on euery halue grete plente, & lefte þer Myles of seynt  
 dauy, with fyfty knyghtes & squyers an-hors, & ccc bowmen, 28  
 & with þe other parte of the hoste wyth yoy & gladnesse al  
 harmles turned ayeyne ynto leynestre.

## [CHAPTER XLI.]

The lond was þan yn good pees vnder Reymondes kep-  
 yngē, so that non Iresshe-man ne durst hym stur to 32  
 mysdom. Heruy of Mommorthy, that euer hadde enuy to hym,

<sup>1</sup> Miles animosus et aemulus; nihil umquam abhorrens, quod aggredi quis vel solus debeat vel comitatus, v. 324.

lymes full bony, more synowy than fleshy. he was knyght ful Descriptio Melerij.  
 hardy *and* Enuyouse; he was newyre aferde ne agryse to begynne  
 thyng in fyght that any man ogh don hym  $\bar{on}$ , \* Althyr wyth [\* Fol. 19  
 othyr ymewyd. In euery fyght, he was the fryst to Begynne, and þe a.]  
 laste hit to leue; al the boldnes that any man myght do, he wolde  
 Passe, or suffyre dethe. The maystry and Prysce to wyn othyr dye, inter mor-  
 nothyng he ne sette betwen. Of al thyng, both this knyghtes tis et  
 were to Preyse mych wyth-all, nere hit that thay, through covetyse, martis  
 ofte toke holy church ryghtes; but more harme is, *and* gretly to triumphos,  
 morne, that defaute haddyn meste al our knyghtes frome the fryst nihil me-  
 begynnynge. / What was Robert Steuenes-sonne *and* his Sonnys; dium  
 What, Robert de barry, of whom is to-for tolde; What, Morice fiz- ponens.  
 geraud *and* his sonnes; What, Miles de seynte dauy; both Robert  
*and* Morices emys, that wyth the fryst boldely come into Irland;  
 what, Robert fiz-henry, Meyler-is brodyr; What, Reymonde de  
 Canteton; What, Robert de barry the yonge; What, Reymond Hues- Quid alii  
 Sone; What, othyr of the same gentil, many *and* y-now, whych hit generosi-  
 were stronge to telle by name? for no man ne myght hit be-thynke, tatis ejus-  
 but har boldenys ne her good dedys shold neuer go out of mynde. dem quam  
<sup>1</sup> They wer a pepill *and* a kynred, on both sydys, be kynde, bolde plurimi,  
 hardy; on othyr halue of the kynde of Fraunce, *and* ther-of wel quibus  
 taght in wepyn, of mych nembre, of kynred *and* kynde bolde, euer- insignia  
 more to her ende<sup>1</sup> // Whan Reymonde hadd take the Cite of lymeryke<sup>2</sup>, singulorum  
 he ordeynyd *and* Purueyed how the Cite myght be best kepte: he gesta  
 lette bryng thedyr vytayH, on euery halue, grete Plente; *and* lefte perennem  
 ther Miles of Seynt dauy, *with* fifty knyghtes *and* Squerys an hors, poterant  
*and* CCC bowmen; *and* wyth the othyr Parte of the hoste, *with* Ioy laudis  
*and* gladnys, al harmeles, turned agayn Into leynystre. memoriam  
<sup>2</sup>A. D. 1175.

## [CHAPTER XLII.]

**T**He londe was than in good Pees vndyr Reymondys kepyng, Capitulum  
 So that non Irysh-man durst not styre hym to mysdone. xlijm.  
 Heruey of Mounmorthy, that euer had Enuy to hym, ne lefte not, Herveius  
de Monte  
Mauricii.

<sup>1-1</sup> O genus! O gens! gemina natura, a Trojanis animositatem, a Gallis armorum usum originaliter trahens.—*Op.* v. 326.



A. D. 1175. ne left nat, for the allyance that was ham betwene, pat he ne Reimund dydde hym al þe harme that he myght, & opynly shewed than Fitz-Gerald, and þe felony that he longe hadde I-borne yn hys hert. He sent ouer sends lies about him to Henry II, Reymond was yn yndygnacion of the kyng; & ayeine hys owne trouth, so hauteyn I-worth, that he wold al Irland take to hym & to hys<sup>1</sup>; &, for hys lesynges shold þe bettyr be y-leued, feel pynges he made hym to vndrestond, & so fayr hyt slyked wyth 8 falsnesse, that hyt somet sothe, al that he seyde. The kyng—as ofte manere ys that lydder tales ben bettyr I-leued, & lenger I-thoght, that good—he beleued þe fals mannys talys & wryynges, & sent yn-to Irland fouþ Messagers, that ys to wyttyn, Robert 12 the power, Osbern of herford, Wyllyam Berynger, & Adam of yarmemouth, of whych the twey shold abyde with the Erle yn Irland, & þe other tweyn shold wende ayeine ynto England wyth Reymond, as þe kyng hym hadde *COMMAWNDET*. 16

which the King believes, and despatches Messengers to bring Reimund back. Nota de aduentu powerenter in hiberniam.

## [CHAPTER XLII.]

✓ Hervey de Montmaurice

was as fair without, as he was foul within. He was lecherous, incestuous, envious, treacherous,

a coward, a braggart, and a liar.

**H**eruy was a man fayr & lygne, eyghen grey & depe, ouelyche lokinge, fayr semblaunt, of fayr spech & wordes wel besete; of body more than methlych, of al lymmes ful becomly; bot as fayr & as becomly as he was wytout, as lyddeþ 20 & as fals of many maner lastes he was wyt-In; ffor, fro the tyme that he was chyld, he yaf hymself to lecherye; & nat only to many sengle wommen; bot he ne synned neþer spousbrych ne syblynges; he was onful & bakbyteþ, 2 wreyer, false & traytuþ, duble of 24 tonge & nothyng stydfaste, butt yn 3 falsnesse hys speche thoght as thogh hyt wer hony & mylk out of hys mouthe, bot euer hyt was I-meygnet with attyr at þe ende. Som tym he was stalwarth, as to knyght longeth; bot aftyr, he yaue hym selue more to 28 cowerdyse than to knyghthode; & more he couth hym maken, thañ he was worth 2; hegh of berynge yn hous, & noght of plente; of mych speche, & lytel sothnesse.

<sup>1-1</sup> illi sinistre rerum eventum indicarit: asseverans quoque Reimundum, contra regis honorem, et fidem debitam, non tantum Limericum, verum etiam Hiberniam totam, sibiuisque jam occupare proculdubio proposuisse.—*Op.* v. 327.

<sup>2-2</sup> These words are in a different hand.

<sup>3</sup> MS. wroth.

for the alyauce that was ham betwen, that he ne did hym al the harme that he myght, and opynly shewed than the felony that he longe thought in herte. he sende ouer to the kynge by messangerys, and did hym to vndyrstonde, that Reymonde was in indignacion of the kynge; and agayn his owyn throuth, so Hauteyn I-worth, that he wolde al Irland take to hym and to his. And, for his lesyngys sholde the bettyr be belewid, <sup>1</sup> many lesyngys he made hym to vndyrstonde; and So fayre hit glosyd with lesyngis, that hit Semyd trouth, al that he sayde <sup>1</sup>. The kynge,—as ofte maner is, that fals talys ben bettyr belewid, and lengyr thought <sup>2</sup>, than good,—he belewid the fals manes talys and accusynges, And Sende Into Irland foure Messagers, that is to wittyn, Robert de Power, Osbern of Herforde, Willam Berynger, And adam of Iarnemouth <sup>3</sup>; of the whych, two sholde abyde with the Erle in Irland, and the othyr two sholde wende agayn in-to England, with reymond, as the kynge hym hadd comandyd.

A. D. 1175.  
*Et ut hoc  
flagitium  
delator  
regis  
auribus  
tutius et  
probabilius  
praesen-  
taret.  
memoria  
diuturnior.*

*Nota de  
aduentu  
Power-  
encium in  
Hiber-  
niam.*

## [CHAPTER XLII.]

**H**Ervey was a man fayre and lygne, eyghyn grey and depe <sup>4</sup>, lolych lokynges, fayre semblant, of fayre Speche and wordys wel besette <sup>5</sup> of body more than metlych, of al Lymmys wel becomly; But as fayre and as Becomly as he was wyth-out, As wickyd and as fals of many maner lastes he was wyth-In. // Fro the tyme that he was chylde, he yaued hym-Selfe to lechery, and not only to many Syngyl Women <sup>6</sup>, but he ne synnyd neuer spousebrich ne siblynges; he was onfull and bacbyter, wreyer, fals and trechoure, doubill of tonge, and nothyngeste ydfast but in falsnesse; his spech, as hit were honny and mylke out of the mouth, but euer hit was medlid with wenym at the Ende. Sometym he was bolde, as longyth to a knyght; but aftyr, he yafe hym [more] to cowardyse than to knyght-hode; and more he made of hym-Selfe than he was worth; hey of berynges in house, and not of plente; of myche speche, and lytyl trouth.

Capitulum  
xliij<sup>m</sup>.  
Descriptio  
Heruei.  
[\*Fol. 19  
b.]  
*promi-  
nentibus  
aspectu  
amabili.  
<sup>5</sup> nec  
incestus  
illos, nec  
adul-  
teriam  
vilans. Vir  
invidus,  
delator, et  
duplex;  
vir sub-  
dolos,  
facetus, et  
fallax.*

<sup>1-1</sup> ad votum effectui mancipandum, in Bragmannorum morem conjuratas ad hoc catervas Reimundum asserit composuisse. v. 327.

<sup>2</sup> Robertum Poerium, et Osbertum de Herlotera, Gulielmum de Bendinges, et Adam de Gernemes. v. 328.

## [CHAPTER XLIII.]

A. D. 1176.

Reimund  
hears that  
Donnell  
O'Brien,  
King of  
Limerick,  
is besieging  
the English  
there.

Reimund  
marches  
for  
Limerick,  
[\* Fol. 20  
b.]

with  
M<sup>c</sup>Mur-  
rough  
of Okensely  
and King  
Donnell of  
Ossory.  
The men  
of Tho-  
mond  
barricade  
the Pass  
of Cashel  
against the  
English.

K. Donnell  
of Ossory  
appeals to  
the Anglo-  
Irish forces  
to fight  
bravely.

**R**eymond hym dyght for to wende ynto England, as the  
kyng hym commandet; & nothyng abode, bot wynd &  
wedyr at the see: come Messagers, hastily I-sent from the meygne  
of lymeryke, & tolden that Obreen, the kyng of thomond, was 4  
belyggynge lymeryke with ful grete hostes; &, for þey hadden  
all the wytaille þat Reymond ham lefte & eke that thay haddeñ  
theŕ-aftyŕ I-puchassed yn the wenter-tyme, al I-spendet, me shold  
ham hastily send socoure. The Erle was ful anguysshous ham 8  
for to socour, & spake þer-of to the meygne, & besoght ham wel  
yonre (yorne?) theder to go; bot thay war so wroth & so sory  
for Reymondes wendynge away, that euerychon, with oo mouth,  
for-soken alout, that, without Reymond, for nothyng theder thay 12  
nold wend. The Erle toke consaylle heŕ, of the kynges messagers;  
&, for the thyng was yn grett þerryll, at þe end, throgħ bysy  
besechyng of the erle & eke of ham, Reymond turned ayeyne  
the baneres toward \* lymeryke. And as thay come toward 16  
Casshel wyth the hoste,—as myght be, syxty knyghtes, & two  
hundert squyers & thre hundred bowmen, wythout Iresshe-men  
that comen eke wyth ham, as Macmorgħ of okensely & dofnild  
of osserye,—me come to ham, & told ham, fore that þay of 20  
thomoñ hadde I-lefte þe sege of lymeryke, & wer I-comen ayeyns  
ham, to kepe ham yn the paas of Casshel; & thegħ the paas  
was stronge yn hymselfe, thay kesten adoun tren, & made dyches  
thaŕ towŕ, & hegges vpon, for noon horsmañ ne shold ouer wend. 24  
Whan thay wereñ negħ to the pas I-comen, Reymond deled the  
hoste a thre. & downyld, þe kyng of Ossery, that ful mychell  
hated, & foman was to, ham of thomon, saw þe Englyshe hoste—  
thegħ thay fewe weŕ—of ful good herte, & wel & semly I-wepned, 28  
for thay shold be þe trustyer, & the bettre herte haue to hem, &  
seyd, “Men, that þys lond wyth stalwarthnesse haue I-wonne,  
assayleth today styfly youŕ fomen! ffor yf, ye, as youŕ won ys,  
ouercometh, & the maystry haue; ouŕ sparthes, forth wyth your 32  
swerdys, ouŕ fomen smertly shulle folowen aftyr; & yf ye—that  
god forbede!—ben ouercome, sykeŕ be ye that we forth with ouŕ  
fomen wyllen turne vpon yowe. Take hede, knyghtes, & vnder-  
stondeth, youŕ townes & your castels ben welle ferŕ hennes, & 36

## [CHAPTER XLIII.]

**R**Eymond made hym redy to go into England as the *Capitulum xliij<sup>m</sup>.*  
 kyngye hym commaundid *and* nothyngye abode but wynde *A. D. 1176.*  
*and* wedyr at the See. Come messagers hastely sende frome  
 the meny of lymerike, *and* toldyn that Obreen, the kyngye of  
 Thomonde, was besegyn lymerike with ful grete hostis; and, for  
 they haddyn al the vytail that Reymonde with ham had lefte, *quoniam omnia ali-  
 menta, tam  
 and* also that thay purchasid sithenys, thay had al spende, *And ibi inventa  
 quam at-  
 tracta,  
 angwyschous ham for-to socoure and* Spake therof to the meny *brumali  
 tempore  
 and* besoght ham wel ofte thedyr to go, but thay were so wroth *consump-  
 serant.*  
*and* So sory for Reymondes goyngye away, thay euerchone wyth o *se illuc  
 ituros  
 abaque*  
 wyoyse forsokyn al, that wyth-out Reymonde for no-thingye thedyr  
 thay wolde goo. / The Erle toke consayl her-of of the kynges *Reimundo  
 omnes  
 unanimiter  
 contra-  
 dicerent.*  
 messangers, and for the thyngye was in gret Perel. at the Ende  
 throw besechyngye of the Erle *and* also of ham Reymond turned  
 agayn the baners toward lymerike. And as thay come to-ward  
 cassel with the hoste—as myght be, Sixti knyghtys *and* two hundrid *1 audivit  
 Tuhetmo-  
 nienses,  
 obsidione  
 relicta, ei  
 in passu  
 Cassiliensi  
 obviam  
 venisse; et  
 locum,  
 natura  
 difficilem,  
 confrugis  
 arborum  
 et fossatis  
 plurimum  
 exasper-  
 rasse; sepe  
 quoque  
 fortissi-  
 mam ex  
 locasse.  
 in vos cum  
 hostibus  
 procul-  
 dubio con-  
 vertentur.*  
 Squyeres *and* iij<sup>c</sup> bowmen, without Iryssh-men that comyn also  
 with ham, as Macmurgh of O-kensley and dofnylde of Ossery—thay  
 come to ham, *and* tolde ham, <sup>1</sup>fore that thay of Thomon hadd lefte  
 the sege of lymerike, *and* were comyn agaynes ham, to kepe ham in  
 the Paas of Casshel; and thegh the Paas was stronge in hym-Selfe,  
 thay castyn adoun trees, *and* made dichis thartowre, *and* heggys  
 vpon, for noone hors-man ne sholde ouer-wende. When thay wer  
 ney to the Paas y-come, Reymond delid the host a thre. And  
 downyld, the kyngye of Ossory, that gretly hatid, *and* enemy was  
 to ham of Tomonde, Saw the Englyssh host (thegh thay few were)  
 of ful good herte, *and* wel semely wepenyd; and for thay sholde be  
 the trustier, and the bettyr herte haue to them; *and* sayde, “ Men,  
 that wyth boldnes this londe haue conquerid, assaylyth this day  
 styffly youre enemys! For an ye, as youre wone is, ouercomyth, and  
 the maystry haue, our Sparrys, forth with youre Swerdys, oure  
 enemys smyrtly shull follow aftyr. And yf ye (that god forbede!)  
 ben ouer-come, syckyr be ye <sup>2</sup>that we forth with oure enemys wil  
 turne vpon yow. Take hede, knyghtys, and vndyrstondyth, youre  
 \* tounys and your castelys Ben wel ferre Hennes, and the flyght ful  
 [\*Fol. 20  
 a.]

A. D. 1176. the flyght ful longe, & ouer maner ys, to helpe ham that ben omost, & folowe the fleynge. trusteth wel to vs; bot no lenger than the ouer hand ys youer." ¶ Whane thys was yseyd, Meyle, pat was yn the formeste of the host, smertly spronge out, as sparke out of fyre; & al the host aftyr stalwartly com to the pas; & nat wyt-out gret slaght of ham that wythstoden, opened the way, & wentten ouer an estre euen, & a thrydde ester day, that ys to wentten, on a tywesday, as at the othe tyme. Also nowe, the host come ynto lymeryk, Reymond lete ryght & are that, throug the sege of ha fomen, was I-wasted & destrued. & nat lange the aftyr, he held parlement wyth the kynge of Connaght & the kynge of Thomon, bot yn oo day bot nat yn o place; ffor the kynge of Connaght held hym yn the watyr of the shynen, yn a myche logh, yn botys, & the kynge of Thomon was tha negh yn a wodde. Reymond was betwene two, at kylvalo, as myght by, syxten myle frome lymeryk. Ther was the parlement so fer forth I-dryuen, that euery of ham delyuered to Reymond good hostages, & othes many-fold sworne hold & trewe, yn good pees for to hold euer este to the kynge & to hys. Whan thys was I-done, & Reymond turned ayeyne wyth hys hostages to lymeryke, pe prynce of desmond, Dermot Maccarthy, sent by messagers to Reymond, & besoght hym that he ayeyne hy[s] eldeste sone that hete Cormoc Oletha—tha[t] wel negh hym out of hys kyngedome I-putte—hym, as the kynges trew man, shold helpe; & large yftes he byhete, both to Reymond & the meygne, wyth that that thay wold hym helpe. Reymond, as ma that had nat loth wynnynge, ne hymself to auaunce, spake her-of to hys falawes, & thay alle graunted to do as he wold, & turned the baners toward the Contreys of Cork. by weyes as thay wentten, thay name many prayes, wher-of the meynge was ful wel apayed, & mych ther-of was oft I-sent to lymeryk, so longe, that throug help of Reymonde, Dermot recouered al hys kyngedome vpon hys sone —of whyche he was negh I-pute owt:—the sone was I-take & delyuered to the fadyr, & he hym pute yn pryssoun, & nat longe ther-aftyre hym be-lete take out of pryssoun, & smyth of hys hede.

Meiler Fitz-Henry leads the attack, and forces the Pass on Easter Eve April 3. They enter Limerick, and repair it. Reimund, at

Killaloe,

induces the Irish rebels to swear allegiance to Henry II. He then agrees to help Dermot Maccarthy against his son Cormack.

Reimund marches to Cork, and beats Cormack,

who is put in prison, and then beheaded.

Longe. <sup>1</sup> And oure maner is, to helpe ham that ben omyste, and A. D. 1176. follow the fleynge. trystyth wel to vs; but no longyr than ye haue the ouer hande" / Whan this was sayde, Meyler, that was in the formyst of the hoste, smyrtly styrted out, as sparke of fyre; and al the host aftyr, boldely come to the Paas; and not wyth-out gret slaght of ham that wythstodyn, openyd the way, and wentyn ouer an Estre-eyvn, and the thyrd Estyr-day, that is to say, on a tyvysday, as at the othyr tyme. also now þe hoste come to lymerik, Reymond lette rere that throw the sege of har enemys was wastid and destrued. and not lange ther-aftyr, he helde Parlement wyth the kyng of Connaght and the kyng of Thomonde, both in oo day, but not in oo Place; For the kyng of Connaght helde hym in the watyr of shynnyyn, in a myche logh, in botis, and the kyng of Thomonde was thar negh in a wodd: Reymonde was betwen two at kyldalo, as myght by, systene mile from lymerik. Ther was the Parlement So fer forth drywen, that euery of ham delyuerid to Reymond good hostagis, and othis manyfolde Sworn, holde and trew, in good Pees forto holde euer aftyr to the kyng and to his. Whan this was don, and Reymond turned agayn with his hostagis to lymerike, the Prince of Desmonde, Dermot Maccarthy, sende by messagers to Reymonde, and besoght hym that he-agayn his eldyst Sone that hete Cormok Olethan, that wel ney hym out of his kyngdome Putte,—hym, as the kynges trew man, sholde helpe; and large yftys he Promysyd, both to Reymond and the meny, yf thay wolde hym helpe. Reymond, as man that had no loth wynnynge, ne hym-Selfe to auctrice, Spake herof to his fellowis; and thay al graunted to do as he wolde, and turned the baners toward the contreis of Corke. <sup>2</sup> by weyes as thay wentyn, thay rerid many Prayes, Wherof the meny was ful wel appayed and wel arrayed, and mych therof was ofte sende to lymerik. So longe, that by the helpe of Reymond, Dermot recoverid al his kyngdome vpon his sone, of whom he was ney Putt out / the Sone was take, and delyuerid to the Fadyr; and he Putt hym in pryson. and not longe ther-aftyr, hym he lette take out of pryson, and smyte of his hede.

*Nota quod hibernici non sunt amici nisi quandiu forma faciet.*

*<sup>1</sup> Et nos victoribus semper adhaerentes, solum persequimur fugientes. De nobis itaque confidite, sed victores.*

*fidelitatem Anglorum regi et suis de cetero inriolabiliter exhibendam sacramentis corporaliter praestitis renouaverit.*

*<sup>2</sup> Multis itaque tum praedis in brevi quam stipendiis, familia in partibus illis abunde refecta, et alimenterum copia Limericum abunde persaepe transmissa.*

A. D. 1176.

[CHAPTER XLIV.]

[Fol. 21a.]  
Reimund  
Fitz-  
Gerald  
hears from  
his wife  
Basile,

that her  
bad tooth  
is out,

i.e. that  
Earl Stri-  
guil is  
dead, tho'  
his death  
is kept  
secret.

Reimund's  
Council  
advise him  
to quit  
Limerick,  
and take  
his men to  
Leinster.

So he com-  
mits Lim-  
erick to  
O'Brien,  
who swears  
to keep it  
in peace;  
but at once  
breaks his  
oath, and  
destroys  
the Bridge.

The whyle that Reymond was in this maner yn  
desmon, come a Messager to hym ffrom dyuelyn,  
hastly I-sent, & broght hym a *lettre* from basile, hys wyf; bot  
he that hyt broght, wyst nat what hyt was. Reymond hadde 4  
wyth hym a clerk that he wel tryst to; he lete hym rede the  
*lettre* priuelych, that thus myche hym seyde: "To hyre leue  
lord & hyr spouse Reymond, hys basyle sendeth gretynge. as to  
hyr selue, wyt thou, lef man, that the grete chek-toth that so sore 8  
me oke, ys I-falle. Wherfore, yf thou any thyng recheeste of thy  
self, otheṛ of me, ne leue nat to come hastly to me." Whan  
Reymond thys herd, he vnderstode that the mych toth that hyr  
was I-falle, betokned þe Erles deth; for he lefte hym ful seke at 12  
dyuelyne, whan he parted from hym. And thegh he lange theṛ-to-  
fore was ded, fō drede of Iresshe-men he was for-hold tyl  
Reymondes comes, & the meygnees, ynto leynestre. Reymond  
turned sone to lymeryke. & þe sorow that was yn hys hert 16  
*with*-yn, he, for al hyt, as myche as he myght, *with* fayr sēblant  
makyng *with*-out; & ful fewe men, he shewed the aduentur that  
so sodeynly was byfalle; & of ham that mooste good kouth, he  
besoght consaylle & rede, what was ham to done. Than was 20  
comenly haṛ rede such: "what fore the erles deth, what for  
Reymondes wendynge out of the lond, that the sytē of lymeryke,  
that was so ferrē, & amonge so many enemyes, me shold leue voyde;  
& al the meygne holy led ynto leynestre, þe townes vpon þe see 24  
& the castels for to kepe." Reymond, thegh hym loth weṛ,  
graunted thys, & stod to haṛ rede; &, for he ne fond none that  
aftyr hym wold theṛ abyde, he betoke Obreeṇ, the kyng of  
thomōṇ, the Cytē to kepe as the kynges baroun, & toke of hym 28  
efte newe hostages, & many new othes I-swore, the toun harmles  
for to kepe, & the pees trewly for to hold. Vpon thys forward,  
they wentten al out of the Cytē, & lefte Obreeṇ & hys men *with*-yn;  
& vnnethes thay waṛ I-passed the brygge, that þe tother end nas 32  
I-brokeṇ anoon ryght behynd ham, & þe toun, that wel & fast was  
I-walled, & wel I-byld *with* good housses I-herterged o wyttaylle  
that on euery half þether was I-broght well I-stoffe<sup>1</sup>, nat *with*out

## [CHAPTER XLIV.]

A.D. 1176.

The whyle that Reymond was in this maner in  
 desmonde, come a Messager to hym frome deuelyn,  
 Hastly sende, and broght hym a lettyr frome basyle, his wyfe;  
 but he that hit broght, wyst not what hit was. Reymond hadd  
 with hym a clerke that he trust wel to. / He mad him rede the  
 lettyr priuely, pat thus mych hym sayde: "To hir welbelowid lorde  
 and Spouse, Reymond, his basylle sendyth gretynge. as to hyre-  
 Selfe, wit thou, lese man, that the grete chektoth that so sore me  
 grewid, is falle; Werfor, yf ye rekyth any-thinge of youre-Selfe,  
 othyr of me, ne leue not to come hastely to me." When Reymond  
 this herde, he vndyrstod by the mych toth, that \* Hyr was fall,  
 Betokenyd the Erllys deth; for He Lefte Hym ful seke at deuelyn  
 when he lefte hym. And thegh he lang therto-for was ded, for  
 fere of Irysh-men, he was for-holde tyl Reymondes comys and  
 the menyas, in-to leynystere. Reymond turned sone to lymerike.  
 and the Sorrow that was in his herte wythin, <sup>1</sup> he, for al hit, as  
 mych as he cowthe, made fayre semblant without<sup>1</sup>; and to ful few  
 men he shewid the aduerture that so sodeynly was byfall; and of  
 ham that moste good couth, he besoght consayl and rede, what was  
 ham to done. Than was comynly har consail Such, "what for the  
 Erllys deth, what for Reymondys <sup>2</sup> wendinge out of the londe, that  
 the Cite of lymerik, that was so ferre, and amonge so many enemys,  
 that they sholde leue woyle; and al the meny, holy lede Into  
 leynystere, the toynes and the castelys vpon the See forto kepe."  
 Reymond, thegh loth hit was to hym, gravntyd this, and stode to  
 har rede; and, for he ne found none that aftyr hym wolde byde  
 there, He yaue Obreyn, the kynge of Thomonde, the Cite to kepe  
 as the kynges barovne, and toke of hym, fryst, new hostagis, and  
 many new othys Sware, the touffe harmles forto kepe, and the Pees  
 trewely forto hold / Vpon thys, thay wentyn al out of the Cite,  
 and lefte obreen and his men within / and vnnethys thay were  
 Passyd the brige, that the othyr ende nas brokyn anooone ryght  
 behynde ham; and the toun, that wel and faste was wallid; <sup>3</sup> and wel  
 bylid with good houses, I-herbergid of wytalys, that on euery halfe  
 thedyr was broght wel Stuffed; not wythout gret Sorynys of herte,

Capitulum  
 xliij<sup>m</sup>.  
 nota De  
 morte  
 comitis  
 Richardi.

quod dens  
 ille molaris  
 et magnus,  
 qui tantum  
 mihi dolo-  
 erat, jam  
 cecidit.

[\*Fol. 20  
 b.]

usque ad  
 Reimundi  
 famili-  
 aequae redi-  
 tum.

exte-  
 riore vultu  
 hilaritate  
 valde dissi-  
 mulans.

totamque  
 familiam  
 integre.

Duvenaldo  
 Tuhetmon-  
 niae prin-  
 cipi.

<sup>3</sup> aedificiis  
 decenter  
 ornatam,  
 alimentis  
 undique  
 congestis  
 plane  
 refertam.

<sup>2</sup> de[parting?] at first written here.



A. D. 1176. grette sorynesse of hert, thay sawe on fouȝ partyes I-sette afyȝ; & thys the traytour Obren shewed openlych how me shal tryst to Iryshemen trowth. ¶ Reymond, with all the meygne, wentt hym tho to dyuelyȝ; & the Erles body, that by hys byddyng was I-kept vnburied, [was buried] yn the modyr-church of þe Trynyte, to-for the swete rode, by *procuryng* of sent laurence, that was yn that tyme erchebysshope of dyuelyȝ.

[CHAPTER XLV.]

Henry II's Commis- sioners go back to him. **A**ftyȝ that þe Erle was dede, the kynges mes- sagers, that werē aftyr Reymond I-come, vpon newe aduenturs toke new consaylle. Thay lefte Reymond keper of Irland, & wentten ham ynto Engeland hastily to the kyng, & told hym of the erles deth, & the state of the lond. The kyng

Notz the goodnesse of Geraud.

Henry II sends Wm. Fitz-Audeline and others to Ireland.

[\* Fol. 21 b.].

Reimund yields all his towns and hostages.

His fine retinue excites Fitz-Audeline's envy,

and he always works against Reimund and the Geraldines.

sent than ynto Irlande, Wyllyam aldelinessone, *procuratour* of the lond, with x knyghtes of hys owȝ priue meygne; & with hym, Ihoȝ de Courcy with other x; Robert steuenessone & Myles de Cogaȝ, þat al two yeȝ yn engeland & yn gascoyne nobly hadden with the kyng I-be, come þaȝ ynto Irland with xx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes. Tythynges come to Reymond that thay waȝ arryued; & he anon-ryght went ayeyns ham with mych gladnesse \* & fayr felawshyppe of knyghtes to Weyford. Ther he yeld vp to Wyllyam, as to Seneschal from the kyng I-sent, al the kynges townes, & hys castels, & al the ostages of Irland. Wyllyam sawe Reymond wyth so many & so fayr yonglynges bylad, & beheld Meylleȝ & other knyghtes of hys kyn, fayr & rychely y-wepned of o maner vepne, wel thrytty, vpon ful fayȝ hors, sheldes about haȝ nekkes, & spers yn hand, pleyng to-geddre ynto al the feldes: he turned hym to hys men, & seyde al soft, "Thys pryde shal be pute In, ar hyt be lange, & þese sheldes to-dreued." Ffro that tyme euer aftyr, these & meste al other *proc[ur]atours* yn Irland, as thoght hyt weȝ by on oth togeddre I-swore, thogh ond & enuy ne stynt neuer to besech Reymond & Meilleȝ, Robertes sones, & Moryce, & al that kynrede, al þe enuy that þay myght & durst; for þys ys euermore haȝ wayte & haȝ aduentur: euer whaȝ grete nede byfelle yn tyme of weȝ, thay war lef & derward, & the formeste to I-clepped, & to bataylle, through hardynes, formest & fyrst redy; whaȝ non ned was,

that Saw on foure Parties sette afyre. And thus the tray-toure A. D. 1176.  
 Obreyne shewid opynly how we sholde trust to Iryssh-men trouthe // *corpus*  
 Reymond, with al the meny, went to deuelyñ; and the Erlis body *comitis*  
 that by his byddyng was kepte vnburied [was buried] in þe modyr *quod . . .*  
 church of the trynyte, to-for the Swete Rode, by procuryng of *fueraſt re-*  
 Seynt laurance, that was in that tyme Archebyſchope of Deuelyn. *ſervatum*  
*. . . in ec-*  
*cleſia . . .*  
*eſt tumu-*  
*latum.*

## [CHAPTER XLV.]

**A**ftyr that the Erle was dede, the kynges mes- *Capitulum*  
 ſangers, that weryn aftyr Reymond come, vpon new *xlviii.*  
 aduentures toke new conſail. Thay lefte Reymond keper of *Nota the*  
 Irland, and thay went into Inglande haſtely to the kyng, and tolde *goodnyſ*  
 hym of the Erle-is deth, and the ſtate of the londe // The kyng *of Geral-*  
 ſende than into Irland, Willam Aldelinyſ Sone, Procuratoure of the *dynes.*  
 londe, x. knyghtis of his owyn Pryue meny; And with hym Ihon de *Nota de*  
 Curſi, with othyr x; Robert Steuen-es [ſone] and Miles de cogan, *adventu*  
 that al two yere in England and in gascoyn nobely haddyn with *Willelmi*  
 the kyng be, come than Into Irland with xx<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtis. Thythynges *Addelini*  
 come to Reymond that thay ware londid; and he anone-ryght went *fili], et*  
 agaynes ham with mych gladnyſ, and fayre felochipp of knyghtes, *Iohannis*  
 to weyſforde. Ther he yaued to Willam, as to Senescal from the *de Curſi,*  
 kyng ſende, al the kynges townes, and his caſtelis, and al the *in Hiber-*  
 hoſtages of Irland. Willam Saw Reymond with ſo many and ſo *niam.*  
 fayre yonglynges \*Bylad, And Be-Helde Meyler and Othyr *1 Super-*  
 Knyghtes of His Kyn, fayre and riche wepenyd of o maner *biam*  
 wepyn, wel xxx<sup>ti</sup>, vpon ful fayre hors, ſheldys aboute har neckys, *hanc, in*  
 and ſperryſ in honde, Pleyng to-gadderes in-to al the feldys. *brevi com-*  
 He turned hym to his men, and ſayde al ſofte, "This Pryde ſhal *primam, et*  
 be Put In<sup>1</sup> ar hit be lange, and this ſheldys to-dreued." Fro that *clipeos*  
 tyme euer aftyr, and theſe and moſt al othyr procuratoures in *istos*  
 Irland, as thegh hit were by one othe to-giddyſ Sworne, throggh *diſpergam.*  
 hate and envy ne ſtynte thay neuer to malyngne agaynyſ Reymond *[\*Fol. 21*  
 and meyler, Robert-es Sonnes and Morices, and al the kynred of *a.]*  
 geraldines, al the envy that thay myght and durſte; for this is  
 euer-more har abydyng and har aduenture: Euer whan grete *Nota de*  
 nede bifel in tyme of werre, thay wer lefe and derwarde, and the *geraldinis.*  
 fryſt to be callid for bolnyſ, and to battail fryſt redy; whan no *Nota*  
*cauſam*  
*invidie*  
*inter*  
*aldelini*  
*filium et*  
*geraldinor.*  
*Semper in*  
*armata*  
*militia*  
*cari.*

A. D. 1176. anooñ they weþ loth, & I-pute abake; heþ felowshyp I-left yñ yurne to harme. Na the wodde of haþ gentryce, through non enuy ne myght neuer be I-rotet; for euer ham spryngyth new spourges, of whych the myght yn the lond nys nat lytelle. Who beth that 4  
 Yet the Geraldines won and kept Ireland. kepeth the contreys? the Geraudynes: Who through þurleth the hostes? the Geraudynes: Who ben that fomen adredeth? þe Geraudines: Who ben that enuy bachyteth? þe Geraudines.

Had justice been done them, they'd have held the land in peace. Hade thay I-found prynce yn any tyme, that haþ stalwarthnesse 8 ham had y-yold, as thay worthy weþ, yn good pees & stydfast hadden I-brought the state of Irland. Bot thegh thay nededen neuer so well, thay ne hade bot lytele thanke, other noon; haþ trauaylle yuel I-yold, & ouerthrow yn haþ goodnesse, & mysbeleue 12 & bachyttynge of haþ stalwarthnesse; & to other, the prynces trysten, wyt whych no staluarthnesse was I-founde, ne no power hadde well to done without helpe & socouþ of ham. And also Aldelinese-sonne, at hys comynge ynto Irland, he wente from toun to 16 toun vpon þe see, & progh soght the Cyttes theþ plente was of mete & drynke; bot the monteynes, & þe londes with-In, nold he neuer come negh. gold & syluyre, whar-of mych plente was yn þe lond, wel hungrylych he gaderede, to helpe-with pledynge & 20 pullynge of pees men, & nogh of theues ne of reuers. In that tyme, about myd-heruest, Moryce fyzt-Geraud deyed, nat without gret Sorynesse of al hys, & mych harme & lost to al Irland; ffor he was a man methefull, suttell, & stalwarth: treweþ man ne 24 stydfaster mañ, ne left he non yn Irland. ¶ Wyllyam adelinese-sonne ran Moryce sonnes to harme anon, & ne stynt neuer tyl he hadde I-take of hym þe Castel of Wykelowe wyth falsnesse. of Reymond & Robert steuenesse-sonne, he name the londes that thay 28 hadden yn the vale of dyuelyn & yn Ophelayn; & other that hadden londes yñ pes, he name thay londes to the kynges behoud, & delyuered ham londes furthyre yñ marche, & yn perryll nexth haþ fomen: al with vnryght, & by hys owne wyll; ffor theþ ys 32 nothyng so bold ne so kene as ys that mañ that ys of noght I-come, Whan he ys an-hegh I-brought, & vnkyndely I-sette yn maystry. ¶ Wyllyam was a man mych of body, & of makynge; \*good met-yeuer; fre & corteys by semblant; bot al that he dyde any 36

[\*Fol. 22 a.]

nede was anoon they were hatyd *and* Putte abake, her fellochip A. D. 1176.  
left *and* turne to harme. // Na the wodd of har gentryce, through Nota de geraudynes.  
non envy ne myght, *neuer* be y-roted, for euer ham spryngyth  
new Spourgis, of whych the myght in the londe is not lytell.

What ben thay that kepyth the contrayes? the Geraudynes. Who Qui sunt qui penetrant hostis penetralia?  
throw thurlyth the hostis? the geraudines. Who ben that Enemys  
dreddyth? the geraudynes. What ben thay that envy bacbityth?

the geraudines. Hade thay found prynce in any tyme that har Note the harde adventure of Geraldines.  
streynth ham wolde yeue, as thay worthy wer to haue / in good  
pees *and* stydfast thay haddyn broght the state of Irland. But

thegh thay euer so wel had done, thay hadd but lytyll change,  
or noone, for her laboure. But euer thay profited in har goodnys ;  
and mysbeleue and bacbitynge, of hare boldnys. And to othyr  
the Pryncis trystyn, wyth whych no boldnys was founde, ne  
Power had wel to do / *with*-out helpe and Socoure of ham //  
And also Aldelines Sonne, at his comynge into Irland, he went

from toun to toun vpon the See-syde, *and* throw soght the Citteis Nota quo tempore mortuus erat ille Mauricius geraldii filius.  
ther Plente was of mette and drynke; but the montayns *and* the  
londe *with*-In, he wolde *neuer* come ney. / golde *and* syluer, wherof  
mych Plente was in the lond, wel hungryly he gadderid to-giddyr,  
*with* pledynge and Pullynge of peese men, *and* not of theuys ne of

Robers. In pat tyme about Mid-heruest, Morice fiz-geraud deyed, Descriptio Maurici fiz geraud.  
not *with*-out grette Sorrow of al his, *and* mych harme and lostes to  
al Irlande // For he was a man meteful, Suttyl *and* bolde : trewer (See p. 76. 7.)  
man, ne stydfastyr man, ne lefte he none in Irlande // Willam

Aldelins sone ran Morices sone to harme, *and* styntid *neuer* til he  
hadd take of hym the castel of Wickelow wyth falsnes. Of fraudulenter eripuit.  
Reymond *and* of Robert Steuenes-sone, he toke the londys that  
thay hadd in the vale of Deuelyn, *and* in Ophelan; *and* othyr that

hadd londis in Pees, he toke thay londys to the kynges be-howe,  
*and* delyuerid ham landys furthyr in Marche, *and* in Peril nexte <sup>1</sup> Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum.  
har enemys, al *with* vnryght *and* by his owyn will. For ther is

nothyng so bolde ne so kene, as is that man that is of noght come,  
whan he is an-hey broght, *and* vnkyndely sette in Maystry <sup>1</sup> // Claud. Eutrop. i. 181.

Willam was a man mych of body *and* of makynge, good mete- [\*Fol. 21 b.]

\* yeuer, fre and corteyse By Semblant. But ale that He did any b.]

Bad character of William de Fitz-Audeline.

to wysshype al hyt was yn spynges, felonye, & trecherye; *euere* he shedde attyr vndyr hony. To-day he wold do the wyrshyps, to-morow he wold the reue & do shendshype; the meke & þe lotles he vndedde, þe sterne & the hawteyn he plessed; softe with 4 wyld men, & hard with pees men; of fayr spech, soft, fals, trecheur; argþ & enuyous, dronklewe & lecheour.

A. D. 1177.

[CHAPTER XLVI.]

John de Courci sees Fitz-Audeline's rascality.

Iohan de Courcy saw that al thynges that Wyllyam dydde was couetise And trecherye, & that he nas 8 nothynges trewe to ham that vndyr hym weþ, ne dredlyche to the mysdoynge. he chase hym of the meygne of dyuelyn a few,

He gets troops from Dublin; invades Ulster,

bot thay weþ good & stalwarth & hardy throug al thynges, so that he hadde xxiiij knyghtes, fyfty squyers, & fotmen as myght 12 be by ccc, & went hym yuto Vlnesteþ, whare non engeleashe-man I-wepned to-foþ hym was I-seye. Than was fulfilled a prophecye of Merlyn, that thys seyde: "A whyt knyght, syttyng on a whyt hors, berynges fowles yn hys sheld, shal formest assayll 16 Vlnestre." Thys Ihoñ was a man ful whyt, & rood þan vpon a whyt hors, & baþ yn hys sheld, ernes I-peynted. he went hym throug Myth & throug Vryel thre dayes goynge; & the forth day erlych, come to doune without any lete of any fomañ. 20

and takes Down.

King Mac Donlevy flees.

Vnwytynges he come; In he wente. dyuelyn, the kynges, was shorthlych a-fryght of so derne comynge, left the toun & flow; the meygne, that was myssayse & hungry, fond ther mete & drynke Inowe, & pylfre of gold & syluer & clothes, & eke whaþ-wyth thay 24 waþ wel arrayed, & har hert wel comforted. Into the toun was

The Pope's Legate, Vivian, tries to get rid of De Courci,

than I-come a legat of Rome, that hete Vyuyeyñ, & was y-come out of scotland. Thys legat was youre aboute, pees to make betwene the kynges & Iohñ: myche he spake & mych he hym profred, & 28 more he behete, & trewage to bereñ euery yer to Englyssh-men, by so that he wold the lond leue, & turne ayeyne. Myche he spake theþ-of, & mych hym bysoght; bot nocht he wold hym hyþ, ffor hys thought was al I-turned, the lond for to wyn, or the lyf to forlese. 32

who means to win or die.

Donleue saw that he, wyth fayþ spech ne fayr beheste, nocht ne myght spede; he sent anoon attyr hys folke, & withyn the viij day he gadered to-gyddyþ an hoste of ten thousand men, stalwarth

to wyrchyppe, al Hit was in Spyinge, felony, and trechery; euer he shed Venym vndyr hony. Tho day he wolde do the wyrchipp; to-morrow he wolde the rew, *and* do shenshipp. the meke and the buxum he vndid; the sterne and hawteyn he Plesyd; Softe with wylde men, harde with Pees men; of fayre spech, Softe, fals trechoure; feynte *and* Envyous, dronklewe *and* lecherere.

## [CHAPTER XLVI.]

A. D. 1177.

Iohan de Cursy Saw that al thynge that willam did was couetyse and trecherye, and that he was nothyng trew to ham that vndyr hym were, ne dredfull to his enemys. He chose hym of the meny of Deuelyn a few, but thay were good *and* bolde, and hardy throug al thynge, So that he hadd xxij<sup>ti</sup> knyghtis, fyfty Squyeres, *and* footmen as myght be by thre hundrid; and wente hym to vlyster, whar noone Englysh-man wepenyd to for hym was seyn. Than was fulfillid a prophesy of merlynge, that thus sayd: "a whyte knyght, syttyng on a whyte hors, berryng fowlis on his shelde, shal formyste assayle vlystere." This Ihon was a man ful whyte, and rode vpon a whyte hors, and bare in his shelde, ernys y-peyntyd. he went throw myth *and* throw Vriel thre dayes goynge; and the fourth day Erlych, come to doune, wythout any lette of any enemy. Vn-wyttyng he come; In he wente. Dunleue, the kynge, was schortlych agaste of so suddeyn comynge, lefte the toun and flow; the mayny, that was myssaysid and hungry, founde ther mette and drynke y-now, and Pylfre of golde and Syluyr *and* clothis, *and* also wher-with thay wer wel arrayed, and her herte wel confortid. In-to the toun was than y-come a legate of Rome that was callid Vyuyen and was come out of scotlande. this legate was besy about, Pees to make be-twen the kynge *and* Ihoñ. mych he spake, *and* mych he hym proferid; *and* more he promysyd, *and* trewage to bere euery yere to Englyssh-men, So that he wolde the lond lewe, *and* turne agayn. gretly her-of he spoke *and* be-soglit; but noght he wolde hym hyre; For his thoght was al turned, the londe forto wyne, or his lyfe for-sake. Dounleue Saw that he, wyth fayre speche ne fayre promes, nothyng myght spede<sup>1</sup>. he send anoone aftyr his Pepill, *and* wyth-in viij<sup>e</sup> dayes he gaddrid to-giddy an hoste of x. M<sup>i</sup>

Descriptio  
Willelmi  
Aldelmi.

Capitulum  
xlvi<sup>m</sup>.

argent  
iij egles  
displayed  
gules  
crowned  
armed *and*  
beaked  
golde.

Romanæ  
sedis  
legatus.  
multa  
quidem  
verba sua-  
soria nec  
persua-  
soria pro-  
ponebat.

<sup>1</sup> se verbis  
minime  
profectu-  
rum.

**Mac Don-** to fyght, & besegete staluarthly the Cyte of doun *per* Iohn was In ;  
**levy be-** for yn thys lond, as yn al other, the northeren men ben stordyer &  
**sieges De** smertē to fyght than other. Iohn saw thay hostes comynge to  
**Courci in** lym-ward: thegh he fewe weṛ, natheles thay waṛ al hardy & stal- 4  
**Down.** warth he chase; & leuer hym was, out wend, & with streynt  
**De Courci** to assaye the aduenturs of battaylle, than yn the lytel feble fortelet  
**leaves his** that he yn & herne of the toun yn so lytel whyle hadde arerede,  
**corner of** amyd hys fomen, beseged & hungrod, deye. He went hym out to 8  
**the town,** hard fyght: & whan thay hadde fyrste, from fer, I-suywed har  
**sallies out,** arowes, thay smytten ther aftyre hertelych to-gydder, sper ayeyne  
**fighta** sper, swerd ayeyne sparth; & many one the lyf ther forlese. Bot  
**splendidly,** who hadde y-sey Iohnes dynttes with swerd, how he smote of pat man 12  
**[\*Fol. 22** pe heed from the scholderes, that man the arme & pe shuldre from  
**b.]** pe body, that man the heed I-clouen fer doun \* ynto the body, he  
**backt well** Thegh many waṛ yn thys fyght that stalwarthly dydden, natheles, 16  
**by Roger** Roger the power, that ther-aftyr was of grete myght yn Osserye &  
**le Poer,** yn the Contrey of legħlyn, was the other that best dydde. Aftyr  
**and at last** grete fyght & lange, pat ther was of wel vnlyche hostes, at pe laste  
**wins.** the Iresshe host was ouercome & I-scomfyte; many I-slawe by the 20  
**His men** see strond whyder-ward they flowen: than was fulfilled a pro-  
**walk up** phete that Colmkylle seyde of thys fyght: he seyde, 'that so many  
**to their** men shold be I-slaw yn that place, that haṛ fomen myght waden to  
**knees in** the knees yn her blode.' & so hyt was than; ffor as thay flowen to-for 24  
**Irish blood** ham yn the slyme, thay folweden aftyr & slouen ham; & as thay  
**on the** dyueden adoun, the blode of ham that wareṛ I-slawe, & fleted  
**slimy** abouen, toke to pe knee of ham that slouen ham. The same  
**strand** prophete seyde also, 'that a pouere mane, & as thocht he weṛ flow or 28  
**[ ' ? dyn . . ]** bashed out of other landes, with lytel folk shold come ynto doun<sup>1</sup>,  
 & the toun wynne, wythout soccoure of any herrer'; & other many  
 fyghtes & aduentures of thyng that yn that contray shold betyde,  
**De Courci** whych al openly weṛ fulfilled yn Iohn de Courcy. That same 32  
**has his** boke, Iohn hadde an Iresshe I-wrytte, & was hym ther-aftyr as  
**Victory** shewer of al hys dedys. In the same boke was eke I-found, that  
**written in** a man with folke I-wepned shold, with strenynth, the walles of  
**Irish.** Waterford to-breken; & with grette slaght of pe cytzeynes, the toun 36

men, bolde to fyght / and besegyt boldely the Cite of doun ther  
 Ihon was In / For in this lond, as in al othyr, the nordryn men  
 ben sturdier *and* smyrtyr to fyght than othyr. Ihon Saw the  
 hostys comynge to-wardes hym, *and* chose; and lewyr was, out wende,  
*and* wyth streynth to assay the aduentures of battayl, than in the  
 lytel feble fortelet, that he in *and* herne of the toun in so lytel  
 tyme hadd arrerid, amyd his enemys be be-segid, and to dey with  
 hungyr. he went out to hard fight. and when thay had fryste,  
 frome fer shote her arrowys, thay smytten aftyr hertely to-giddyr,  
 spere agaynys spere, Swerde agaynys Spare; *and* many there the  
 lyfe loste. But who had y-sey Ihonys strokys wyth Swerd, how  
 he smote Of that man the hede frome the sholdris, that man the  
 Arme and the shuldyr \* frome the body, Hee myght wel Sey, that  
 His myght and His mayn oght Wel to be Praysid. Thegh many  
 wer in this fyght that boldely did, Natheles Rohere le Power, that  
 ther-aftyr was of gret myght in Ossory and in the contrey of  
 leghlyn, was the othyr that best did. Aftyr grete *and* lange  
 fyghtynge of wel vnlych hostis<sup>1</sup>, at the last, the Irysh hoste was  
 ouercome *and* scomfited, *and* many slayne by the strondis syde  
 whedyr thay flowe / than was fulfillid a prophesy that colmekyl<sup>2</sup>  
 Sayde of this fyght. He sayde, 'that So many men sholde be slayn  
 in that Place, that har enemys myght wadyn to the knees in her  
 blode' / And so hit was than. For as thay fleddyn to-for ham in  
 the Slyme, thay folwedyn aftyr and kyllid ham; and as thay  
 dyuedyn done, the blode of ham that weryn slayne, *and* fletid  
 abow, toke to the knees of them that ham Slayne. The same  
 Prophet sayde also, 'that a pouere man, and as thegh he were flow  
 or bashed but of othyr landys, with lytel folke sholde come to  
 doune, and the tounne wyne wyth-out Soccoure of any herrer'; and  
 othyr many fightes and aduentures of thyng that in that contray  
 sholde befall, whych al opynly wer fulfillid in Ihon de Cursy.  
 That same boke, ther-aftyr had Ihon de Cursy on Irysh writte,  
*and* was to hym ther-aftyr as merrowre of al his dedys. In þe  
 sayde boke is also fovnde, that a man with pepil wepenyd, sholde  
 with streynth the wallis of watyrford breke; *and* with grete slaight

*quam exili  
 municipio,  
 quod in  
 urbis  
 angulo  
 tenuiter  
 exacerat.*

[\*Fol. 22  
 a.]

<sup>1</sup> *nimis  
 impari  
 certamine.*  
<sup>2</sup> *per mari-  
 nam glisim.  
 Hibernici  
 Kolumbae.  
 Prae glis  
 namque  
 mollitie,  
 dum ad  
 ima pene-  
 traret  
 humana  
 pondero-  
 sitas,  
 terrae  
 lubricae  
 sanguis  
 profluus  
 superfi-  
 ciem  
 tenens,  
 genua  
 cruraque  
 de focili  
 pertinge-  
 bat.*



A. D. 1177. wyñ; & fro thennes, by Weysford, wend to dyuelyn *without* any  
 St. Colum- lette; & þe cytè wyn: & al þis ys found fulfilled of the Erl: he  
 ba's pro- seyð eke 'that the Cytè of Iymeryke shold of Englysshe-men shold  
 phesies be twyes I-lefte, & at the thrydde tyme y-hold': & so hyt was, on 4  
 fulfilled by De Courci. tyme of Reymond, another of phylepe de Bruse, as hyt openlyer shal  
 be I-shewed yn hys own place. Ther-of þe prophecye was thys  
 y-seyd, 'þe cytè thrise I-soght, at þe thryd tyme shal be I-hold.'  
 De Courci Twey grete fyghtes, Iohñ ther ledde & wan at douw; that oon aftyr 8  
 had Fights candelmasse, as hyt ys I-told, þat other at mydsomyre, wher he, wyth  
 1. and 2. at Down; fewe men, ouercome the battaylle of fyftene thousand, & slow of ham  
 ful many. The prydde was at ferly at a pray-takynge: thar thay  
 3. at Fir- come through a narowe pas, and hadde so styf fyght, & so stronge, that 12  
 lee, where he was beaten; hys meñ was, some y-slawe, & the oper dele so dyscomfyte ynto  
 al þe woddes, that vnneth ther be-left hym wyth aleueth  
 thousande; & he, as man wonderly stalwarth, *with* so fewe wyth  
 hym, whan thay hadde har hors I-loste, thay went a-fote al 16  
 y-wepned: a xxx<sup>ti</sup> myl weye thay helden the fyght of har fomen; &  
 twey dayes & two nyght thay war fastynge, tyl thay come to hys  
 4. at Uriel; castel. The ferth fyght was yn vryel; ther many of hys weren  
 5. at Newry I-sley, & the oper descomfyte, & put ham to flyght: the fyfte at 20  
 Bridge. yueres brygge, as he come wyth fewe men out of England;  
 natheles, ther he ouercome, & slowe ful many, & come hol & sond to  
 hys owne. Thus yn thre grete fyghtes he wan the ouer-hand;  
 & yn twey, thegh he harme tholled, he dydde hys fomen mych 24  
 more. Iohn was a man whyte & fayre; of Iymmes bony & synowy;  
 mych of body; non hardyer than he, stalwarth, & fyghter stronge of  
 yought; yn euery fyght the fyrst, & the meste perrylle he wold  
 28  
 [\*Fol. 23 \* euer be In; he was so coueytouse of fyght, & so bernynge whan he  
 a.] hoste lad, & come to fyght, that he neuer wold hym hold as leder,  
 He loved bot *with* the fyrst wold yn smyte, som whyle behynd, the most  
 fighting, and often perrylle was, that oft al the oste was the vnredyer, and thocht that  
 attackt his foe in rear. they wer ouercome, and al hadden forlore: & thegh he wer yn 32  
 wepne vnmetly stordy, & sterne, out of wepne natheles, he was  
 meke and sobre, & mych wyrshypped god & holy chyrche, & yn al  
 thyng he leuet god and hys seruyce; & al that hym betyd, he  
 thanked god that hym the grace sent. He spoused Godefreys 36

of the Citesseynes, the town wyn : And al this fund fulfillid of the A. D. 1177.  
 Erle. He sayde also that the Cite of lymerike, of Englysh-men *ab Anglo-*  
 twyves sholde be lefte, and the thyrde tyme sholde be holde. And *rum gene-*  
 So hit was, on tyme of Reymonde, a-nothyr of Phylip de bruse, *bis dese-*  
 as hit opnylyer shal be shewid in his owyn Place. Therof the *rendam, et*  
 prophesy was thus sayde : " The Cite thryse soght, at the thyrde *tertio reti-*  
 tyme shal be holde," Two grete fyghtis, Ihon ther abode, *nendam.*  
*and* ham  
 ouercomyd' at doun / that oone aftyr candylmasse, as hit is tolde /  
 that othyr, aftyr mydsomer, wher he, *with* few men, did ouercome (June 24.)  
 the battail o xv. M<sup>t</sup>, *and* Slayne of ham ful many. The thyrd was  
 at ferly, at a pray takyn : thar thay come throw a narrow Paas, and *in praedae*  
 had so styfe fyght, that his men was, some slayne, *captione.*  
*and* othyr Part so  
 descomfite in-to al the woddys, that vnneth *with* hym was lefte M<sup>t</sup> ;  
 and he, as man woundyrly bolde, *with* so few *with* hym, Whan *Ipsc vero,*  
 thay hadd har hors loste, thay went afoote al wepenyd : xxx<sup>ii</sup> myle *vir virtutis*  
 wey thay heldyn the fyght of har ennemys ; *and* two dayes and *invictae,*  
 two nyghtes thay wer fastynge, til thay come to his castel. the *cum tan-*  
 iiij<sup>e</sup> fyght was in Vriel, ther many of his were slayn, and the othyr *tilla*  
 dyscomfite, and Put ham to flyght ; the v. fyght at yuores bryge, as *suorum*  
 he come *with* few men out of England. natheles, ther he ouercome, *paucitate.*  
 and slayne ful many, and come hole and Sounde to his owyn.  
 Thus in thre grete fyghtis he had the ouer-hande ; *and* in two, *Descriptio*  
 thegh he loste the ouer-hand, he did his ennemys mych more // *Iohann[is]*  
 Ihon was a man whyte *and* fayre ; of lymmes, bony and \* Synowy ; *de Curcy.*  
 myche of Body ; noone Hardier than Hee ; Bolde, and fyghter *[\*Fol. 22*  
 stronge of youth : in euery fyght the fryst, and the meste peril *b.]*  
 he wolde euer be In / he was So covetouse of fyght, and So *vir fortis*  
 bernynge whan he hoste ladd, *and* come to fyght, that he hym *et bellator*  
 neuer wolde holde as ledere, but *with* the fryste wolde smyte, *ab adoles-*  
 Sumtyme be-hynnede, ther more Peril was, that ofte al the hoste *centia.*  
 was the vnredyer, and thought that thay wer ouercome, and al *ducem*  
 haddyn for-lore. And thegh he were in wepyn vnmetly sturdy *exuens, et*  
 and Sterne, Out of wepyn natheles he was meke and sobyr, *militem*  
 mych vyrchippid god and holy church, and in al thying he lowid *induens.*  
 god *and* his service ; and all that hym befel, he thankyd good that *in armis*  
 hym the grace sende. He Spousyd Godfredes doghtyr, the kynge *immode-*  
*ratus.*

A. D. 1177. doghter, the kynges of Mane; & aftyr many selcouth battaylles that  
 At last, he dydde, nat wythout grete labour & perrylle of lyf & myche  
 De Courci myssayse, at the last he was all aboute, & clenlych hadde ouercomen.  
 overcame all foes. He casteled the lond yn couenable places, & such pes made, that non 4  
 Not one of better ne myght be, ne stedfaster. Bot gret wonder ys, & nat bot  
 the 4 great as god hyt wold, that thay four grete postes of the conquest of  
 Pillars of Irland, namely, Robert steuenes-sonne, heruy of Mountynorthy,  
 the Con- Reymon le Gros, and Ihon de Courcy, myhten neuer haue 8  
 quest of had a child. chydren of her spoused wyues. Thus mych we haue shortly I-told  
 Irland of Ihon de Courcy; & the other parte of hys stalwarth gestes,  
 had a child. we leueth to wryte to other that ham wrytte wyllen, & turneth  
 ayeyne ther we afore lefte.

12

## [CHAPTER XLVII.]

The Legate Vivian holds a Synod at Dublin, March 13, in Henry II's favour, and gives the English leave to take food from churches.

Wiuyn, that in-to Irlande was legat I-comen, come to dyuelyn; theder he made come to-for hym al the bysshoppes & the clergye of Irland & held hys sennne. ther he shewed openly the kynges ryght of Engeland to Irland, 16 & the popes graunt, & hys confyrmacion; &, vp mansynge, forbed lered & lewed, that non neuere so hardy to comen ayeyns the kynges trouth. &, fore the Iresshe-men wer I-woned to doñ al har vytayllys yn chyrches, he yawe the Englysshe-men leue, that 20 whañ me ladde hostes, & myghten nowher elles wytayll fynd, that yn chyrch war I-found, me shold hardyly out take, & yeue the kepers of the chyrch the worth, as ryght wer.

## [CHAPTER XLVIII.]

Miles de Cogan with 500 men, invades Con-naught.

Aftyр that, Miles de Cogan, that vnder Aldelinesse- 24 sone was keper & conestable of dyuelyn, wyth fowrty knyghtes, of whych Rolf, Robertes sone, fytz-esteuene, was one, I-sette mayster ouer ham vnder Myles, & two hundret other an hors, & thre hundret bowmen, passeden the water of shynnen, 28 & wentten ynto Connaght, whar Englesshe-men was neuere er comen. The men of Connaght wer I-ware of har comes; thay drowen ham ynto erth-hous many; & al the vytaylle that thay ne myght nat take wyth ham, thay put yn chyrches; & touannes & 32 chyrches thay setten al afyr & branten. & yn despyte of the Englesshe-men, & yn hope pat god shold take wrech of ham, thay toke

The Irish take to earth-houses, and burn their buildings.

of man; *and* aftyr many Selchouth battalys that he did, not A. D. 1177.  
 wyth-out grete labour *and* Peril of lyfe *and* mych myssayse, *And tandem in*  
 at the last he was al abow, *and* clenly hadd ouercome. He arce vic-  
 castelid the londe in behowabyll Placys; *and* Suche Pes made, plene  
 that noone bettyr ne myght be, ne stydfastyr. But hit is grete constitutus.  
 wondyr, *and* not but as god hit wolde, that thay iiij<sup>e</sup> grete Postes hi grandes  
 of the conqeste of Irland, Namely, Robert Steuenes-sonne, heruey expugna-  
 of Mountmorthy, Reymond le gras / *and* Ihon de Cursy, myghten tionis  
 neuer haue childe of her Spousyd wyues / Thus mych we haue Hibernicæ  
 Shortely tolde of Ihon de Curcy; *And* the othyr Parte of his postes.  
 bolde gestis, we lewyth to write to otheres that ham write wille,  
*And* turnyth agayne ther we afore lefte.

## [CHAPTER XLVII.]

**V**Iuyen, that into Irland was legate, come to deuelyn: Capitulum  
 thedyr he made come to-for hym al the bischopis *and* xlviij<sup>m</sup>.  
 the clergy of Irland, *and* helde his Senne. ther he Shewid opynly the convocata  
 kyngis ryght of England to Irland, *and* the Popis graunte *and* Dubliniæ  
 his confirmacion; *and*, vpon Payn of Cursyngē chargid both lerrid episco-  
*and* lewyd, that noone neuer so hardy to come agaynys the kyngis porum  
 trouthe. *And*, for the Irysh-men wer wonyd to do al har vitalys synodo.  
 in churchis, he yaue the Englysh-men leue, that whan thay ladd ad ecclesi-  
 hostis, *and* myght no vytalis ellys fynde, that that in church were arum  
 founde, thay sholde hardely out-take, *and* yeue the keperes of the refugia  
 church the werthe, as ryght were. victualia  
transfer-

## [CHAPTER XLVIII.]

**A**ftyr that, Miles de Cogan, that vndyr aldelinee-sonne was Capitulum  
 keper *and* constabil of Deuelyn, *with* xl. knyghtes, of wych xlviij<sup>m</sup>.  
 Rolfe, Robert-es sone, fitz-Steuens, was one, y-sette Maystyr ouer ham urbibus  
 vndyr Milis, *and* two C an hors, CCC bowmen, Passyd the watyr of undique et  
 Shynnyñ, *and* went Into Connaght / wher englysh-men was neuer villis igne  
 therto-forne. The men of connaght wer y-ware of har comyngē / proprio  
<sup>1</sup> they drew ham into Erthe-hous many; *and* al þe vytalis that thay combustis;  
 ne myght take *with* ham, thay Put in churches; *and* touñes *and* alimentis  
 churches thay sette afyre *and* brantyn<sup>1</sup>. *and* in dyspyte of the quoque  
 englysh-men, *and* in trust that god wold do vengeance on ham, thay cunctis,  
quæ  
hypogei  
subter-  
raneis  
*and* abcondere  
non pote-  
rant, simul  
cum eccle-  
siis igne  
consumptis.

A. D. 1177. þe rodes crucyfyed, & ymages of haloweñ, & kesten to-for ham ynto  
 The English advance to Tuam, but find no food, and retreat safely to Dublin, beating King Roderic of Connaught on the way.  
 al the felde. The Englesshe meygne wentten tyl they come to  
 tuen, & theŕ they abodde viij dayes yn bare lond & blote. And  
 whan they myght no mane fynd, ne nothyng wher-by they myght 4  
 lyue, they turned ayeyne to the shynnen. ther they found ayeyns  
 ham, Oconghour yn a wodde, wyth thre grete hostes. the Engelesshe  
 boldly smytteñ vpon ham, & slowe of ham ful many, passeden onð,  
 & come to dyuelyñ al sound, out-tak þre meñ, that yn that fyght 8  
 wereñ I-lefte.

## [CHAPTER XLIX.]

Fitz-Audeline goes back to England. He got Jesus's Crosier to Dublin.  
 [\*Fol. 23 b.]  
 Hugh de Laci and Robert le Poer come to Ireland.  
 Miles de Cogan and Robert Fitz-Stephen get Cork. Philip de Bruse has Limerick.  
 They force peace on Dermot Mac-Carthy, and divide the townlands near Cork.

Sone theŕ aftyr, Aldelinessone was I-sent aftir  
 ynto Engelonde, that no good yn Irland dydde  
 bot oon, that, by procurynge of hym, an holy baghell & of 12  
 grete vertue, that me cleped Ihesus baghel, was I-brought  
 from Ardmagh to dyuelyñ, & yet ys at the chyrch of the Try-  
 nyte: & come \* ynto Irland Hugh de Lacy, heye Seneshal of al  
 the lond, & Robert de Power wyth hym, Conestable of Water- 16  
 ford. Myles de Cogañ & Robert steuernesson wentten also ouer  
 the see ynto Engeland; bot they comen sone ayeyne, & phylepe  
 de Bruse wyth ham; & hadde the kyng I-yeuen ham thre, al  
 the lond of Desmond. Robert & Myles hadden the south Con- 20  
 trey, that ys to wyttē, from lysmore al aboute Corke vii  
 Cantredes, saue the kyng the Cytē of Corke, wyth þe next  
 cantrede. Phylpe de Bruse, the kyng yaf al the Contrey of  
 lymeryke, saue the Cytē & hys next cantred: these thre I-feffed 24  
 to-geddeŕ, come ouer ynto Irland yn o felewshyppe, & arryueden  
 at Waterford, & fro thennes they wentteñ to Corke al harmles.  
 They waŕ thaŕ fayŕ receyued of þe Cytteyns, & of a knyght that  
 was kepeŕ of the Cytē, that hete Rychard of Londone. Whañ 28  
 they hadde I-brought to pees Demot Mac charthy, prynce of  
 desmone, & otheŕ many of the contrey of moche power, Robert and  
 myles deled betwen ham the vij cantredes next the Cytē; & felle  
 by lot<sup>1</sup> to Robert, thre on the eeste syde; Myles, four yn the weste; 32  
 mo to the on than to the otheŕ, for the lond was wors; the keyng  
 of the Cytē comune to ham bothe; the renth & the trywage

<sup>1</sup> MS. bot.

toke the roodys crucyfyed, *and* ymagis of Sayntis, *and* kesten to-for ham into al the feldys. The Englis-men wentyn tyl they come to tuem, And ther abode viij dayes in bare \* Londe ande Blote<sup>1</sup>. And When they myght no man fynde, ne nothyng Wherby they myght lyue, they turned agayn to the Shynnyn. ther they found agaynys ham / Oconghoure in a wodde, with thre grete hostis. The englysh boldely smytten vpon ham, *and* Slow of ham ful many, Passyd ouer, and come to Deuelyn al sounde, out-take thre men that in that fyght weryn lefte. /

A. D. 1177.

<sup>1</sup> *in hostili terra.*

[\*Fol. 23 a.]

*terram alimentis vacuum inueniens. tribus tantum arcaris amissis.*

## [CHAPTER XLIX.]

**S**One therafter, adelines Sone was sende aftyr in-to England, that no good in Irland didde but oone, that, by *procuryng* of hym, an holy baghel and of grete Vertu, that is callid *Iesus*<sup>2</sup> baghel, was broght frome Ardmagh to Deuelyn, and yet is at the Trynyte church // And come Into Irland Hugh de lacy, hey Seneschal of al the londe<sup>3</sup>, And Robert de Power with hym Constable of watyrford; Miles de Cogan *and* Robert S[t]euenes-Sone wentyn ouer the See also in-to England; but they comyn Sone agayn, and Philip de bruse with hame, and the kyng yeaued ham thre al the londe of Desmonde. Robert and Miles haddyn the South contrey, that is to Say, from lysmore al aboute Corke, vije candredes, Saue the kyng the Cite of Corke, with the nexte candrede; Philip de Bruse the kyng yeaued al þe contrey of lymerik, Saue the Cite and his nexte Candrede: thes thre, feffyde to-giddy, come ouer Into Irland in oo fellochipp, and londyn at Watyrford; and fro thens they wenten to Corke al harmeles. They wer thar fayre rescwyd of the Citteseynys, and of a knyght that was keper of the citte, that was callid Richarde of london. Whan they hadd broght to pees Dermot Maccarthy, Prince of Desmon, and othyr many of the contrey of mych Powere, Robert and Miles delid betwen ham the vij Candredes nexte the Cite; and fell by lotte to Robert, thre on the Este syde; Miles foure in the weste: mo to the on than to the othyr, for the londe was wors; the keyng of the Cite comyñ to ham both. the rent and the triwage of the othyr

Capitulum xlix<sup>m</sup>.*baculum virtuosissimum, quem baculum Jesu vocant.*<sup>2</sup> *generalem Hiberniae procuratorem.**Trans-euntes igitur in Hiberniam mense Novembri, cum triplici familia, tres viri con-feodati simul et confoe-derati.*<sup>2</sup> Ihc, MS.

A Cantred of the othe<sup>r</sup> fou<sup>r</sup> & xx cantredes, as hyt wold falle, euy<sup>n</sup> to dele  
 is 100 between ham: & ys a cantrede to sygge, an hundret to<sup>n</sup> lond.  
 townlands. Wha<sup>n</sup> thys was I-do<sup>n</sup>, thay wentten wyth Phelype to lymeryke.  
 Robert Fitz- Stephen, Robert hadde wyth hym xxx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes & lx<sup>ti</sup> sweynes; Myles, xx<sup>ti</sup> 4  
 Miles de Cogan, and knyghtes & fyfty squyers; Phelype, xx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes & xl<sup>ti</sup> squyers;  
 Philip de Bruce go to & fotmen wyth euery of ham ful many: they came to the Cytè,  
 Limerick. & noght was betwe<sup>n</sup> ham bot the watyre of the shynne<sup>n</sup>;  
 Philip ought to & Robert & Myles baden Phylepe to wend ouer & assaylle the 8  
 attack Limerick, but funks it, and retreats: of ham that wyth hym, we<sup>r</sup> he chase; & mych leuer hym was, leue 12  
 he has such a set of scamps in his force. the Contrey, & harmles turne ayeyne to hys ow<sup>n</sup>, Than amonge  
 so many fomen<sup>d</sup> & so fer londes, yn so grete perrylle to abydde;  
 & that no wonder<sup>e</sup> nas, thegh<sup>h</sup> hym yn thyke vyage mys byfelle,  
 that so many lydde<sup>r</sup> men, theues, & manslaghtres of the marche 16  
 of Wales—& thay to-fore al other—hadde I-chose & I-draw to  
 hys felewshyppe. Noght lange ther-aftyr, Meredus, Robertes sone,  
 yonge knyght & stalwarth, nat wyth-out myche wepynge & sorow  
 of many, deyed yn the Cytè of Corke. That whylle, was I-hold 20  
 at Rome the consaylle of latran, that me<sup>n</sup> so moche speketh of,  
 vonder the pope Alyxsandy<sup>r</sup> the thyrdde. & was wyth-yn thre  
 ye<sup>r</sup>, thre eclipyses of the sone. ¶ Wha<sup>n</sup> Robert steuernesson<sup>d</sup> &  
 Myles of Cogane, wel fyfe yeyr, al desmone yn good pees hadde<sup>n</sup> 24  
 to-gyddy<sup>r</sup> I-holde, Myles & hys Othome Rauf, Robertes son<sup>d</sup>,  
 that a lytyll ther-to-fore hadde hys doghter<sup>r</sup> I-spoused, wentten  
 to the contrey of lysmor, to hold parlement wyth ham of  
 Waterford. & as thay sate<sup>n</sup> yn the feldes abydyngge aftyr ham, 28  
 Mactyr, that theder was wyth ham I-come, & wyth whom thay  
 sholden<sup>d</sup> that nyght<sup>1</sup> be I-herbrowed, vwytyngly smot vpon  
 ham behynd, & ham both, wyth fyue othe<sup>r</sup> knyghtes, the<sup>r</sup> slown  
 wyth sparthes; & othe<sup>r</sup> fewe that wer wyth ham vnneth escaped. 32  
 Throgh that thynge, al the contrey forth the<sup>r</sup>-aftyr<sup>r</sup> worth so  
 I-storbet, that Demot Maccarthy & al the hegh men of \* the  
 then rebel. contray, forth wyth Mactyre, ayeyne har trouth, wyth-drowen<sup>d</sup> ham

<sup>1</sup> MS. myght.

foure and xx<sup>ti</sup> candredes, as hit wolde falle, euen to dele be-twen  
 ham // And a Candrede is as myche to Say as, an hundrid toun- Quid est  
candreda.  
 londe // Whan this was don, thay wentyn with Philip to Lymerike. tanta  
terrae  
portio,  
 Robert had wyth hym xxx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes and xl. Squyeres ; Miles, xx<sup>ti</sup> quanta  
centum  
villas  
continere  
solet.  
 knyghtes, l. Squyeres ; and Philip, xx. knyghtys and xl. Squyeres ; and  
 footmen with euery of ham ful many. Thay came to the Cite, and  
 noght was betwen ham but the watyr of the Shynnyn. And Robert  
 and Miles badyn Philip wende ouer, and assayle the toun ; Othyr,  
 yf hym leuer were, to rere hym a castel vpon the same watyr afor 1-1 pusilla-  
nimi tamen  
suorum  
consilio.  
potius  
indemnis  
ad sua  
reverti,  
quam in  
terra tum  
hostili  
tamque  
remota  
fortunas  
tentare  
pericula  
praelegit.  
 the toun. Philip, thegh he was knyght bolde and hardy in hym-Selfe, 2 viros  
homicidas,  
seditiosos  
ac flagi-  
tiosos.  
3 sedit  
Romae.  
4 non  
 natheles, <sup>1</sup>through febil consail of them that wyth hym, were he chose ; generales  
tamen, sed  
partiales.  
 and myche leuer hym was, leue the contrey, and harmeles turne  
 agayn to his owyn, Then amonge so many enemys, and in so fere  
 londys, in So grete Peril to abyde <sup>1</sup>. and that no wondyr nas, thegh  
 hym in thylke vyage mys-be-felle, that <sup>2</sup> So many wyckyd men, con-  
 dicones and manequelleres of the marche of Walis (and thay to-for  
 al othir) hadd y-chose and y-draw to his fellochipp. Not longe  
 thereafter, Meredus, Rober[t]es-sone, yonge \* Knyght and Bolde, not  
 with-out mych wepyng and Sorrow of many, Dyed in the Cite of [\* Fol. 23  
b.]  
 Corke. That tyme, was holde at Rome <sup>3</sup> the consail of latran, that 2 viros  
homicidas,  
seditiosos  
ac flagi-  
tiosos.  
3 sedit  
Romae.  
4 non  
 men of mych Spekyth, vndyr the Pope Alysandyr the thyarde. and  
 was within iij<sup>e</sup> yere, iij<sup>e</sup> Eclipsis of the Sonne <sup>4</sup>. Whan Robert  
 Steuenes-Sone and Miles de Cogan, wel v<sup>e</sup> yere al Desmond in good  
 pees hadden to-gaddyr holde, Miles, and his Sone-in-law, Raufe,  
 Robert-es Sone, that a lytel thertofore to his doghtyr had spousid,  
 wenten to the contrey of lysmore, to holde Parlement with ham of  
 watyrforde. andas thay Satyn in the feldys abydyng aftyr ham, Mac-  
 tyre, that thedyr with hame was come, and with whome thay sholde  
 be that nyght logide, Vnwyttyngly Smote vpon ham ; and ham both,  
 wyth v. othyr knyghtes, thay Slayn wyth Sparres ; and othyr few that  
 were with ham, vuneth escapid. Throght that thyng, al the contrey  
 was in were, So that Dermot Maccarthy and al the hey men of the  
 Contrey forth with Mactyre, agayne har trouth, withdrawen al frome

A. D. 1182.

improvisis  
a tergo  
securium  
ictibus sunt  
interempti.



A. D. 1182. al from the Englysshemeñ, & turned vpon Robert steuenes-son, that oft hadde harde happes assayed; & neuer eft, tyl Reymond Robert Fitz-Stephen is attackt by Irish rebels. (The North Irish are true, and fight; the South are false, and trick.) As the northren me[n] loueth fyght, also the southren, falsness; they trusteth to streynth, these to sleghtes; thay to staluarthnesse, these to traysouna. Whan Reymond herd that Robert was so narow byladde yn the toun of Corke, wyth hys fomen al about beseged, he put hym to shyppe yn the hauen of Watyrford, wyth xx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes & squyers, & bowmen, wel ccc; leftene the lond al on the ryght hond, & wentten about by the see, fort he Reimund Fitz-Gerald sails to Cork to help him. come to Cork, to gaddre hele to hys frendes, & vnhele to hys fomen. Aftyr many & selcouth camplynges, many of ha<sup>r</sup> fomen thay slow, & many out of contray thay dryueñ, & the moste parte & the beste come to pees; & so the grete tempeste of that weddy<sup>r</sup> hape, yn lytel whyle was I-queynt & I-styled. 16

They put down the rebellion.

A. D. 1182-3.

[CHAPTER L.]

There come to Ireland, Richard de Cogan in 1182; and in 1183, Philip de Barry, and Giraldus Cambrensis, who wrote 3 books on Ireland.

Hervey of Mountmaurice turns monk.

Nat longe ther aftyr, come into Irland Richard de Cogan, Miles brother, wyth fair meygne from the kynge I-sent; & ther aftyr, yn the begynnyge of Marce, come Phylype de barry, a mañ slegñ & staluarth, wyth moch folk & fayr, both for to help Robert & Reymond, & fo<sup>r</sup> to castely hys lond of Olethane, whych Robert hym hadde I-yeue; and yn the same flot come Maysty<sup>r</sup> Geraud, that phelypees brother & Robertes neuue, ful good clerk, & a mañ that al the conqueste, & þe state, & þe wondres of Irland, & the kyndes of pepel from the begynnyge, ful Inly soght & oft greped, & thre bokes ther-of maked wyth grete trauayl, fywe yer that he was ther. about that tyme, heruy of Mounthorthy yeldet hym monke at crystes chyrch yn cantyrbery, to whych he hadde thar-to-forne I-yeue hys chyrches of hys lond be Waterford & Weysford. Wold god that he hadde I-chaunget hys culuertnesse and he dydde hys knyghthode, and trecherye as he dydde hys clothyng<sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Qui utinam sicut habitum, sic et animum, sicut militiam sic et malitiam deposuisset.—Gir. Camb. *Op.* v. 352.

the Englysh-men, and turned vpon Robert Steuenes-Sone, that ofte had harde Aduenturis assayed; and neuer este, til Reymond to hym come *and* helpyd hym forto wyn the londe *and* broght to heritage; For Robert ne myght not pees haue, as he radyr hadd. As the northeryn men lowyth fyght, also the Southeryn, falsnys: <sup>1</sup> thay trustyth to Streynt, thes to sleghtes; thay to boldnys, thes to traysone <sup>1</sup> // When Reymonde herd that Robert was So narrow byladde in the toun of corke, wyth his Ennemys al about besegid, he Put hym to shipp in the hawyn of watyrword<sup>1</sup> with xx. knyghtes and Squyeris *and* bow-men wel CCC, leften the londe al on the ryght hande *and* wentyn aboute by the See, fort he come to corke, to grette gladnys to his frendis, *and* Sorrow to his ennemys. Aftyr many *and* selcouth Camplyngys, many of har ennemys thay haue Slayne, *and* many out of contray thay dryuen; and the meste Parte *and* the beste come to Pees; and So the grete tempeste of that weddyr hapid, in lytil whyle was broght to an <sup>2</sup> ende. /

[CHAPTER L.]

A. D. 1182.

**N**ot longe ther-aftyr, come Into Irland Richard de Cogan, Miles-is brothyr, with fayre maynny frome the kynge y-Sende, and ther-aftyr, in the begynnyng of Marce, come Philip de barry, a man sley and bolde, wyth mych pepill *and* fayre, forto helpe both Robert *and* Reymond, and forto castel his londe of olethane, whych Robert hym hade yeue. And in the same flytte come Maystyr Geraude, that Philippes brodyr and Robert-is Eme, ful good clerke, *and* a man that al the conquest *and* the state and the wondris of Irland, and the kynde of Pepill from the begynnyng, ful Inwardly soght, and thre bokys therof makyd wyth grette trauayll, v. yere that he was ther-aboute // About that tyme, Heruey of Montmorthy yeldyd hym monke at crystes church in cantyr-berry, to whych he had therto-forne yeue his churchis of his lond betwen Watyrforde \* And Weysforde. Wolde god that he hadd y-chaunged His culuertnesse as he didd his knyghthode, and his trayson as he didd his clothyng //

Capitulum  
l.

A. D. 1183.

*et alius  
Stepha-  
nidae  
nepos  
Philip-  
pique  
frater,  
tam avun-  
culum  
quam  
fratrem  
plurimum  
consilio  
juvans.*

[\*Fol. 24  
a.]

<sup>1-1</sup> Illa laudis, haec fraudis cupida; illa Martis, haec artis ope confisa; illa viribus nititur, haec versutiis; illa praeliis, haec prouisionibus.—Op. v. 350.

<sup>2</sup> and, MS.

A. D. 1177.  
Hugh de  
Laci castles  
Leinster  
and Meath,

and makes  
such peace  
that men  
till their  
land.

He so  
attracts  
the Irish,  
that he is  
suspected  
of aiming  
to be their  
King.

A. D. 1181.

John,  
Constable  
of Chester,  
and  
Richard de  
Pec arrive.  
[\* Fol. 42  
b.]

Many  
castles  
are built.

Meiler  
Fitz-Henry  
gets Kil-  
dare, but  
changes it  
for Leix.

The while that this was thus in Desmone I-done,  
Hugh de Lassy, as man that queynth was &  
staluarth, both leynester & meth<sup>1</sup> nobely casteled, & yn many  
places ther other faylled to-for hym; & fayn was about, to setten 4  
yn ha<sup>r</sup> londes, Thay that wyth streynth & vnryghtly wered<sup>n</sup> out  
I-dryue, both englysshe & Iresshe; so that, yn lytyll stond, was  
so good pees that men arreden & tylleden ha<sup>r</sup> londes, and the  
lond ynto al wel I-stored wyth corne. he drogh to hym 8  
slegthlych, wyth wyrshype doynge, & stydfaste forward makynge,  
the heghest of the lond folk; from place to place byled the  
lond wyth castel; & yn lytyll whyll, so good pees made, toke  
of othe<sup>r</sup>, & auanced hys owne ryuely, & rych ham maked. 12  
The folk of Irland, wyth frenesse & sleghtes, drogh so, & allyed  
to hym, that men hadden grete ortrow vpon hym, that he, ayeyne  
the kynge & hys owne trouth, wold make hym self kynge I-crowned  
of the lond. As thys was, & mych spech yn [ ]<sup>2</sup> of thys 16  
thyng, comon ynto Irland twey knyghtes from the kynge I-sent,—  
that oon heet Iñon, the conestabel of chestre, & that othe<sup>r</sup>,  
Rychard of the pek,—for to receyue the kepyng of Irland, & that  
hugh shold wend ouer ynto Englund to the kynge; both ha<sup>r</sup><sup>3</sup> he 20  
ouer went, by comyn red of ham al, thay arrereden yn that  
somy<sup>r</sup> many castells yn leynester; ffor a<sup>r</sup> that, Myth \* was wel  
castelled, & leynestre bot lytyl. Tha<sup>r</sup> pay rereden a castel to  
Reymond, yn forthred Onolan; Anothe<sup>r</sup> to Gryffyne hys brothe<sup>r</sup>; 24  
the thyrde, yn Omurthy, to Water de rydlesford a kylka; the ferth,  
to Ioñn the herford, at Tyllagh yn felmeth, & other many.  
Meyller hadde that tyme kylda<sup>r</sup> of the erles yifte, & the contrey  
about; bot that me toke of hym for oo coste, & yaf hym þe 28  
contray of leys as yn change. for hyt was smert lond, woddy,  
& of Marche, & ferr, me sette hym tha<sup>r</sup> as man of marche,  
that I-nowe couth theron.

<sup>1</sup> MS. moch.

<sup>2</sup> Space left for a word. A later hand has written something which is illegible. The Latin has only 'fama': see opp. and Gir. Camb. *Op.* v. 355.

<sup>3</sup> but ere: Sed antequam.

## [CHAPTER LI.]

**T**he Whyle that this was thus done in desmond, Capitulum ljm.  
 Hugh de Lacy, as man that sly was and bolde, Hugo vero de Laci, summa sollicitudine, victis, ab aliis, et violenter a finibus ejectos, ad pacem revocans, eisdem olim deserta tam armentis pascuam, quam ruricolis rura restituit.  
 both leynyster and myth nobely he castelid, and in many Places  
 ther othyr falid to-for hym; and fayne was aboute to Settyn in har  
 londes, Thay that wyth Streynth and vnryght / were out-drywe,  
 both Englysh and Irysh, So that, in lytel whyle, was So good Pees  
 that men Erredyn and tilledyn har landys, and the lond Into al  
 wel Storid with corne. he drew to hym Slyly, with wyrchipp  
 doynge and Stidfast forward makynge, the heghest of the lond-  
 Pepyll; and frome Place to Place byled the lound with castelis;  
 and in lytyll Whyle, so good Pees made, toke of othyr, and  
 auauanced his owyn ryuely, and ryche ham made. The Pepill of  
 Irland, wyth frenes and sleghtes, drow So, and allied to hym, that  
 men haddyn grete exstymacion vpon hym, that he, agayn the kyng  
 and his owyn trouth, wolde make hym-Selfe kyng y-crowned of the  
 londe. As this was, and mych Spech in taale of thys thyng, comen  
 Into Irland, two knyghtes from the kyng y-sende: that oone was  
 callid Ihon, the Constabil Of cestre, and that othyr, Richarde of the  
 Peke, forto resew the keypyng of Irland; and that hugh Sholde  
 wend ouer Into Englande, to the kyng. but ar he ouer wente, by  
 comyn assente of ham all, thay arreredyn in that Somer many  
 castelys in leynyster; For ar that, Mythe was well castelid, and  
 leynyster but lytell. Thar thay reredyn a castell to Reymond in  
 fothred o nolan<sup>1</sup>; Another to gryffyn his brodyr; the thyrd in<sup>2</sup>  
 Omurthy, to water de redelesford at kylka; the iiije. to Ihon the  
 herford, at Tillagh in felmeth, and othyr many. Meylere hadd that  
 tyme kyldare of the Erlis yfte, and the contrey about; but that thay  
 toke of hym for oo Purpos, and yaue hym the contray of leys in  
 change. for hit was wille londe and woddy, and of Marche, and  
 ferre, thay sette hym there as man of Marche, pat y-now kouth  
 theron.

<sup>1</sup> The O'Nolan's barony of Fothurto, now Forth, in Carlow.]  
*ex parte regis, tanquam in excambium contulerunt.*

<sup>2</sup> MS to. Lat.: tertium in Omurethi, Gualtero de Ridenesfordia, apud Tristerdermoth; quartum Johanni de Clahulla super aquam Beruae, non procul a Lechlinia: quintum Johanni Herefordensi apud Collacht.—Op. v. 355.

## [CHAPTER LII.]

A. D.  
1181-2.

Hugh de Lacyissent back to rule Ireland; and John of Salisbury with him. He builds Castles.

When this was I-doñ, in the somyr Hugh wente owr̄ in-to Engelande. Ayeyne the wyntter the kynge toke of hym sykernesse, & sent hym sone ayeine kepēr of Irland, as he rather was sette; wyth̄ hym a clerk, Robert of 4 slepsbery<sup>1</sup>, that shold hym be an help & consaylle, & wytnes of hys deddes. At thys comynge, hugh arered manye castells: On to Meyller̄ at tachmeho, & thañ he yaue hym hys nece to wyue; another̄ thañ negh, yn Oboy, to Robert de Byga; & 8 othēr many, both yn leynestre & yn Myth, that longe hyt wār to namy al by name.

## [CHAPTER LIII.]

Nota de lupo confitente.

A priest is askt to shrive a sick woman.

He finds a sick wolf,

who talks to him:

he shrives her.

Forthesains of the Irish, God turnd her into a wolf.

About that tyme, befel a wonder aduentur̄ yn a wodde of Myth, of a preste that yede by weyes; 12 & as he come throḡh that wodde, come a man̄ ayeyns hym, & badde hym, for goddys loue, that he shold wend wyth̄ hym for to shryue hys wyf, that lay seke per negh. The preste turned wyth hym; & whañ he come somdel negh, he herd gronyng 16 and wonyng, as thegh̄ hyt wēr of a womañ; & whañ he come ryght to, thañ was hyt a wolf that lay ther & groned. Þe preste that saw, & was wel sore aferd, & turned hym awayward: the mañ and the wolf both spake to hym, & bad hym that he ne 20 shold nat be adredde, & that he shold turne to shryue hȳr. The preste than toke herth to hym, & blessyt hym, & yede sytte besyde hȳr: & the wolf spake to hym, & shroue to þe preste. & whañ thay hadde þat I-doñ, þe preste bethoght hym, and thoght that 24 thyng that was forshape, & hade gras to spek, that hyt myght also wel haue grace & ynsyght of other thyng. he sette to, & asked of the out-comen̄ men that ynto the lond wēr comen, howe hyt shold be of ham. The wolf answard & seyde, that 'for the syñ 28 of þe lond-folke, almyghty gode tok wreche of ham, & sent that folk for to bryng ham yn thraldome; & so thay shold be tyl the same folk wār efte encombret whyth<sup>2</sup> syñ; & than thay shold haue power for to done ham the same wrech, for̄ hār 32 synnes.'

<sup>1</sup> I. e. salopsbery, Salisbury.<sup>2</sup> MS. whych.

## [CHAPTER LII.]

**W**Han this was done, In the Somer Hugh went Capitulum liij<sup>m</sup>.  
 ouer Into England. agayn the Wyntyre, the A. D. 1181-2.  
 kyng toke of hym Surte, and sende hym Sone agayn kepere of  
 Irland, as he to-for was. Sende with hym a clerke, Robert of Roberto... Salopes-  
 Slepsbery, that to hym sholde be helpe and consayl, and wytnes of burienſi  
 his dedis. At this comynge, Hugh lette make many castelis. On  
 to Meyler at tachmeho, and than he yaued hym his deth to rescue [!] cui et  
 Another thar ney, in Oboy, to Robert de Bigaz; and Othyr many, neptem  
 both in leynystere and in Myth, that longe hit were to reherse ham suam tunc  
 al by name. dedit uuorem.

## [CHAPTER LIII.]

**A**bout that tyme, befel a merwelos aduenture in Capitulum liij<sup>m</sup>.  
 a wodd of Myth, of a Preste that went by weyes. Nota de lupo con-  
 And as he came throw that wodd, came a man agaynes hym <sup>1</sup>, and fitente.  
 Prayed hym for the lowe of god, that \* He sholde go wyth Hym [\*Fol. 24 b.]  
 forto shrywe Hys wyfe, that Lay seke ther-By. The prest turned [See Gir. Camb.'s  
 wyth hym; and whan he came Somdel ney, he herde gronyng Topo-  
 and con-Playnyng, as hit were of a woman; and whan he came graphia,  
 there wher she lay, than was hit a wolfe, that lay there and ch. 19, Op.  
 gronyd. the prest that Saw, and was sore aferde, and turnyd hym v. 101: it  
 to goo / the man and the wolfe both spake wyth hym, and bade gives the  
 hym that he sholde not be afferde, and that he sholde turne to story, with  
 shryw hyre. The Prest toke herte to hym, and blessid hym, and different  
 wente and satte be-syde hyre. And the Wolfe spake to hym, and details.]  
 confeste hyr to the preste. and whan thay hadd that done, the preste <sup>2</sup> Sin  
 bethoght hym, and thought that thyng that was in myse-lyckenys, autem,  
 And hadd grace to speke, that hit mygh[t] also wel haue grace and quia pro-  
 Insyght in othyr thyng. He enquerid of the strangeres that were clivis est  
 come Into londe, how hit sholde be of ham? The wolfe answerid cursor ad  
 and sayde, that 'for the synne of the londe-pepill, almyghty god was voluptates,  
 displeysyd wyth ham, and sende that Pepill to bryng ham in et inita-  
 thraldome; and So thay sholde be, thil the Same Pepill were aftyr triz natura  
 encombrid wyth Synne<sup>2</sup>. And then thay sholde haue Power to do vitiatorum,  
 to ham the Same Wrechydnys, for har Synnes.' ad nostros  
ex convictu  
mores forte  
descen-  
derint,  
divinam in  
se quoque  
procul-  
dubio  
vindictam  
provoca-  
bunt.

<sup>1</sup> ecce lupus ad eos accedens. Gir. Camb. Op. v. 101.

## [CHAPTER LIV.]

A. D.  
1180-6.  
Henry II's  
sons again  
rebel.

Prince  
Henry  
dies,  
11 June  
1183;  
Geoffrey  
dies  
19 Aug.  
1186.

St. Laur-  
ence,  
Archbp. of  
Dublin,

dies at Eu  
14 Nov.  
1180,  
[\*Fol. 25  
a.]

after  
having  
prophesied  
his death  
there.

John  
Comin is  
next Arch-  
bishop,  
A. D. 1181.  
He is con-  
secrated at  
Velletri,  
A. D. 1182.

Henry II  
gives  
Ireland to  
his son  
John.

**N**at longe theſe-aftyſ, þe yonge kyng henry, the  
old kyng henryes ſone, & his brotheſ Geoffrey, the  
Erl of bretaynge, wyth-out many hegh men of thys half þe ſee, and  
yē half that ham weren an help & conſaylle, the thyrde tyme 4  
ayeyne hys fader beghā to aryſe; bot ſone theſe-aftyſ, as thegh  
hyt weſ through wrech of god, thay bothe deyleden, the on about  
mydſomyſ at Marcelle—& þat was the yonge kyng,—& þe erl  
ſone theſe-aftyſ deyed eke at parys: and thys þe kynges werſ 8  
ayeynes his<sup>1</sup> ſones was y-endet.

## [CHAPTER LV.]

**W**Nder this, laurence, Erchebiſſhope of Dyuelyne,  
(that at the conſaylle of the laſtran hadde  
I-be, & as me ſeyde, ther he hadde purchaſed ayenys the 12  
kyng for loue of hys lond-folke, whar-of the kyng hadde grete  
ortrow vp-on hym, wheſe-for he lete hym of hys paſſage ynto  
Ireland,) the xvij kalends of december, deyed at Oye yn nor-  
mandye; a good mane and holy; & þat, gode almyghty ſheweth, 16  
by many myracles þat he openly doth for hyū. Me \*rede  
eke of hym, that he was ſeke thre dayes ar he thader come;  
and whan he ſawe ouſ lady-chyrch, that ys the modyr-chyrch of  
the toun, he ſeyd thys vers of the pſauter, as prophecye, through 20  
þe holy goſte: ‘Hec Requies mea in *ſeculum ſeculi*’ et *cetera*:  
& ys thus mych to ſygge an-englyſſhe, ‘Thys ys my reſte, world  
wyth-out end; her I wyll wonne, for I hyt haue I-choſe.’

¶ Aftyſ hym, was Erchebyſſhop of dyuelyne, Ihon comyn, a 24  
mañ of England borne; & yn England, at eueſham, of the clerge  
of dyuelyn (by queyntye and procurment of the kyng), by on  
accorde I-choſe; & of the pope lueye, at the Cyte of Wellet, theſe-  
aftyſ I-hodet & I-ſacred; a man, good clerke & ryghtful; & by 28  
hys myght, mych ryght laked þe ſtat of holy chyrch yn Ireland.

## [CHAPTER LVI.]

**T**he kyng henry, as he there-to-fore hadde  
I-thoght, yaue the Lond of Ireland to hys  
yongeste ſone, Iohn by name; & whañ he hyt hadde hym I-yeue, 32

<sup>1</sup> overlined later.

## [CHAPTER LIV.]

**N**ot longe ther-aftyr, the yonge kynge henry, the olde kynge henryes Sone, and his brodyr Geffery, the Erle of brytayne, with othyr many hey men of this halfe the see, and yen half that ham weryn an helpe and consayl, the thyrde tyme agayn his fadyr be-gan to arryse; but Sone ther-aftyr, as hit were through Sentence of god, thay both died, the one aboute Mid-somyre at Marcelle, and that was the yonge kynge; and the Erle Sone ther-aftyr diede also at Paris: and thus the kynges werre agaynes his Sonnes was Endyd.

Capitulum  
liiij<sup>m</sup>.  
A. D.  
1180-6.

prae-  
potentes  
Pictaviae  
proceres,  
cum electa  
Gallicae  
militiae  
juventute.

## [CHAPTER LV.]

**V**Ndyr this laurance, Archebischope of Deuelyn, (that at the consail of the Latran hadd I-be, and as thay Sayde, ther he had Purchasid agaynes the kynge for loue of his Ionde-Pepill, wharof the kynge had grette artrow vpon hym, Wherfor he lette hym of his passage in-to Irland,) the xviiij kalends of Decembyr died at Oye in Normandy, a good man and holy, and that god almyghty Shewid many Miraclis for / that he opynly doth for hym. We rede also of hym, that he was seke iij<sup>e</sup> dayes ar he thadyr came; and whan he Saw our Ladyes church, that is the modyr church of the town, he sayde this vers of the Sawter, as prophesy throw the holy goste: "Hec requies mea in seculum seculi: Hic habitabo<sup>1</sup>, quoniam elegi eam." And is thus mych to Say in Englysh, "This is my reste, worlde wythout Ende. Her y wyl dwele, for y hit haue chose" // Aftyr hym, was Archebischope of Deuelyn, Ihon Comyn, a man of England borne; and in England, at euesham, of the clergi of deuelyn (by queyntyse and procurment of the kynge), by oone acorde chose; and of the Pope Lucie, at the Cite of wellet, ther-aftyr y-hodet and y-Sacrid; a man, god clerke, and ryghtful, and by his myght / mych ryght lakyd the state of holy church In Irland<sup>2</sup>.

Capitulum  
lv<sup>m</sup>.

14 Nov.  
1180.

A. D. 1181.

<sup>2</sup> ecclesiae  
Hibernicae  
statum  
egregia  
sublimasset.

## [CHAPTER LVI.]

**T**he kynge Henry, as he there-tofor hadd thoght, yaue the Ionde of Irland to his yongest Sone, Ihon by Name. And whan he hit hadde hym yeue, he Sende the Arche-

Capitulum  
lvj<sup>m</sup>.

[Fol. 25  
a.]

<sup>1</sup> habitabo, MS.



A. D. 1184. he sent þe Erchebysshope of dyuelyn ouer þe see, to ordeyn ayeyne  
 Arohbp. hys sones comynge. & sone aftyr þat, hugh de lassy was I-sent  
 Comin is aftyr ynto Englonð; and oome ynto Irland, Phelype of Wyrcestre,  
 sent to Irland; Hagh de procurato[ur] of þe lond, wyth fourty knyghtes; a man that was 4  
 Hagh de Laey is good knyght, curteys, & good mete-yeuer; bot oper good ne dydde  
 recald, and he noon, saue þat he went from contray to contray, & asked,  
 Phillip of Worcestre & wyth streynth toke, both of letred & of lewed, þe cursed  
 takes his tallages of gold & of syluer. & I wnderstond that he neuer good 8  
 place. dydde þerwyth; ne neuer mane shalle, that so catell gadereth; for  
 He took tallage of all, and curses with it. many crystes curs, & trew manys & womanes, pouer & ryche,  
 thay gadereth eke þer-wyth: & wel vnsyker may mañ be, to do  
 hys lyf yn aduentur wyth ham that catel so wynneth. 12

## [CHAPTER LVII.]

The fyrst  
 comynge  
 of kyngo  
 Iohn ynto  
 Irland.

He lands  
 at Water-  
 ford  
 25 April,

1185.

Those who  
 conquer  
 the land  
 before him  
 deserve all  
 praise.

Nota the  
 kyng his  
 tytyl to  
 Irland.

Fitz-  
 Stephen  
 and  
 Striguil  
 had good  
 right to  
 come to  
 Ireland.

Whan the kynges sone hadde arayed al dyngne  
 that nede was, for to come yn-to Irland, he  
 put hym to saylle at Melyford, a ferth estre day. he hadde  
 good wynd, & a-morow arryued at Waterford, wyth thre hun- 16  
 dred knyghtys, & other an-hors, & a-fote ful many. he arryued,  
 the yer of hys old .xxij.; of hys faderes comynge ynto Irland  
 .xiiij.; of the Erles comynge .xiiij.; of Robertes comynge, fytz-  
 steuen .xv.; the yee of ow lordes Incarnacion .M. C. lxxxv. 20  
 Steuenes-son was forman, & opened the way to þe Erl; the  
 Erl to þe kyng; the kyng to hys sone; & mych hyt ys to  
 preyse, & grete thyng he began, that fyrste ynto Irland so  
 boldly come, the thyng to begyn. Moch also to preysene, he, that 24  
 aftyr the begynnyng, so nobely come for to eche thyng that  
 was begon; & most of al to preysen, he that al thyng fulle  
 endet, & the lordshype clenlych wan ouer al other [Hy. II]. Her, men  
 mowen well vndrestond, that the Englessy-meñ ne came nat 28  
 wyth so mych vnryght yn-to Irland as many folk weneth; for  
 Robert, steuenes-son, & þe Erl, wyth good ryght come to  
 Macmorgh ynto leynester; the on, hys trouth for to hold, & hym  
 for to helpe; that other, for loue of hys doghtre; nathles, of 32  
 Waterford, ne of Myth, ne of Desmon, whych the Erl at the  
 begynnyng name to hym, & conquered out of leynestre, ne sey  
 I nocht that he hadde al fully ryght ther-to. Bot of the fyft

bischope of Deuelyn ouer the see, to ordeyn agayn his comynge. A. D. 1184. And Sone aftyr that, hugh de Lacy was Sende<sup>1</sup> into England; And come Into Irland, Philipp of Wircestre, procuratour of the londe, *[Philip, in his expedition to Armagh,] a clero sacro auri tributum execrabile tam exigens quam extorquens. —Op. v. 360.* with fourty knyghtes; a man that was good knyght / curteys, and goode mete-yeuer; but othyr good ne did he noone; Sane that he went from contray to contray, and askyd, and wyth streynth toke, both of lerid and lewid, the cursid tollagis of golde and Syluer. And I vnderstonde that he neuer good did ther-with; ne neuer man shall, that So good gadderid; for many crystis curs, and trew manys and womannys, Pouer and rych, thay gadderid also ther-wyth: and wel vnsure may a man to be, to do his lyfe in aduenture wyth them that So goode doth gette.

## [CHAPTER LVII.]

**W**han the kynges Sone hadd arrayed al thynges *Capitulum lvij<sup>m</sup>.* that nede was forto come Into Irland, he Putt hym to Sayl at Milleford<sup>e</sup> the iiij<sup>e</sup> day aftyr Estyr. He had good wynde, *The fryst comyng of kynges Iho<sup>n</sup> Into Irlande.* and amorrow londid at Watyrforde, wyth CCC knyghtes, and othyr an-hors and a-foote ful many. he lonyd, the yere of his age xxij, Of his faderis comynge Into Irlande xiiij, Of the Erlis comynge xiiij, of Roberes comynge fitz Steuy<sup>n</sup> xv, the yere of Oure lordys Incarnacio<sup>n</sup> M<sup>r</sup>. Clxxxv. Steuenes Sone was the fryst man, And *[Op. v. 38<sup>a</sup>]* oppenyd the way to the Erle: the Erle to the kynges; the kynges to his Sone; and gretly he is to Preyse, and grete thynges he began, that *Multum ergo contulit qui ausu nobili principium dedit.* fryst in-to Irland So boldely come, the thynges to begyn; gretly also he is to Preyse, that, aftyr the begynnynge, so nobely come forto execute the thynges that was begon; And moste of al he is to Preyse, that al thynges full Endyd, and the lorchip clenly conquestyd ouer al othyr // Here men mowen wel vnderstond, that the Englysh-men came not wyth so mych vnryght into Irland as many pepill wenyth. For Robert Steuenes-Sone and the Erle come to *Nota the kyngys titil to Irlande.* Macmurgh into leynystre; that oon, on his throuth forto holde, and hym forto helpe, / that othyr, for loue of his doghtyr. Natheles, of Watyrford, ne of Mythe, nethyr of Desmon, wych the Erle at the begynnynge toke to hym and conquerid out of leynystre, I Sey not <sup>2</sup> *quintae portionis insulae.* that he hadd ful ryght therto. But of the fryst Parte of the londe

<sup>1</sup> Sende aftyr, MS.

Henry II's  
fivefold  
right to  
Ireland:

1. All the  
Irish  
Princes  
yielded to  
him.  
[*Pol. 25*  
b.]

2. The  
Pope of  
Rome  
granted  
Ireland to  
him.

3. Gur-  
guntius  
won  
Ireland.

4. Arthur  
had truage  
from  
Ireland.

5. The  
Irish came  
from  
Bayonne,  
subject to  
England.  
English  
kings are,  
of right,  
Lords of  
Ireland.

Nota that  
Ireashemen  
bene false  
of kynd.

of the lond that was the Erles throug̃ hys wyf, The lordshype clenly þe erl yaf the kyng; & al þe prynces of the lond ther-aftyr, by har good wyll, yolden̄ ham to the kyng, to be euermō sugget to hym & to hys. Vp\*-on al thys, þe pope of 4 Rome, that ys heede of al crystendome, and that hath a specyall ryght of al the Ilondes of crystendome as wyde as the world ys, he yaf plenerly, and confermed to the kyng, the lordshyp of the lond, as hyt ys to-fore I-told. and of eldre ryght we 8 fyndeth eke I-wrytte, that the kynges of England haue to Irland of Germon̄, Belynes sone, kyng of Brytaygne, that ys nowe Englund, he come ynto Irland, & whan the lond; & many yē me bā hym truage, and othēr aftȳr hym, ynto brytaygne. 12 Ther-aftȳr the kyng Arthūr hadde truage eke out of Irland; & Gylmory the kyng, that thān was wyth other kyng of the Ilondes, was wyth̄ hym at the grete feste that he held at karlyon̄. On̄ other halue, the folk of Irland come formeste out of bastles 16 & out of Bayon̄, that longeth now to gascoyne, wherof the kynges of england ben lordes. And thys me may wel vnderstond, that both by old ryght & by newe, the kynges of Englund owen wel to haue the lordshyp of Irland. And thegh̄ the folk of the lond 20 neuer ne hadde be subyet ther-byfore, hyt oght be I-noght, þat thay al by good wylle yold ham to kyng henry, by othes & by ostages, & al sykernesse that hymself lyked; & þe popes that þer-aftȳr hym graunted & confermed the lordshyp of the lond, 24 & accorsed al ham that ȳn any tyme thar-ayeyn come. And thegh̄ thay, throug̃ kynd falsnesse & vnstableness that yn ham ys, lytyl tel of othes & of mansynge, natheles, thay wer neuer, throug̃ no man that power hadde, thē-of assoylled ne vnbound. 28 Bot man may bynd hymself wyth̄ such thyng, bot nat so lyghly vnbynd.

## [CHAPTER LVIII.]

Giraldus  
says no  
more of  
the Con-  
quest, but  
explains  
why it was  
never com-  
pleted.

Maystir̄ Geraud ne telleth no forther of the conquest; bot of þe lette where-throug̃ the lond 32 was [not] clenlych I-conquered, ne the folk fully I-broght yn thedone, he telleth such resons:—Thay that fyrst comen̄, hadden̄ ful wel I-spedde wyth̄-out any lette, yif þe kyng ne hadd so astyly

that was the Erlis by hys wyfe, The lorchipp clenly the Erle yaue to the kyng; and al the Pryncys of the londe ther-aftyr, by har good-will, yoldyn ham to the kyng to be euer-more subiecte to hym and to hys. Vpon al this, the pope of Rome, that is hede of al crystyndome, *and* that hath a Special ryght of al the Ilondys of crystyndome, as wid as the worlde is, he yaue Plenerly, *and* confermyd to the kyng, the lorchipp of the lond, as hit is to-fore tolde. And of eldyre ryght we fyndyth also y-writte, that the kyng of Englande haue to Irlande \* of Gormon, Belynes Sone, Kyng of Brytaigne<sup>1</sup>, that is now England, he come Into Irland, and toke the londe; *and* many a yere thay bare hym truage, *and* othyr aftyr hym, Into brytaigne. Ther-aftyr also, kyng Artoure hadd truage out of Irland<sup>2</sup>; and Gylmory the kyng, that that tyme was wyth othyr kynges of the Ilandis, was *with* hym at the grete feste that he helde at karliōn. On othyr halue, the Pepil of Irlande come fryste out of Bascles *and* out of Bayon, that longyth now to Gascoyne, Wherof the kynges of Englande ben lordys. And thus ye may wel vnderstonde that, both by olde ryght and by new, the kynges of England owen well to haue the lorchipp of Irland. And thegh the folke of the londe neuer hadd be Subiecte ther-by-fore, hit oght be y-now, that thay al, by good-will, yaue ham to the kyng Henry by othys and hostages, *and* by al maner Surte that he desyrid<sup>3</sup>; and the Popis that ther-aftyr hym graunted *and* confermyd the lorchipp of the londe, and acorsyd al them that in any tyme ther-agayn come. ¶ And thegh thay, by kynde falsnes and vnstabilnes that in ham is, lytel tell of othys *and* of mansynge, natheles, thay were neuer, by noo man that Power hadd, therof assoilled ne vnbound. But a man may bynde hym-Selfe *with* Such thyngs, but nocht So lyght vn-bynde.

## [CHAPTER LVIII.]

**M**aister geraud ne tellyth no ferdyr the conquest; but of the lette wherfor the londe was [not] clenlych I-conquerid, ne the Pepil fully y-brought in theudom, he tellyth Such resonys:—Thay that fryst comen, haddyn full well y-Spede

<sup>1</sup> Brytayne, MS.<sup>2</sup> firmis fidei sacramentique vinculis: v. 326.

*qui insulas omnes sibi speciali quodam jure recipiunt.*

[\*Fol. 25 b.]

<sup>2</sup> *Hiberniae reges Tributarios habuisse.*

*Præterea urbs Baonensis, quam hodie nostra continet Gasconia, Blasconiae caput est, unde Hibernenses progenerant.*

*Nota that Irysh-men bene fals of kynde.*

1. Henry I-sent, & forboden that no man ne shold to ham come; &  
 II's stop- they that wer̄ ynto þe lond I-come, shold the lond leue, &  
 ping the turne ayeyne, otheṛ forlese al that thay helden of the kynges  
 coming of the yn otheṛ londes. And whaṇ the kynges was ynto the lond 4  
 of the English.

2. His hymself I-come wyth so moch power, hyt had he wel ynoght,  
 going home naṛ that he hadd so sone turned ayeyne, throug the popes heste  
 so soon & þe cardynals, & eke the lyddernesse that hys sones hadden  
 after his I-purueyed to do hym, the whyll that he was out of lond. ffor 8  
 Invasion of Ireland. the folk that, at the begynnyng of so sodeyne comyng, was so

The Irish, swyth amayed, & aferd & agrysed of the wepned men stalwarth-  
 at first nessesse, and of the derne wondyng of arwes, throug lange abydyng  
 frightend, & sleuyth of Maystres that no stalwarthnesse ne sykernesse was 12  
 learnt to fight and shoot, wyth, by lytyll & lytel lerned, wepne to ber̄, arwes to shote;

and often happes yn fyght vpon englysshe-meṇ; & on thys maner, that at  
 beat the English. the begynnyng lyghly myght be I-shent & I-brought vnder fote, 16  
 English. worthen bold & staluarth to wythstond, & defend ham-self. Me

War comes me shal neuer fynd that wer̄ & hate came vpon folk, bot for 20  
 on folk haṛ synnes; & so hyt may wel be of the folk of Irland, that oft  
 only for serued wel, for haṛ synnes, to haue werre & wrak of otheṛ out-  
 their sins. The Irish londes men; natheles, god almyghty was nat ham so wengeable  
 sind, but wrot, that he tholled ham fully, nether al to be vndone, ne fully 24  
 God gave

[\*Fol. 28 I-brought yn-to theudome, nether \* thay clenly forelore grace; ne  
 a.] the other clenlych hadden grace, the Maystrye to hawe, ham fully

no one & preysably yn theudome for to hold. Me fynt that þe Iresshe-  
 grace to men hadden four prophetes, euery yn hys tyme, Patryk, Molyng, 28  
 to enslave them. Braken, & Colmkyll, whos bokes ben wyth ham an Iresshe

The four I-wrytte; euery of ham spekeṇ of the fyght of thys conqueste,  
 chief Irish I-wrytte; & seyne that 'lange stryf & oft fyghtynges shal be for thys lond;  
 Prophets say that & oft the lond shal be I-horyed & I-steyned wyth grete slacht of 32  
 the the

English men.' Bot vnnethe thay beheteth the Englyssh peple fully þe  
 shan't fully maystrye a lytell ar domesday, & that the lond shal from see to see  
 conquer Ireland till be I-castelled & fully I-won. Bot the englysshe-meṇ shollen, ar  
 Domesday; that, oft wel feble be, & myche desayse yn the lond so [? se]. Barcaṇ 36

with-out any lette, yf the kyng ne hadd So hastely y-sende *and si non*  
 comandid that no man ne sholde to ham come; and thay that were *primis*  
 Into the londe y-come, sholde the londe lewe, *and* turne ayeyn, *praeur-*  
 othyr to lese al that thay heldyn of the kyng in othyr londys. *sorum*  
 And whan the kyng was Into the land hym-Selfe y-come with So *adventibus*  
 mych Power, hit hadd y-be wel y-now, <sup>1</sup> nar that he hadd So Sone *regio*  
 turned agayn, through the Popis comandment and the cardynalis, *fuiisset*  
 And also the wickydnys that his Sones haddyn y-Purueyed to dōne *edicto*  
 hym, the whyle that he was out of londe. For the Pepil that, at *praeicia*  
 the begynnynge of So Sodeyn comynge, was So gretly aferde *and sequela.*  
 agrisid the wepynnyd-men boldenys, *and* of the cruel woundynge of <sup>1</sup> *si ab*  
 arowes, throw longe abydyng and Sleuth of Maysters, that no *ausu nobili*  
 boldnys ne Sickyrnys was wyth, by lytell and lytell lernyd wepyñ *tam prae-*  
 to berre, Arrowes to shote; *and* So wel vsyd ham therto, that *mature*  
 many tymys ham by-fell wondyrly good happys in fyght vpon *intestina*  
 englysh-men; and on this manere, that at the begynnynge lygh[t]ly *conspi-*  
 myght be shente *and* broght vndyrfoote, Weryn bolde and hardy *ratio non*  
 to Wythstonde *and* defende ham-Selfe / We may rede and ouer- *revocasset.*  
 seche the boke of kynges, the prophetis, al the olde rede fro ende to *totam . .*  
 oper, *and* othyr tymys that to-for haue y-be, We shal neuer *Veteris*  
 fynde that were ne hate came vpon Pepill, but for har Synnes. *Testamenti*  
 And So hit may wel be of the Pepil of Irland, that ofte serued *seriem.*  
 wel, for har Synnes, to haue werre \* and wrake of othyr strange [\*Fol. 26  
 comen men. Natheles, god almyghty was not ham so wengeabil a.]  
 wroth that he wolde fully ham Putte out of londe, nethyre al to be *vel omnino*  
 vndone, ne fully broght Into traldome, nethyr thay clenly forlorne *subjici*  
 grace. Nethyr ne othyr hadd not fully grace, the Maystry to haue, *meruit vel*  
*deleri.*  
*and* ham fully *and* Pesabilly in thraldome to holde / ¶ We *Nota de*  
 fyndyth that the Irysh-men haddyn iiij<sup>e</sup> prophetis euery in his *prophetis*  
 tyme, Patrike, Molyng, Brakan and Colmkylle, Whos bokis ben *Hibernie.*  
 wyth ham in Irysh writte. Euery of ham Spekyth of the fyght of  
 this conqeste, And Sayne that 'lange stryfe *and* of fyghtynge shal  
 be for this londe; *and* ofte the lond shal be defowlid *and* y-steynd  
 wyth grete Slaght of men.' But vnnethe thay grauntyth that the  
 Englysh pepil fully the maystry, a lytel ar the day of Dome, *and* that <sup>2</sup> *ex toto*  
 the lond shal from See to See / be castelid *and* fully Enhabited <sup>2</sup> / *subacta et*  
 But p<sup>e</sup> Englysh-men shal, ar that, ofte wel febil be, *and* mych *incas-*  
*tellata.*

but they shall be troubled by a King from St. Patrick's Mountains.

seyth, that 'through a kynge that shal come out of the wyl montayngnes of seynt patrykes þat me cleppeth slesto (slesco?), & on a soneday-nyght<sup>1</sup>, a castel yn the wodd contreys of Offalye shal to-brek, most what al the Englysshe-men of Irland shullen 4 be I-stourbet' //

## [CHAPTER LIX.]

I'll tell you why Prince John didn't succeed in Ireland.

Now and for whych thyng hit was, that the kynges sonnes trauaille, and har mochel costes, at thys tyme ne sped nat as tham ogh, hyt ys noñ harme 8 thegh me heṛ sette; for thegh of thyng that ys I-past ne be no remedy, natheles, of thyng that ys to come, me may be waṛ by ensample of haṛ dede. Whan the kynges sone was Icome to lond at Waterford, thedeṛ come to hym Iresshe-meñ of the 12 contray, rysh meñ, and of pees trew hym besoght, & made hym grete gladnesshe as hare lord, & profred hym to kysseñ. Thay anoon ryght of the new meñ, & namely of the Normannes, wereñ shame-fully receyued, & lothly I-hokred, & by the berdes—whysh, 16 yn the maner of the contrey, they hadden grete & long—some of ham shamly wereñ I-shakeñ & I-draw. As sone as thay comen to haṛ owne, wyth al that thay hadden thay wyth-drowen ham, & left the contrey & wenten to the kyng of Thomoñ, and hym [told], & 20 also the kyng of desmoñ & the kyng of Connaght, what thay hadd receyued & found wyth the kynges sone. ¶ A yonglynge al wyth yonglynges gouerned; & by yonge meñ rede, al he wroght; no wytte ne no staluarthnesse wyth hym was found; no sekernese ne 24

When he landed, rich men welcomd him, but had their beards pulld by his young Normans.

The Irish went off disgusted, and told their countrymen.

The three chiefs of Ireland (of Limerick, Connaught, and Cork,)

swore they'd fight for their freedom to the death.

trouth to Iresshemeñ, thayr south nat behete. Whañ tythynges heṛ-of was I-spronge, thay thre cheftayns of Irland that weṛ theṛ redy to come to the kynges sone, & ham to hym, & do hym homage, thay thoghten that, aftyṛ thay smal harmes, wolden come more; & 28 whañ me such thyng dydde to good meñ & meke, wel wors me wold do the prouth & the vnbuxum. Thay toke ham to rede, & sworr to-gedder that thay wolden vpon haṛ lyues wythstond the ryghtes of haṛ old fredomes, & defende, for to be al to-heweñ. 32 And for that thay shold<sup>2</sup> th[is] th[ing] the better to end bryng, thay

<sup>1</sup> MS. sone myght.

<sup>2</sup> From this line to the end of the page, the ends of the lines are missing, the corner of the page being torn off.

myssayse haue in the londe. So **Brakan Seyth**, that 'through' a kynge, that shal come of the wylde Montaignes of Seynte Patrickes, that is callid Selfco, and on a soneday-nyght<sup>2</sup>, a castel in the wode Slefto, contreies of Ofelanye shal breke, most what al the Englysh-men <sup>alias</sup> of Ireland shal be strobyd. <sup>Ofaley.</sup>

## [CHAPTER LIX.]

**N**OW and for wyche thyng hit was, that the kynges <sup>Capitulum</sup> <sup>lix<sup>m</sup>.</sup> Sones travayll, *and* his grete costes, at this tyme sped <sup>3</sup> *virī non* noght as tham oght, Hit is none harme thegh I her reherse. *Forto* speke of thyng that is Paste, is no remedy; Nevyrthelasse, of thyng *infirmi,* that is to come, we may be-ware by ensampil of har dedes // *fideles* *hactenus* ¶ Whan the kynges Sone was come to loude at Watyrforde, thedyr *Anglis, et* come to hym Irysh-men of the contray, ryche men<sup>3</sup>, and of trew Pees *pacifici,* hym be-soght / and made hym grete gladnys as har lorde, *tanquam* *domino* proferid to kysse hym. Than anoone ryght / of two new men, *congratulan-* *tes,* *et eum in* namely of the Normanes, waryn shamefully rescwid, *osculo* *and* lewidly Pullid ham by the Berdys, whych, in the maner of the contrey, thay *pacis sus-* *cipientes.* *a novis* *nostris et* *Normannis.* *and* ydrawen. As Sone as thay comen to har owyn, wyth all that *nullam* *Hibernicis* thay hadde, thay wythdrawen ham *and* lefte the contrey, *and* wente *securi-* to the kyng of Thomonde, *and* tolde hym, *and* also the kyng of *tatem pro-* Desmonde and the kyng of Connaght, what thay hadd rescwyd *mittentes.* *tres prin-* *cipales* *tunc* *temporis* *Hiberniae* *postes,* *Limeri-* *censis,* *Connac-* *tensis, et* *Corga-* *giensis.* *Ihesus.* *and* found with the kynges sone. ¶ A yonglyng al wyth *[\*Fol. 26* *b.]* yonglynges gouernyd; *and* by yonge men consayl al didd; And no witte ne boldnys wyth hym was founde; ne Surte, ne trouthe, *antiquae* *libertatis* to yrysh-men thay couth not promyse<sup>5</sup>. ¶ Whan thyngys herof *sub* was spronge, thay iij<sup>e</sup> captaynys of Ireland<sup>6</sup> that was that *capitum* *discrimine* tyme redy to come to the kynges sone, *and* yelde ham to hym, *sub* *and* to do hym homage, thay thoghten, that aftyr thay smale *capitum* *discrimine* *jura* *tuendum.* harmys, wolde come more; and whan thay Such thyng did to good men *and* meke, Wel wors thay wolde do to the Prute *and* the vnbuxum. Thay toke hame to \*consail, and Sware to-gadderes that thay woldyn vpon Har Lywes wythstond the ryghtes of har olde fredomys, *and* defende til thay were al hewyde. And for thay sholde this thyng the bettyr bryng to

<sup>1</sup> per quemdam regem, de desertis Patricii montibus venturum, et nocte Dominica, castrum quoddam in nemorosis Ophelanie partibus irrupturum, omnes fere Anglici ab Hibernia turbabuntur.—*Op.* v. 385.

<sup>2</sup> MS. some myght (the same mistake, as before, in both MSS.).



The Irish rebels make friends with their foes. Tho' false themselves, they object to others being false to them.

[\*Fol. 26 b.]

John's failure is explaind by Rehoboam's, whose following of young men's advice, lost him ten Tribes of Israel.

John gave the lands of faithful Irish, to new men.

So these Irish turnd against him.

The coast towns and castles were given to rebels, who only gathered gold, and did harm to peace-men, not to foes.

sentten̄ about ynto al the lond, & allyed h . . . & maden frendes of ham that weŕ byfore fome[n], & thus through ham that th . . . -nyge putte (progh̄ pryde) from ham, both thaye & al other most dele were . . . . pys folke, as euery otheŕ wyld folk, thegh thay no 4  
wyrshype ne couthe . . . . me shold do ham wyrshype & manshype. And thegh thay nat be . . . . . wyth falsnesse, natheles thay shonneth that otheŕ do ham [any falshede;] & thus the good that thay loueth yn otheŕ, thay rech. . . . . ham 8  
to-gydder thay . . . . . \*Euery wysman vnderstond hym by Roboam, Salomones sone, how mych harme falleth of pryde & ouertrowshype. whaṅ he, aftyŕ hys fadyŕ, was made kyng of Israel; þe folk come to hym, & bysoght hym that he shold ham somewhat 12  
allegge of þe seruyces that thay weŕ I-woned to do hys fadyŕ. He was yonge; and by yonge meṅ consaylle, answard & seyde, 'My fyngyŕ ys gretter thaṅ was my faders ryggebone; & yf he yow bette wyth yarde, y wyl yow bette wyth breres.' ¶ Through that 16  
answar, the ten kynredes hym leften̄, & maden ham kyng of Ieroboam, & neuer aftyŕ weren vnder hym ne noon̄ of hys: of al þe folk of Israel, non wyth hym abode, bot twey kynredes. Vpon thys, þe Iresshe-men londes, that, fro the tyme that Robert steuenes- 20  
sone fyrst come ynto þe lond, trewly wyth englysshe-men haddeṅ I-be, weŕ I-take fro ham, & yeuen to the newe meṅ. And thay anoṅṅ turned to the Iresshe-men, & aspyed al the harme that thay myght do to þe Englysshe; & werē, so mych the more harme dydde, 24  
that thay so pryue werē wyth ham ther-byfore

[CHAPTER LX.]

The townes vp-on the see, and the castels, wyth the londes that to ham belonget, & the truages & the rentes that shold be I-spende yn comyn nede of the 28  
lond, & to ham, of rebelles thay waŕ I-sette to such that wel fayne gadered gold & syluer wyth-yn woves, eten wel & drynken̄, and ladden̄ Idel lyf, & al thyng vnprofytably wasteden̄, to harme of pees-meṅ, & nat of fomen̄. Amonge otheŕ harmes betydde yit 32  
more, that yn lond so smert & so kene, & folk so weyward & so vnredy, & so mych harme doynge, The kepyng & the maystry toke

Ende, thay Sende about into al the londe, and allied ham togad-deris, *and* madyn frendys of tham that were enemys. And thus throw ham, that thay at the begynnyng Putte (throw Pryde) from them, both thay and al otheres for the more parte was fro them stirrid.

¶ This Pepyll, as euery othyr wylde Pepill, thegh thay no wyrchipp kowth not, Natheles thay wolde that hy sholde do ham wyrchippe *and* manshipe. And thegh thay be not aferde ne ashamyd to be founde wyth falsnesse, Natheles, thay Shonnyth that any othyr sholde do ham any falshede: and thay lowyth trowth; and thus good that thay lowyth in otheres, thay thynke no fors whow lytill be found in ham-Selfe therof. Euery vvsman vnderstond hym by Roboam, Salomones Sone, how mych harym fallyth of Pryde. Whan he, after his fadyr, was made kyng of Israel, the Pepil come to hym, *and* besoght hym that he sholde ham Somewhate allegge of the Seruyces that thay were wonyd to do to his fadyr. He was yonge; and, by yonge men consayl, answerid and Sayde.

¶ "My fyngyr is more *and* grettyr then was my Fadyris bake-bone; And yf he bette yow wyth yarde, y will bette you with breris"

¶ And for that answe, al the tene kynredes lefte hym / *and* made ham a kyng of Ieroboam; *and* neuer after weryn vnder hym, ne noone of his. Of al the Pepil of Israel, none abode, but two kynredis. Vpon this, the Irysh-men londes that fro the tyme that Robert Steuenes Sone fryste come Into the londe, trewely wyth englysh-men haddyn, wer take fro ham, *and* yewyn to two new men<sup>1</sup>. And thay anoone turnyd to the Irysh-men, *and* aspied al the harme that thay myght do to þe Englysh; and werre, so mych the more harme didde, that thay were so Pryue wyth ham therto-fore<sup>2</sup>.

[CHAPTER LX.]

**T**he tounes vpon the See, *and* the castelis, wyth the londys that to ham Partenyd, and the truages and the rentes that sholde be I-Spend in the comyn Profite of the londe, *and* yaue hit to Rebellys<sup>3</sup>, *and* to suche that well fayne gaderid golde and Syluer wyth-In woves, etten wel, and drounken, *and* laddyn ydill lyfe, and al thyng vnprofytably wastyne, to grete harme of Pees men, *and* noght to enemys. Amonge al othyr harmys befell yit more, that in the londe So Smyrte *and* So kene, *and* Pepil So weyward<sup>4</sup> and So vnredey, *and* So mych harme doynge,

*Quia primos a nobis insolenter repulimus... tam illos quam majores universos eo exemplo procul absteruimus bonum quod in aliis diligunt, minus in se reperi non erubescunt.*

*ego vos caedam scorpionibus.*

*novis nostris, contra promissa contulimus.*

*tanto quidem ad nocendum efficaciores, quanto prius fuerant familiariores.*

*talibus est assignata, qui aurum Capitulum lx<sup>m</sup>.*

*assidue intra muros aucupantes... cum civium, non hostium damno cuncta inutiliter consumebant.*

The Eng- an hand, that leuer<sup>1</sup> hadde har rych robes, than ham to wepne ;  
lish leuer to sytte at borde, þan hoste to lede ; redyer to fle þan to  
Governors were fyght ; leuer to hold a fayr mayd by the womb, than speer & sheld  
were powards, to ber an hand ; nether trewe to haer vnderlynges, ne dredful to haer 4  
and liked women enemies. They had nat that good herte, ne of ky[nde] yt com to  
better than war. ham, for to spaer the meke, & wreke ham on the prout ; bot al ayeyne  
that, thay sp[arid & <sup>2</sup>] lykled wyth the sterne, & pulled & strope  
ham that non harme dydde. Vnder whych gouernours, the 8  
The Irish Iresshe-men begon to pryde & take ouer-hand of the englysshe,  
now burnt, slew, and stole. branten and slowen, robbeden And stelled ; for the maystres wyth  
The Eng- haer meygne, helden ham alwey yn the cytees vpon the see, þer  
lish of the coast stuck to wine plente was of wynd & of women, to whych they weren al clenlych 12  
and women. I-yeue to. Bot the lond wyth-In, & the marches next haer enemies,  
The inland was plundered by the Irish. & the castles & the tounes that weren amynd, weren I-lefte &  
I-brant, the men I-robbed & I-sleyn, wyth-out any lette. The  
good knyghtes & the eldre folk of the lond, as men that me 16  
nought told-by that whyle, wyth-drow ham al sleghtly, & held ham  
al styll, for to awayty al soft, what endynge such hyddous stormes  
wold ham. That whyle, þe state of the lond was such, In al places  
Every- where was wailing ; was weylunge & wonynge, yollynge & crynge ; Al þe weyes forlete ; 20  
every day fresh news of fire and slaughter. no man ne trust to mete wyth other ; euery day come newe  
tythynges of bernynge & sleynge, robberyng & reuyng<sup>3</sup> yn the out  
londes : vnneth a lytel shadow of pees was yn þe bourgh tounes, þer  
the wyn quenched al þe sorowe ; the gold & the syluer, al oper 24  
harmes ; thaer me shold yn so lydder world wend from contray to  
contray wyth folk I-wepned, and chasty ham that mysdeden. They  
setten Iustyces of bench yn haer robes of scarlet & menyuer : men  
ruind good men and true, wyth swerdes & bates ham for to kepe, ther no nede was. Than 28  
was þe motynge, the pleyng and reynnyng of good men and  
[\*Fol. 27 a.] trewe that \* non harme dydden : wors ham dydde the harme & the  
worse than Irish foes did. ten that pay ther-throgh hadden, þan the robberyng & reuyng that  
thaer enemies ham dydde. ¶ Another thyng that mych was to 32

<sup>1</sup> MS. louer.<sup>2</sup> Torn out.<sup>3</sup> The corner of p. 26 b was torn off before being written upon, so that there are no words missing, and the lines follow each other as usual.

The keynge<sup>1</sup>, and the men that was Maysteres to kepe the lande, he had lewer his rych clothis to were, than wepyn to berre; and lowid bettyr to sitte at borde, than hoste to lede; and more redyer to fle than to fyght; leuer to holde a fayre mayde by the wombe, than spere and Shelde to ber an honde. And also they wer not trewe to har Subiectis, ne dredfull to har enemys. They had not that \* good Herte, ne of good Kynde Hit come to Ham, forto Spare the meke, and wreke Ham on the Prowte; but al the contrary thay did. Thay Sparid and fyllid wyth the sterne, and toke and Pullid the meke, and them that noone harme did // Vndyr whych gouernors, the Irysh-men begon to be Prowde, and to haue the Maystry of the Englysh-men, and branten, and Slayne, and Stellen / For thay Maysteris, wyth har meny, heldyn<sup>2</sup> ham at al tymys in the Citteis vpon the see-syde, ther Plente was of wyne and of women, to the wyche thay yaue ham clenly to. But the lond wyth-In, and the marchis nexte har enemys, and the castelis and the tounes that weryn a-myde, weryn lefte and brante, the men robyd and Slayn, wyth-out any resistence. The good knyghtes and the eldyr Pepill of the londe, as men that noght is tolde by, that tyme wythdrow ham al Slyly, and held ham al styлле, for-to witte al Softe what Ende Suche grete Stormys sholde haue. That tyme, the state of the londe was Suche, In al Placis was wepynge and cryenge, and myche Sorrow. All the weyes was lefte, that no man trustid not to mete with anohtyr; euery day come newe tythyngis of brennynge and Sleynge, robberyng and rewyng in the out-landis. Vnneth a lytyll Sadow of Pees was in the burgage tounes<sup>3</sup>, ther the wyne quenched al the Sorrow; the golde and the syluere, al the harmys. Thar thay Sholde, in so wyckyde a tyme, goo from contray to contray wyth Pepill y-wepenyd, and correcte ham that did amys; Thay Syttyn Iustices of benche in hare Roobis of Scarlete and menywere; men with Swerdis and battis forto kepe ham, ther no nede was. Than was the motyng, the pledyng, and reuyng of goode men and trew, that noone harme didde. Wors hame didd the harme and the angyr that thay ther through haddyn / than the robberyng and reuyng that har enemys ham dide // Anohtyr thyng that gretly is to mowrne, be-felle also, wher-of god was

A. D. 1185.

<sup>1</sup> *Stipendiaria**quippe**familia,**suos**imitata**magistros,**uisque**majoribus**morem**gerens.*

[\*Fol. 27

a.]

<sup>2</sup> [heldym

MS.]

*vino veneri-**que data,**maritimis**in urbibus**moram**assidue**faciebat.**Antiqua**vero**in militia**novorum**ingruente**malitia,**tantum**vilis et**reprobata,**latuit**interim et**siluit.*<sup>3</sup> *sed solum**in urbibus**paucis**ut cumque**servari**umbra vi-**debat.*

[See the

Latin

below,

P. 152.]

A. D. 1185. rewe byfelle also, whaṛ-of gode was worste I-quemed: Ther prince cometh newly to londes hyt becometh welle that he wyrshype god & holy chyrch, mayntenynge the ryghtes, & yeue more there-to. Bot þe newe prynce nat only held hym from that for to eche the good of holy chyrch, bot londes & rentes & pryuyleges that thay of old world hadde & vsed, at hys fyrst comynge yn many places he bename al clene; yṛ otheṛ places he chaunged, & yaue wors & lasse thaṛ foṛ; & hyt may wel be, þat hys spede yn othere thynges was euṛ the wors & noght þe bettyṛ. On thys maner the englysshe werenṛ both argh & woke to assayllen and to fyght, þe Iresshe stronge & bold to wythstonde, tyl that þe new prynce saue openly that al thyng vnder hys newe menṛ yede to loste; he chaunget ham & renued, as menṛ that nothyng couth, & droghṛ to hym the old knyghtes & the good menṛ that waredṛ ther-to-foṛ Ivsed to fyght yn the maner of þe lond, & sette Iohn de Curcy maystre & chefteyne of al thyng that was to done; vnder whomṛ þe state þe pees of the lond, by as mych began anoonṛ ryght to amend, as Iohn, of hert & of staluarthnesshe, passed al otheṛ, passynge & throug sechyng the Inlondes, as Desmone, Thomone, Mounesteṛ, Connaght; & let nat the meygne vndo hamself wyth oft harme & lostes, doynge to hys fomen, & oft to hym-self & to hys, as he that noght was adredde to assaye þe vnsykeṛ aduentures of fyght & of baret.

Prince John spoild the Irish Church.

The Irish began to rebel.

So John de Courci was made Ruler, and at once mended matters.

[CHAPTER LXI.]

Prince John had three sets of men: 1. Normans, the worst, whom he trusted most; 2. the English he brought with him; 3. the English in Ireland, the best, whom he trusted least.

<sup>1</sup> The yonge prynce at the begynnynge hadde wyth hym thre manere of meygne, Normannes, Englysshe, & þe Englysshe that he found yn the lond. In wyrshype, gret frenshype, & loue, he hold the fyrst & the worst; In lasse, the mydmest & the better; In allerleste, the latest & þe beste. The fyrst ne myght nat lyue wyth-out wyn, yn whyche thay werenṛ fostred; & for-thy thay forsokenṛ on al wyse to beṛ yn marches & yn castels feṛ from the see I-sette; no-whṛ bot about the kynges sone & hys body, kepe thay myght nat be, & hym folwen, & negh hym be, wyth-out any departynge. feṛ from the weste &

<sup>1</sup> The usual large initial letter is omitted here, a space being left for it in which a small t is put.

moste dysplesyd. Ther Prynce comyth newely to londe, hit becomyth that he wirchippe god and holy churche, mayntenynge the ryghtes, *and* yeue more therto. But the new Prynce, not oonly helde hym frome that, forto eche the good of hooly church; but londis and rentis *and* Pryuylegis that thay of olde Worlde hadde *and* vsyd / At his fryst comynge, in many Placis he toke al clene, *and* in othyr Placis he chaungid, *and* yauue Wors and lasse therfor. *And* hit may wel be, that his Spede in othyr thynge was euer the wors, *and* nocht the bettyr. On this maner the Englysh-men wer both febill and feynte to assayen and to fyght, and the Irysh-men bolde *and* stronge to wythstonde, till that the new Prynce opynly Saw that al thynge vndyr his new men yede to loste. he chaunged ham, *and* remewid as men that nothyng kowth, *and* drewe to hym the olde knyghtes, and the good men that weryn therto-for y-*vsyd* to fyght in the maner of the londe, *And* Sette Ihōn de Curcy, Maystyr and captayn of al thynge that was to doun, Vndyr Whom the State and the Pees of the londe, by as-myche began anoone ryght to amende, as Ihōn, of herte \* *and* of Boldnys, Passid all othyr, Passynge *and* throw shechyng the In-Londys, As Desmonde, Thomon, Mownyster, Connaght, *and* lette not the meny Vndo ham-Selfe wyth ofte harme *and* lostis, doynge to his ennemys *and* ofte to hym-Selfe *and* to his, as he that nocht was adrede to assay the vnsure aduentures of fyght *And* of battaylle.

A. D. 1185.

*nihil de novo con-*  
*ferentes . .*  
*quinimmo*  
*terris*  
*statim sub-*  
*latis et*  
*possessioni-*  
*bis . .*

*hostibus*  
*autem ad*  
*rebellan-*  
*dum auda-*  
*cissimis.*

*summam*  
*rerum*  
*geren-*  
*darum*  
*curam*  
*commisit.*

[\*Fol. 27 b.]

*penitimas*  
*terrae*  
*partes.*

*incertam*  
*bellici*  
*certaminis*  
*aleam.*

## [CHAPTER LXI.]

**T**he yonge Prynce at the begynnynge hadd with hym thre maner of menny, Normanes, Englyssh, *and* the Englyssh that he founde in the londe / In grete wyrchipp, frendshipp *and* loue, he helde the fryste *and* the worste. In lasse, the Secounde *and* the bettyr. *And* in alltherleste, the latyste *and* the beste. The fryste myght not lyue wyth-out wyn, in whych they weryn fosterid; *And* therfor thay forsoke to be in marchis *and* in castelis ferre frome the See ysette<sup>1</sup> / *and*<sup>2</sup> myght not be in no Place but aboute the kyngis Sone, (*and* [from] his body, kepe thay myght not be,) *and* hym followyn, *and* ney to hym be, *with*-out any departynge. ferre frome the Weste, *and* ney to the Eeste; Fer from

Capitulum lxj<sup>m</sup>.

*In summa*  
*familiari-*  
*tate primos*  
*habuimus.*

*solum*  
*filiū regis*  
*latera*  
*stipare,*  
*solum filio*  
*regis in-*  
*separa-*  
*biliter*  
*assistere.*

<sup>1</sup> Primi vino, quo nutriti fuerant, carere non volentes, in remotis marchis, et castris procul a mari constructis, moram facere modis omnibus recusabant.—  
*Op. v. 394-5.*

A. D. 1185. negh al eeste ; feſ from myssayse, & negh ayse, thay wyll et euer to be sette. ¶ Ianglers & bosters, & of grette othes, and stronge lyers, foderes, whybelers, Moch told by ham-self throug pryde, & lytel by otheſ ; yiftes & wyrshype to receyue, thay wer the fyrst ; 4  
 douit & perrylle to receyue, thay waſ euer the laste. The lytel good that thay dydde that wyth hym comen, that was throug the englysshe that he wyth hym broght ; bot thay was no thyng derward wyth hym ayeyns the other, that no good ne couth do. 8

He forsook And for the good knyghtes & the meñ throug whych the wey ynto the good the lond was fyrst I-opened, weſ wyth ham bot as forsaken & old Eng- forlete ; non I-cleppeth to conssaylle bot the newe ; to non trusted lishmen, he bot to the newe ; to non was wyrshype I-do bot to the newe. 12  
 Hyt byfelle, that whan thay otheſ wythdrowe ham for such thyng, & lete ham I-worth, yn al thyng that thay dydde, lytel or nocht thay sp[ed]de. Such gyltes & so many, thegh thay both weſ myche to wite, yong old & yonge rede, natheles þe yonge lydder rede was 16  
 more gylty ; ffore boustyous lond and vnredy, hadde al nede to be Irotet and I-kept throug wyse meñ & redy.

the wise whom the rebels needed.

## [CHAPTER LXII.]

John builds three Castles, at Ardfinan, Lismore, Tibragh. 1 Aftyr that the kynges sone hadde the lordshype of Irland, & ynto the lond was y-come, Aduentures byfelle 20 that maystyſ Gerot shortly toucheth. Of thre castels that he anoñ ryght lete rere, on at Ardfynan, anotheſ at lysmore, the thyrd at Tybraghnych. Of thre staluarth \* knyghtes that throug grete mesaduentur weren I-slawe, Robert de Barry at Lysmore ; 24  
 Reymond, hughes sone, at Olethan ; Reymon of Canteton yn Osserye. Of a partye of the meygne of Ardfynan that the kyng of Thomon descomfyted yn a wod per negh on a mydsomyſ day, And four knyghtes that ther weſ y-slaw ; & thay of Tothmon the 28  
 sam day wer dyscomfyt to-foſ Tybragh ; & a grete Iresshe-man, Ograde, was ther I-slawe, wyth many otheſ of the meygne of Ardfynan, that sone aftyr, yn a prey-takyng toward lymeryke weyes dyscomfyte, & xix knyghtes I-slawe. Of the prynce Of 32  
 Desmon, Dermot Maccarthy, that with many otheſ yn a parlement

[\*Fol. 7 b.]

Three Knights are slain. R. Fitz-Hugh, &c.

Men of Thomond, or Limerick, slain ; and O'Grady (?) Dermot, King of Desmond dies.

<sup>1</sup> The usual large initial letter is omitted, space being left for it.

myssayse, *and* nygh to ayse, thay wolde euer to be sette. // Iangleris, A. D. 1185. bosteris, and of grete othis, stronge lyeris, lycheres, Why-beleres, *verbosi, jactatores,* Moche sette by ham-selfe for Pride, *and* lytill by others: yiftis *enormium juramentorum* and wyrchipp to rescewe, thay were the fryst; Dowte and Peril *auctores.* to rescewe, thay wer euer the laste. The lytill good that thay didd' that wyth hym comyn, that was throghe the Englyssh that he wyth hym broght. But thay was nothyng Derward wyth hym agaynys the othyr, that no good ne couth do / And for the good knyghtes and the men, throw whych the wey into the lond was fryste oppenyd, wer wyth ham but as forsakyn *and* forlete / non callid to consaill, but the newe; to noone trustid he<sup>1</sup>, but to the new; to noone was wirchipp *done*, but to the newe. <sup>2</sup> Hit <sup>2</sup> *effectum est ut illis se retrahentibus, et invitis operas non ingerentibus, in cunctis agendis parum isti profecissent.* befel that, whan thay othyr wythdrow hame for Suche thyng, and lette ham alone, wyth al thyng that thay did, Lytell or noght thay Spede. Such gyltes and So many, thegh thay both wer mych to witte, yonge elde *and* yonge rede, natheles the yonge lewid consaylle was mor gylyt; For bostious, loude *and* vnredy, hadd grete nede to be y-rotid and y-kepete throghe wysmen and redy.

[CHAPTER LXII.]

Aftr that tyme that the kynges Sone hadde the lordshipp of Irland; and into the londe was come, adventures befell that Maystyr geraude Sortely touchyth. Of th[r]e castelis that he anoone ryght lette rere, oone at ardfynan, another at lysmore, the thyrde at Tybraght. Of thre bolde and hardy knyghtes, that throw gret mysadventure weryn slayne, Robert de Barry at lysmore, Reymond Hughes-sone at Olethan, Reymond of Canteton in Ossory. Of a party of the meny of ardfynan, that the kyng of Thomon descomfited in a wodde ther neygh, On a Mydsomer day, And four knyghtes that were Slayn; and thay of Thomonde the same day wer discomfite to-\*for tybraght; and a grete Irysh-man, Odrade, Was ther Slayn, wyth many othyr Of the meny of ardfynan, that Sone aftr in a pray-takynge toward lymerike weies Discomfite<sup>3</sup>, and xix knyghtes wer Slayn. Of the Prynce of Desmonde, Dermot Maccarthy, that with many othyr in

Capitulum  
lxij<sup>m</sup>.

*fallis ad-  
versis et  
aversis.*

*De parte  
quadam  
Arophi-  
nenais  
familia.*

[\*Fol. 28  
a.]

*De . . .  
Oggravi  
interemp-  
tione.*

<sup>3</sup> in praedae captione versus Limericum confectis.—Op. v. 386.



A. D. 1185. besyde Corke, throug̃ Tybaud wauter & the meygne of Corke, was  
 Ulstermen I-slawe. Of the men̄ of kenalayne, that to boldely wenten̄ unto  
 slain. Mythe to preyen̄, & ther weren̄ I-slawe throug̃ Wyllyam le petyt,  
 & an hundert heedes of ham I-broght to dyuelyn̄. Of otheṛ holy 4  
 Saints' bodies patryke, Bryde, &, Colmekyl, at douṛ I-found, & by Iohn de  
 found. Courcy weṛ translated; of hugh de lacy, that to trysty was vpon  
 Hugh de hys Iresshe-men̄, & by trayson̄ of ham was I-heded at dernagh̃.  
 Laci slain, A. D. 1186. ¶ Of thretten̄ knyghtes, that vnder Ihon de Courcy weren I-slawe 8  
 at a comynge out of Connaght. Of the staluarth yonge knyght  
 Roger le Roger the power̄, that wyth many of hys, throug̃ traysons, yn  
 Poer slain. Osserye was I-slawe; & throug̃ that thyng, al the Iresshe of the  
 The Irish silently conspire, destroy castles, and kill men. lond stylylly sworne ham to-gyddyṛ ayeyns the Englysshe; wher̄ 12  
 throug̃ that, <sup>1</sup>castels yn many places weren̄ I-cast adouṛ, many  
 men̄ I-slawe, to grete perryll̄ to al the lond; & of many otheṛ  
 aduentures that betyddēn̄ aftyr that the kynges sone was lord of  
 Ireland, of whyche maystyṛ Geraud, ham & haṛ gestes leueth to 16  
 other that ham wrytte wold, & lust hadden̄ theṛ-to <sup>1</sup>. And as thys  
 An end maked of thys boke.

<sup>1-1</sup> destructis castris pluribus, gravi insulae universae perturbatione: non indigna memoratu singula, translato in filium regis jam regni dominio, sua suorumque gesta suis assignando scriptoribus, ad ulteriora simul et utiliora festinamus.—*Op.* v. 387-8.

---

*The unenglisht last Chapters.*

---

Thus ends Ch. 35 of Giraldus's 2nd Book of his *Expugnacio*. His Ch. 36 is our 60, pp. 142-7, with an added Vision of 'Prince John marking out the foundations of a church, with a large nave and a very small chancel.' His Ch. 37 is our 61, pp. 146-9. In his Ch. 38, he states how the Irish are to be conquerd: in Ch. 39, how they are to be governd. Mr. Dimock's side-notes to these two Chapters are:

Ch. 38. "In every expedition, the counsel of those ought to be followed, who are best acquainted with the country and manners

a parlement besyde Corke, thogh Tybaud Wauter *and* the meny A. D. 1185.  
of Corke, was y-Slayñ. Of the men of kynnaleyn, that So boldly in colloquio  
wentyn Into Myth, ther to take a pray, *and* ther weryn Slayñ prope Cor-  
thogh Willam le Petyte, and an C. hedys of ham broght to corcagiam, a  
Deuelyn // Of othyr hooly bodies, Patrike, Bryde, and Colmekil / Corcagien-  
at doun y-found, *and* by Ihoñ de Curcy were translated. Of sibus  
Hugh de lacy, that to trysty was vpon his Irysh-men, *And* by et Theo-  
traysone of ham was hedid at Dernagh // Of xiije knyghtes, baldi  
that vndyr Ihoñ de Curcy weryn Slayñ at a comynge out of Gualteri  
connaght; of the bolde yonge knyght, Roger the Powere, that familia  
wyth many of his, throw trayson, in Ossory was Slayñ; *And* ferro  
Throw that thyng, all the Irysh-men of the londe Pryuely Sworne peremptis.  
ham to-giddy ayeyñes the Englyssh-men; Wherthrow that, castellis Dernagh in  
in many Places weryn caste downe, *and* many men Slayñ, in Peril fercall.  
of al the londe. *And* of many othyr aduentures that by chance et ejusdem  
fell, aftyr that the kynges sonne was lorde of Irlande, the whych casus occa-  
Maystyr Geraud, ham and har gestis lewyth to othyr that ham sione,  
write wille, *and* luste haw therto; *And* as thus an ende makyth of clandestina  
this boke. quoque  
totius  
Hibernici  
populi in  
Anglos con-  
juratiōe.

**Et Sic finis est istius Libri.**

**Laus deo clementissimo.**

---

of the people. The great difference between French warfare, and that of Ireland and Wales [is]: In these countries, light-armed troops [are] more especially necessary. In any expedition into Ireland or Wales, the troops of the Welsh Marches [are] by far the best. In Irish warfare, archers [ought] to be united with the cavalry. The three parts of the island on this side the Shannon [ought] to be well incastellated; the other part won by degrees.

Ch. 39. The necessity of firm, severe, but moderate rulers. In time of peace, castles [ought] to be built, and roads to be

improved. The Irish, once fully subjected, [ought] to be forbidden the use of arms; [and] meanwhile not to be allowed to bear the axe. [They ought] to pay an annual tribute in gold or birds."

Giraldus's Third Book tells how he found and translated the Prophecies of Merlin of Celidon.

When John became King of England, Giraldus sent him a copy of his *Topographia* and *Expugnatio*, with a Proem or Dedicatory Letter printed in the Rolls edition, v. 405-411. It reminds John of Ireland, exhorts him not to forget it, the Golden Isle, in favour of England, the Silver one; says it will form a kingdom for one of his sons; warns him that he must leave no danger behind him in Ireland when he goes to recover the foreign possessions he has lost; calls on him to fulfil Henry II's pledges to Pope Adrian, that is, to exalt the Church in Ireland and pay Peter's pence; instances God's vengeance on the non-keeping of these pledges; says how miserable the state of the Irish Church is; and advises John to take an annual tribute of gold, birds, or trees, from the Irish in token of subjection. Lastly, Giraldus asks that a scholar may translate his books into French; gives Walter Map's opinion on his own talk and Giraldus's writings; and says that he (Giraldus) is now old, and 'desires only God's favour and the appreciation of his labours by posterity.'

---

pp. 144-5, lines 9-2 from foot. The side-note and Latin in the Rolls edition, v. 392, are:

Prevalence  
of law-  
suits.

Praeterea, quamquam hostilitatis instante procella, armatae militiae tempus ingruerit, non togatae, tanta tamen civilium causarum urgebat importunitas, ut miles veteranus non tam hoste foris, quam intus foro vexaretur.

---

As to the state of Ireland in 1515, see the document printed in my *Ballads from MSS.* (Ballad Soc.), p. 38-40.

# GLOSSARY

(MAINLY)

BY THOMAS AUSTIN.

- & (and), *an*, *a*, 2/3, 116/7; & noon, anon, 72/18.
- A*, *prep.* on, 12/17, 16/35; in, 44/8; by, 66/2.
- Abate*, *vb.* flutter the wings, 56/32. Used like *Bate*.
- Aboue*, *adv.* above, he was all a., had the upper hand, 120/3; abouen, 116/27; abow, 117/26, 121/3.
- Abydyng*e, *sb.* expectation, 111/33.
- Abydyng*e, *vb.* a. aftyr ham, waiting for them, 124/28.
- Adde*, *vb.* had, 68/2.
- A-fryght*, *pp.* frightened, afraid, 114/22.
- Agryse*, *pp.* terrified, 100/2.
- Agylte*, *vb.* sin, 88/1.
- Aleuth*, *num. adj.* eleven, 118/14. See opposite page.
- Allerformest*, foremost of all, 50/24; alther-formyst, 51/24.
- Allerleste*, least of all, 146/28; alltherleste, 147/28.
- Aller-next*, next of all, 12/33; alther-nexte, 13/34.
- Allience*, *sb.* alliance, allies, 73/27, 87/8.
- Allyees*, *sb.* allies, 72/27. Fr. *alliés*.
- Alonge*, *adv.* always, 54/29.
- Alout*, *adv.* all out, or? aloud, 104/12.
- Althyr*, 101/3,? either.
- Aly*, *adj.* holy, 42/36.
- Amaised*, *pp.* amayed, dismayed, 12/16; amayed, 16/31, 20/33, 56/5.
- Amonneschyd*, *vb.* admonished, warned, 57/13; amonessed, 93/10; amonested, 56/13, 92/10.
- An*, *prep.* on: an-heghe, on high, 112/34, an-hey, 113/34; an-hond, in hand, 74/17; an-hors, on horseback, 58/25, 100/28; an Iresshe, in Irish, 116/33.
- Anguysshes*, *sb.* anguishes, anxieties, 96/13; angwyschis, 97/13.
- Anguysshous*, *adj.* anxious, 104/8. O.Fr. *anguissus*.
- Anone ryght*, *adr.* straightway, 148/22; anoone-ryght, 82/2.
- Aplesid*, *pp.* a. of, pleased with, 37/35.
- Ar*, *pron.* their, 8/17. See *Har*.
- Ar*, *conj.* ere, 8/9, 22/23, 74/34; are, before, 9/10; before, 58/10.
- Ared*, *vb.* tell, declare, 97/25; arede, 96/26.
- Arere*, *vb.* lift up, stir up, 22/1; set right, heal, restore, 44/5; restore, rebuild, 106/9; areren, raise, 44/15; arered, raised, 30/16; arrere, 23/1.
- Arew*, *arow*, in a row, 71/13; a rewe, 70/13.
- Argh*, *adj.* timid, cowardly, 16/30, 114/6 (fainte, 115/6)<sup>1</sup>.
- Argly*, *adv.* timidly, in a cowardly way, 16/23 (fently, 17/23)<sup>1</sup>.
- Arreden*, *vb.* eared, ploughed, cultivated, 128/7; Erredyn, 129/7.
- Artrow*, *sb.* overtrow, mistrust, suspicion, 133/13; ortrow, 132/14.

<sup>1</sup> In all old words like *argh*, *arghly*, the reader should look on the opposite page for the Rawlinson MS. equivalent, which is generally later, the<sup>1</sup> for the Dublin ar[y]vel, 24/34, the Rawlinson has londide.

- Aryse**, *vb.* arise, rebel, 132/5; *arryse*, 133.
- Aryued**, *vb.* arrived, landed, 24/34.
- As**, *conj.* for *ac*, but, 4/2.
- Asquynt**, *adv.* asquint, aslant, obliquely, 94/20.
- Assemble**, *vb.* join battle, 24/15, 30/26.
- Assembly**, *vb.* assemble, 64/5.
- Asseth**, *sb.* satisfaction, penance, 86/23.
- Astage**, *sb.* hostage, 24/23.
- Astryf**, *adv.* astrife, emulously, with rivalry, 50/26.
- Atene**, *vb.* vex, irritate, 38/24.
- Ather**, *conj.* either, or, 100/3. Note pronunciation.
- A thre**, in three parts, 104/26; at thre, 67/19.
- Attyre**, *sb.* venom, 20/23, 102/27, 114/2.
- Auctorice**, *vb.* legalise, set in authority, 107/27 (avaunce, 106/27).
- Aurel**, *sb.* April, 77/28; aural, 76/28.
- A-waitede**, *vb.* watcht, expected, 2/19.
- Awayward**, *adv.* awayward, off the land, *i. e.* westwardly, 66/33; away, 130/19.
- Awreke**, *vb.* a. hym, awreak himself, avenge himself, 4/5.
- A yere**, *adv.* yearly, 66/2.
- Ayeyne**, *prep.* against, on the approach of, 130/2; *adv.* again, 130/3.
- Ayeyns**, *prep.* against, to meet, 54/13.
- Ayse**, *sb.* ease, 148/1.
- Bad**, *vb.* prayed, 28/11.
- Baghel**, *sb.* bagle, crosier, 122/13, 123/12; baghell, 122/12. L. *baculum*.
- Bale**, *sb.* sorrow, evil, 20/24.
- Baret**, *sb.* barrat, strife, battle, 146/23.
- Barnen**, *vb.* burnt, 54/4.
- Battes**, *sb.* bats, sticks, staves, 144/28; battis, 145/31.
- Becomlyche**, *adj.* becoming, comely, 76/14; becomyly, 102/20; becumlliche, 54/24.
- Becryed**, *vb.* cryed to, called on, 30/32, 46/20.
- Begetes**, *sb.* begets, gains, 81/15; beyetes, 80/15.
- Begynnyge**, *vb.* begin, 54/21.
- Be-heght**, *pp.* promised, 40/9; be-het, *vb.* promised, 18/34; behete, 28/19, 114/29.
- Behoud**, *sb.* behoof, benefit, 112/30.
- Behowaybyll**, *adj.* behovable, needful, suitable, 121/4; covenable, D.
- Belad**, *pp.* narrow b., treated them straitly or hardly, 40/21; bilad hym, led him, lived, 2/9; hard biladde, *vb.* treated hardly, 2/6; bylad, 41/22; by-ladde, conducted, bore, 54/12.
- Beleft**, *vb.* remained, 118/14; *pp.* remaining, left, 58/10.
- Belokene**, *pp.* shutin, 50/12; belokken, 51/12. See *Belouke*, N. E. D.
- Belyggynge**, *vb.* beleaguering, beleaguering, 104/5.
- Be-name**, *vb.* forbad, 31/9; be-nomen, *pp.* taken away, 60/34; byname, deprive of, 100/9.
- Berewid**, *vb.* bereft of, 45/5; berewys, bereave, *imper.*, 35/10.
- Berre**, *vb.* bear, 145/2.
- Besech**, *vb.* beseech, try to get, cast at, show to, 110/30 (malyngne agaynys, 111/30).
- Besete**, *vb.* beset, blockade, 48/16; *pp.* set, possess, 102/19; besette, 103/19.
- Be-taght**, *vb.* betook, gave, committed, entrusted, 86/14.
- Be-tak**, *vb.* accompanied, 20/18; be-take, 21/18; betaken, settled, arranged, 72/31; betoke, entrusted to, 108/27.
- Betheght**, *vb.* betook, gave to, 92/11; betoke, 93/11.
- Bethwene**, *prep.* between, 10/12.
- Blote**, *adj.* soft, marshy, wet, 122/3.
- Blywe**, *adv.* belive, quickly, 29/30.
- Bolnys**, *sb.* boldness, 111/35.
- Bolthenys**, *sb.* boldness, 75/15.
- Bostious**, *adj.* rough, boisterous, 149/17; boustious, 148/17.
- Bot**, *adj.* both, 106/12.
- Bot**, *conj.* but, unless, 68/13, 106/12; bot yf, unless, 78/30.
- Both**, *conj.* but, 14/34, 22/7, 82/25, 50/4; bott, 22/32; bot, 106/12.
- Boxome**, *adj.* obedient, loyal, non-rebellious, 32/29.
- Boxom-fastines**, *sb.* buxomfastness

- firm obedience, 62/18; buxumfast-nys, 63/18.
- Branden**, *vb.* burnt, 14/24; brandyn, 15; branten, 120/33.
- Brouken**, *vb.* brook, enjoy, hold, 34/13.
- Buryles**, *sb.* buryels, burials, graves, 37/21; (pute, pits, 36/18).
- Buttellerie**, *sb.* butlery, buttery, 62/27. O. Fr. *boutellerie*.
- By**, *vb.* be, 106/15.
- By**, *prep.* about, near, 15/6; by so, on these terms, 24/23; by forward, by agreement, 74/9; by-halues, besides, aside, 74/24; by so that, on the terms that, 24/23.
- Bygger**, *sb.* buyer, 40/2, 7.
- Byled**, *vb.* built, 128/10.
- Bynyn**, *vb.* benime, take away, 68/22.
- Byssay**, *adj.* busy, 99/18.
- Byth**, *vb.* beeth, are, 33/26.
- Cabilyz**, *sb.* cables, 13/12.
- Calange**, *sb.* challenge, claim, 21/1. O. Fr. *Calanger*.
- Campled**, *vb.* wrangled, contended, fought, 74/33; camplid, 75/33.
- Camplynges**, *sb.* wranglings, contests, battles, 126/13.
- Candrede**, *sb.* cantred, hundred, 56/21; cantred, 8/19, 12/33; a Cantrede is 'an hundret toun lond' (100 townlands or townships), 124/2.
- Castel**, *vb.* castle, fortify, 127/22; castely, 126/22; casteled, 128/3.
- Cee**, *sb.* see: Cee church, Cathedral, 37/31.
- Chamfaste**, *adj.* shamefast, 76/13.
- Chase**, *pp.* chosen, 124/12.
- Cheffar**, *sb.* trade, 12/7.
- Chek-toth**, *sb.* cheek-tooth, grinder, double tooth, 108/8.
- Chepmen**, *sb.* chapmen, 38/33.
- Cheuetayn**, *sb.* chieftain, 26/11.
- Chippe**, *sb.* ship, 13/13; chippis, ships, 13/6.
- Chippmen**, *sb.* shipmen, 13/10.
- Churchey**, *sb.* churchyard, 71/26; church-hay, 63/32.
- Clene**, *adv.* clean, quite, entirely, 146/7.
- Clenly**, *adv.* cleanly, quite, wholly, 121/3, 145/15; clenlych, 120/3.
- Clepynge**, *sb.* calling, call, 76/2.
- Clewe**, *vb.* cleft, clave, 31/34, 71/32.
- Clos**, *sb.* close, enclosed land, 10/5.
- Come**, *sb.* arrival, coming, 108/15, 120/30; comys, 109/15.
- Comerous**, *adj.* cumbrous, difficult to pass, 54/8.
- Comynly**, *adv.* in common, together, 34/33, 38/30.
- Condicones**, *sb.* 125/15; theves, 124/15.
- Conquestre**, *sb.* conquest, 56/22. O. Fr.
- Constytnicions**, *sb.* constitutions, laws, 64/26.
- Cornelis**, *sb.* crenelles, battlements, 16/31.
- Corpus domini**, *sb.* mass-wafer, 52/23.
- Coste**, *sb.* purpose (R.), 68/4, 74/17.
- Costes**, *sb.* coasting-vessels?, 80/5.
- Croice**, *sb.* cross, 36/29; cros, 37/29. O. Fr. *crois*.
- Croun**, *sb.* crown of the head, 42/27; croune, 42/24.
- Culuertnesse**, *sb.* falseness, villainy, 126/31.
- Cytteyns**, *sb.* citizens, 122/27. O. Fr. *citeien*; *citayn*.
- Dawes**, *sb.* days, out of d. = out of life, 34/10, 76/4.
- Defended**, *vb.* = defendeth, let us defend, *imper.*, 20/28.
- Defeuily**, *vb.* defoul, tread under foot, 35/29; defouly, 34/29.
- Dele**, *sb.* deal, part, 62/21.
- Deled**, *vb.* dealt, divided, 104/25.
- Delycion**, ? *sb.* daintiness, 98/13.
- Delycious**, *adj.* delicate, dainty, 99/14.
- Demyd**, *pp.* deemed, doomed, sentenced, 35/15.
- Dennysh**, 46/17; Danish.
- Derne**, *adj.* hidden, 18/30, 114/22.
- Dernely**, *adv.* secretly, privily, 78/8.
- Derward**, *adj.* dearworth, precious, 110/34; derwarthest, most valuable, 36/25.
- Destrued**, *pp.* destroyed, 106/10.
- Deue**, *adj.* deaf, 44/13.
- Deynously**, *adv.* disdainfully, 72/3.
- Didden**, *dydde*, *vb.* See *Do*.
- Do**, *vb.* put, 30/6, 38/34, 94/16; turn, 76/6; done hym on, set him on, 100/3; didde, *past t.* turned, 16/31; didden, set, 10/1; dydde, set, 70/7.

- Dobbe**, *vb.* dab, 94/13.  
**Dome**, *sb.* judgment, 34/14.  
**Dotous**, *adj.* doubtful, uncertain, 86/17; *doutos*, 87/17; *doutouse*, 24/13.  
**Doute**, *vb.* fear, 24/15.  
**Drawen**, *vb.* protract, lead, 50/4.  
**Dredlyche**, *adj.* dreadly, dreadful, terrible, 114/9.  
**Drent**, *vb.* drowned, 32/5.  
**Durke**, *adj.* dark, 50/9.  
**Durkness**, *sb.* darkness, 50/10.  
**Durre**, *sb.* door, 42/22.  
**Dyd**, *vb.* set, placed, 74/29. See *Do*.  
**Dynt**, *sb.* dint, stroke, 46/17.  
**Dysheryted**, *vb.* 40/20; disinherited.  
     **D** for *th*, 16/34.  
**Day**, *pron.* they, 10/19, 12/21, 24/10.  
**Droght**, *prep.* through, 12/24, 14/8, 18/9, 22/7.  
**I-Drow**, *pp.* thrown, 18/1.  
**Dynge**, *sb.* thing, 88/27.  
  
**Eche**, *vb.* increase, 146/4.  
**Edwyte**, *vb.* reprov'd, twitted, rebuked, 60/9.  
**Eft**, *adv.* after, 82/13, 88/26, 90/1  
*efte*, 108/29.  
**Eilde**, *sb.* old, age, 58/30.  
**Eldren**, (*adj.*)? *sb.* forefathers' (or ancestral), 38/17; *eldryn*, 39/17.  
**Eldrene**, *sb.* ancestors, 28/6, 7; *eldryn*, 29/6, 7.  
**Elf** (*fare*), 17/13; *half* (*fare*), 16/14; *elves'* doings.  
**Eme**, *sb.* eam, nephew, 31/14, 78/35; *emys*, 15/33, 101/15.  
**Enchesoun**, *sb.* occasion, cause, 88/2, 20/16.  
**Encembrement**, *sb.* encumberment, obstruction, annoyance, harm, 22/13.  
**Eneche**, *vb.* (? increase) *ineche*, *implant*, 92/1.  
**Engyn**, *sb.* art, contrivance, 18/28.  
**Ense**, *sb.* ends, 80/29.  
**Entre**, *sb.* entry, 54/6; *entrest*, 55/7.  
**Entredyte**, *vb.* interdict, lay under interdict, 68/15.  
**Enuy**, *sb.* envy, 20/19.  
**Enuyouse**, *adj.* envious, 114/6; *envyouse*, *emulous*, 100/2.  
**Er**, *adv.* ere, before, 120/29.  
**Erne**, *vb.* earn, mourn, 34/28.  
  
**Erne**, *sb.* eagle, 114/18.  
**Ers**, *sb.* ears, 15/24.  
**Erthe-weyes**, *sb.* ways under ground, 19/30.  
**Erth-hous**, *sb.* underground dwelling, 120/31.  
**Estren**, *adj.* eastern, east, 28/27.  
**Ette**, *vb.* ate, 89/22.  
**Eunynge**, *sb.* evening, equal, peer, 54/19.  
**Ewynocrystyn**, *sb.* fellow-christian, 89/11, 67/14.  
**Exstymacioun**, *sb.* suspicion, 129/14.  
     **O. Fr.** *exstimation*.  
**Eygne**, *sb.* eyes, 97/17.  
  
**Facon**, *sb.* falcon, 58/4; *faucoun gentel*, 56/30.  
**Fale**, *adj.* fele, many, 74/10, 86/4.  
**Falthyr**, *sb.* fautors, favorers, partisans, 79/7. **Fr.** *fauteur*.  
**Fantstones**, *sb.* fontstones, stone fonts, 64/33; *fantstonys*, 65.  
**Farcostes**, *sb.* far-coasters?, 80/5, 81/5.  
**Fawes**, *sb.* falls?, heavy things dropt, 90/2; *fawis*, 97/2.  
**Febelier**, *adj.* more feeble, 69/5.  
**Fele**, *adj.* many, 16/10.  
**Felony**, *sb.* villany, 102/3.  
**Ffer**, *adv.* *f.* within-yn nyght, far into the night, 16/9.  
**Ferd**, *sb.* host, army, 14/5.  
**Ferde**, *sb.* fear, 17/14.  
**Ferdnesse**, *sb.* fear, fright, 20/29, 38/27.  
**Ferly**, *adj.* strange, 16/29.  
**Ferly**, *adv.* wonderfully?, 16/12.  
**Ferly**, *adv.* fiercely, 17/11.  
**Ferth**, *num. adj.* fourth, 118/19.  
**Festnen**, *vb.* make firm, restore, 44/14.  
**Feynte**, *adj.* faint, idle, 115/6.  
**Feyre**, *adv.* far, 50/34.  
**Fikyllid**, *vb.* temporised, 145/9.  
**Fleted**, *vb.* floated, 116/26.  
**Fletes**, *sb.* fleets, 80/9; *flittes*, 81/9; *flot*, 126/23; *flytte*, 127/23.  
**Fleysly**, *adj.* fleshly, fleshy, 100/1.  
**Flittes**, *sb.* See *Fletes*.  
**Flote**, *sb.* fleet, herd of swine, 74/1.  
**Flowen**, *vb.* fled, 96/21.  
**Fobler**, *adj.* feebler, 68/6.  
**Foderes**, *sb.* deceivers, 148/3.

**Folk**, *adj.* † for foble, feeble, 50/15.  
**Folke-mele**, indiscriminately, 86/3.  
**Foolrede**, *sb.* fool's counsel, foolery, folly, 68/20; fooly, 69.  
**Foot-falle**, *vb.* prostrate oneself, 62/18.  
**For**, *conj.* in order that, 104/24.  
**Forcleue**, *vb.* cleft, 58/2; for-clew, 59/2.  
**Fore-lete**, *vb.* let go, 68/29.  
**For-hold**, *pp.* withheld, kept unburied, 108/14.  
**Forlese**, *vb.* forelost, lost, 54/11.  
**Formane**, *sb.* leader, 36/1; formene, front ranks, 30/33.  
**Forme**, *adj.* first, 64/15; formest, *super.*, 50/28; formyst, 51.  
**Forshape**, *pp.* misshapen, 130/25.  
**Forsoke**, *vb.* renounce, refuse, decline, 4/13, 78/17; for-sok, 72/16.  
**Forsoken**, *vb.* declined, 104/12.  
**Forswely**, *vb.* swallow up, 58/27.  
**Fort**, *conj.* till, 84/27, 126/11.  
**Fortelet**, *sb.* fortlet, 116/6.  
**Forth**, (before 'with') *adv.* forthwith, 20/5, 90/20, 104/32.  
**For-pane**, *conj.* Nat f notwithstanding, 4/1.  
**For-they**, *conj.* therefore, 73/22; for-thy, 72/23.  
**Forthmost**, *adj.* foremost, 16/4.  
**Forume**, *sb.* form, 39/12.  
**Forwarde**, *sb.* bargain, 10/12; agreement, 74/9, 108/30; forward-makynge, *m.* of agreements, 128/9.  
**Fourdyr**, *adv.* further, 15/25.  
**Franchise**, *sb.* freedom, 20/15.  
**Fresly**, *adv.* fiercely, 14/12, 35/34; fressely, 81/9.  
**Frightnes**, *sb.* fright, 16/15, 26.  
**Fryst**, *num.* first, 17/4, 31/33.  
**Fyf**, *num. adj.* five, 62/21; fywe, 63/21.  
**Fylthed(e)**, *sb.* filthhead, filthiness, 64/6, 65/6.  
**Fyne**, *sb.* fine, 66/10.  
  
**Galosis**, *sb.* gallows, 35/16.  
**Galyotz**, *sb.* pirates †, 22/32.  
**Garnesyde**, *pp.* garnished, fortified, 51/1. Fr. *garnir*.  
**Gentil**, *sb.* gentry, set, 101/17.  
**Gentryce**, *sb.* set, clan, 112/2.

**Gentrye**, *sb.* gentry, 100/18.  
**Gestes**, *sb.* deeds, 120/10.  
**Gettynges**, *sb.* gettings, gain, plunder, 26/34.  
**Girliche**, *adv.* terribly, 14/22 (? *adj.*).  
**Good**, *sb.* goods, 54/5.  
**Grad**, *vb.* cried out, 4/1.  
**Greped**, *vb.* griped, gripped, 126/26.  
**Grewid**, *vb.* grieved, pained, 109/9; grewid, *pp.* 39/25.  
**Grymly**, *adj.* dreadful, terrible, 59/13.  
**Gylte**, *sb.* fault, 40/8.  
**Gyued**, *vb.* gyved, fettered, 60/10; gywid, 61/10.  
  
**Half**, *sb.* side; ethere h., either side, 8/19; euerich h., every side, 4/16; euche h., each side, 5/18; hys h., his side, 24/32; oon h., one side, 22/25; a south h., on the south side, 30/16; on his moþer half, on his mother's side, 8/15; halue, *pl.* 100/21.  
**Halte**, *vb.* held, 64/10; holte, hold, 64/11.  
**Halowene**, *sb.* saints, 122/1; halwene, 44/11.  
**Hame**, *pron.* them, 4/12.  
**Hamlynge**, *adj.* ambling, 89/21.  
**Hand**, *sb.* other h., second hand, 78/17.  
**Har**, *pron.* their, 9/17, 10/20, 74/31, 120/30; hare, 31/14; theirs, 32/15.  
**Har**, *adv.* ere, sooner.  
**Hard**, *pp.* heard, 29/32.  
**Hardynes**, *sb.* hardness, boldness, 110/35.  
**Haris**, *pron.* theirs, 49/33; hars, 48/34.  
**Hauteyne**, *adj.* haughty, 76/16. O. Fr. *hautain*.  
**Haw**, *vb.* have, 34/7; hawydyn, had, 27/7.  
**Haye**, *sb.* hay, haw, churchyard, 63/32; 62/32.  
**Hedid**, *pp.* headed, beheaded, 151/8.  
**Heed**, *sb.* † head, 78/33; heeddes, heads, princes †, 34/28.  
**Heere**, *sb.* hair, hair-cloth, 42/5; here, 43/5.  
**Hegh**, *vb.* hight ('was callid'), 92/23.  
**Hegheste**, *adj.* highest ('host' 12/33), 13/33.  
**Heghlygh**, *adv.* highly, 90/25.  
**Helf far**, 16/14, *sb.* elves' doing.



- Helle**, *vb.* helde, 2/24.  
**Hellen**, *vb.* conceal, hide, 78/1.  
**Hent**, *vb.* received, 10/35; henten, grasp, seize, 56/33, 80/26.  
**Herbrowe**, *vb.* harbour, seek shelter, 66/6.  
**Here**, *pron.* their, 18/29.  
**Here**, *adv.* here, 32/10.  
**Herly**, *adv.* early, 70/7.  
**Herne**, *sb.* nook, corner, 116/7.  
**Herrer**, *sb.* herre, lord, 116/30.  
**Herth**, *sb.* heart, 2/8, 22/28, 50/20.  
**Herthly**, *adj.* earthly, 66/4.  
**Hertly**, *adv.* heartily, courageously, 52/2; hertely, 53/2.  
**Het**, *vb.* was named, 2/3.  
**Houde**, *sb.* heads, 14/17.  
**Hey**, *adj.* high, 57/29.  
**Heye**, *sb.* 70/27. See *Church-key*.  
**Heyth**, *adj.* high, noble, 22/32.  
**Hite**, *pron.* it, 25/20.  
**Hoft-sithes**, *adv.* oftentimes, 16/14.  
**Hold**, *adj.* whole, faithful, 60/14; holde, whole, healthy, 59/24.  
**Homward**, *adv.* take h., go home, 86/3.  
**Hoped**, *vb.* looked to, trusted in, had confidence in, 70/22.  
**Horynesse**, *sb.* filthiness, 66/27. Comp. *horowe*, foul, used by Chaucer, pronounced *horry* in Devon. H.  
**Host**, *sb.* army, 16/10, 11, 104/26, 144/2.  
**Host**, *adj.*? heat, next, highest, largest, 12/32.  
**Hostyngis**, *sb.* expeditions, armies, 17/14.  
**Hungrad**, *adj.* hungered, hungry, 116/8.  
**Hurtyng**, *sb.* hurting, hurt, 16/34.  
**Hym**, *pron.* him; hym priddesom, comp. Gr. *αὐτὸς ἄριστος*, 14/1, 32/20.  
**Hyrynge**, *adj.* hireling, waged, 22/31.  
  
**Iappynge**, *sb.* japing, jesting, 54/26; Iappynge, 55/27.  
**I-bansheth**, *pp.* banished, 24/1; y-banshet, 25/1.  
**I-bydde**, *pp.* abided, stayd, 62/8.  
**I-corne**, *pp.* chosen, 22/18.  
**I-deleth**, *pp.* dealt, divided, 66/19.  
**I-destrued**, *pp.* destroyed, 84/32.  
**I-dobbed**, *pp.* dubbed, 94/13.  
  
**I-drow**, *pp.* thrown, d = th, 18/1.  
**I-dyght**, *pp.* prepared, 58/19.  
**I-endeth**, *pp.* ended, 22/16.  
**I-flow**, *pp.* fled, 46/27.  
**I-fulled**, *pp.* baptized, 64/33; yfullid; 65/33.  
**I-garnset**, *pp.* garnished, fortified, 50/1.  
**I-hard**, *pp.* heard, 28/32.  
**I-heded**, *pp.* beheaded, 150/7.  
**I-helled**, *pp.* iheled, covered, 10/21.  
**I-herberged**, *pp.* filled, stowed, 108/34; I-herbergide, 109/34.  
**I-herberowide**, *pp.* harboured, sheltered, 63/31; I-horberowed, 62/31.  
**I-hodet**, *pp.* hooded, 132/28.  
**I-hokred**, *pp.* insulted, 140/16.  
**I-horied**, *pp.* defiled, 188/32.  
**I-hosted**, *pp.* hosted, quartered, 16/9.  
**I-lacet**, *pp.* laced, 10/17.  
**Illy**, *adv.* in an ill way, 78/7.  
**Ilyche**, *adv.* alike, 66/19.  
**I-meygnet**, *pp.* mingled, 102/27.  
**Inamliche**, *adv.* namely, especially, 16/28.  
**In-leyde**, *pp.* laid in, 37/21.  
**I-primeined**, *pp.* catechized, 64/32, 65/32.  
**I-quenyted**, *pp.* pleased, 36/35.  
**I-retted**, *pp.* charged with, 68/26.  
**I-roted**, *pp.* rooted, 20/27, 112/3, 148/18.  
**I-sacred**, *pp.* sacred, consecrated, 132/28.  
**I-scomfyte**, *pp.* discomfited, 116/20.  
**I-shent**, *pp.* ruined, 68/28, 88/16.  
**I-shwerne**, *pp.* sworn, 24/26.  
**I-slawe**, *pp.* slain, 80/13.  
**I-stablet**, *pp.* established, 64/27.  
**I-storbet**, *pp.* disturbed, 124/34.  
**I-suywed**, *pp.* issued, shot, 116/9.  
**I-swewed**, *pp.* showed, 62/12.  
**I-told**, *pp.* reckoned, 2/4.  
**I-wepned**, *pp.* armed, 80/11.  
**I-worth**, *pp.* become, 102/6, 148/14.  
**I-wyted**, *pp.* blamed, 8/13.  
  
**Kappe**, *sb.* 46/17; lappe, R. 47/17.  
**Karue**, *vb.* k. of, cut off, 14/23.  
**Kene**, *adj.* keen, fierce, sharp, 112/33.  
**Kepyng**, *sb.* keeping, watch, guard, 53/10; kypyng, 52/9.

- Kernel**, *sb.* battlement, 10/28.  
**Knyghten**, *sb.* knights', 92/15.  
**Kynde**, *sb.* kind, nature; of k., by nature, naturally, 18/27; Through k. of Troy, Through our Trojan origin, 22/26.  
**Kynde**, *adj.* natural, own, 6/27.  
**Kyndly**, *adj.* kindly, natural, 76/16.  
**Kyndly**, *adv.* kindly, naturally, by birth, 22/28; kyndlyoh, 22/24.  
**Kynly**, *adv.* by kin, by birth, 23/24. See *Kynally*.
- Laked**, *vb.* enjoyd, 132/29; lakyd, 133/29.  
**Large**, *adj.* bounteous, generous, 25/2; largh, 24/1.  
**Laser**, *sb.* lazar, leper, 44/13.  
**Lastes**, *sb.* faults, deceits, 102/21.  
**Latest**, *adj.* last in place, 52/1.  
**Lede**, *adj.* folk, 4/24; leed, 64/18.  
**Lef**, *adj.* dear, 108/8; lefe, 111/34.  
**Lered**, *adj.* learned, 42/2; lerid, 48/2.  
**Leth**, *vb.* let, hindered, 52/7; leth, allowed, causd, 64/5.  
**Lette**, *sb.* let, hindrance, 94/5.  
**Leue**, *adj.* dear, 108/6.  
**Leue**, *vb.* leave, omit, 108/10.  
**Leuet**, *vb.* loved, 118/35.  
**Lewed**, *adj.* lewd, uneducated, vulgar, 42/2; lewid, 48/2.  
**Lewidly**, *adv.* lewdly, wickedly, 47/30.  
**Leyden**, *vb.* leyden on, laid on, attacked, 96/2; leydyn, 97/2.  
**Lif**, *adj.* lief, pleasing, 8/22.  
**Lodderly**, *adv.* wickedly, 22/33.  
**Lodesmane**, *sb.* pilot, leader, 22/21; 36/28.  
**Loge**, *sb.* lodge, wattled hut, 10/3.  
**Loghe**, *adj.* low, short, 88/10.  
**Loly**, *adj.* grim, terrible, 40/8, 58/12.  
**Lolych**, *adj.* lovely, affable, 103/18; louelyche, 102/18.  
**Lome**, *adv.* often, frequently, 44/36.  
**Lost**, *sb.* loss, 112/23; loste, 146/12; lostes, 8/2; lostis, 97/24; Lostys, 9/2.  
**Loth**, *adj.* hateful, unpleasant, 14/6, 30/19.  
**Lotles**, *adj.* buxom, obedient, 114/4.  
**Lout**, *vb.* l. ham, lout themselves, do obeisance, 44/26.  
**Lowe**, *sb.* love, 131/14.
- Lych**, *sb.* like, body, 88/26; lyche, 89.  
**Lyddere**, *adj.* lither, bad, wicked, 44/6, 68/7; lyder, 32/14.  
**Lyddyryly**, *adv.* litherly, wickedly, 46/30.  
**Lyddernysse**, *sb.* litherness, wickedness, 76/29.  
**Lygne**, *adj.* gentle?, 102/17.  
**Lyket**, *vb.* was liked, pleasd, 34/14.  
**Lyme**, *sb.* limit, bond?, 62/18.  
**Lyue**, *sb.* life, 82/32.
- Manequelleres**, *sb.* mankillers, 125/16.  
**Maner**, *sb.* manner; many m. metes, many kind of meats, 62/28; manners, politeness, 22/10.  
**Mane-shipe**, *sb.* manship, courtesy, 4/33; manshype, 70/12.  
**Manly**, *adv.* in a manly way, 24/6.  
**Manred**, *sb.* homage, 56/20.  
**Man-shyply**, *adv.* worshipfully, reverently, 66/22.  
**Manslughtres**, *sb.* manslaughterers, 124/16.  
**Mansynge**, *sb.* cursing, excommunication, 120/17.  
**Marche**, *sb.* march, border, 72/18; 146/31.  
**Mayny**, *sb.* 115/22. See *Meigne*.  
**Me**, *pron.* men (comp. German *man*), one, they, 16/5, 24/14, 32/27, 42/10, 70/33.  
**Meet-yeuer**, *sb.* meat-giver, 54/25; met-yeuer, 112/36. Comp. *metegavel*.  
**Meigne**, *sb.* household troops, 22/18; menny, 79/28; mennye, 79/13; meny, 115/10; meygnees, 66/5; meyne, 26/8; meynne, 39/5; meyngne, 27/9. O. Fr. *meignee*, *meyne*.  
**Mekely**, *adv.* humbly, kindly, 48/2.  
**Membres**, *sb.* manly m., manly members, privy parts, 44/18.  
**Merres**, *sb.* meres, boundaries, 33/17.  
**Meste**, *adv.* most, 42/7.  
**Mesury**, *sb.* misery, 43/15.  
**Meteful**, *adj.* moderate, 113/24. See *Methefull*.  
**Methe**, *sb.* moderation, 98/12.  
**Methefull**, *adj.* moderate, 112/24.  
**Methelyche**, *adj.* moderate, 70/18;

- methlych, 98/28; metlych, 76/15; metlyche, 98/10; middle-sized.
- Mich**, *adj.* much, large, 84/27; mich yuell, much or great evil, leprosy, 82/7.
- Modelyng**, *sb.* meddling, 56/18.
- Mone**, *sb.* moan, complaint, 28/23.
- Morowenyng**, *sb.* morning, 82/21.
- Most**, *vb.* must, could, 40/22.
- Mostdele**, *adv.* mostdeal, mostly, 16/1.
- Mostwhat**, *adv.* mostly, for the most part, 88/17.
- Mother-church**, *sb.* cathedral, 36/29.
- Motyng**, *sb.* mooting, pleading, disputing, 144/29.
- Mych**, *adj.* large, 56/29, 74/1; myche, 74/2.
- Myght & mayn**, might & main, 116/15.
- Mynyed**, *vb.* reminded, warned, 74/29, 84/25.
- Mys-byfelle**, *vb.* misbefell, fell amiss, 124/15; mys-be-felle, 125/16.
- Mysdone**, *vb.* misdo, 101/32.
- Myse-lyokenys**, *sb.* mislikeness, strange shape (a wolf-woman), 131/25.
- Myssayse**, *sb.* miscease, 40/5. O. Fr. *meisais*.
- Myssayse**, *adj.* misc eased, 114/23; myssaysid, 115/22.
- Na**, *adv.* not, 112/2.
- Name**, *sb.* name, 6/33.
- Name**, *vb.* took, 6/12; name, 2/22, 23; n. an hand, 72/24; namen, 80/4; n. sekernesse, took surety, 74/8.
- Namely**, *adv.* especially, 52/17, 66/4.
- Namy**, *vb.* name, 130/10.
- Narow**, *adv.* narrowly, closely, 40/21; narowe, 4/19; narrow, 41/22, 97/10.
- Naroweis**, narrow ways, 81/26.
- Nas**, *vb.* ne was, was not, 16/21, 26/21, 72/16, 114/8.
- Nat forthy**, *conj.* notwithstanding, nevertheless, 76/20, 77/22.
- Nathales**, *conj.* nevertheless, 78/10.
- Neb**, *sb.* (? nose), face, *vultus*, 98/11.
- Neght**, *adv.* nigh, nearly, 26/13.
- Nembre**, *sb.* number, 101/22; nembre, 100/23.
- Ner**, *vb.* ne were, were not, 30/31, 100/8.
- Neue**, *sb.* nephew, 14/33. See *eme*.
- Neuer** (ne were), *vb.* should never be, 121/18; neuere, 120/18.
- Never no more**, 48/31.
- Neyght**, *adv.* nigh, near, 74/16.
- Nobelych**, noblych, *adv.* nobly, 85/29, 84/29.
- Noon-dayes**, *sb.* noonday, 50/32.
- North**, by n., to the north of, 70/26.
- Nuy**, *sb.* noy, vexation, affliction, 90/7. Comp. *noxia*.
- Nyst**, ne wist, knew not, 4/29.
- Nythe**, *sb.* a nythe = at night, 72/33.
- O**, *num.* one, 106/12; oo, 89/26, 106/12.
- O**, *prep.* of, 108/34.
- Of**, *adv.* off, 12/11, 14/23, 32/4, 74/32.
- Oftere**, *adv.* oftener, 54/22.
- Oke**, *vb.* ached, pained, 108/9.
- Omost**, omyste, *adv.* overmost, uppermost, 106/1, 107/1.
- Ond**, *sb.* hatred, malice, 110/30; onde, 111/30.
- Onful**, *adj.* ondfull, malicious, 102/24; onfull, 108/24.
- Onper**, *prep.* under, 6/31.
- Opyn**, *adj.* open, uncovered, 42/22.
- Ordeynly**, *adv.* well o. = in good order, 46/12.
- Ortrow**, *sb.* overtrow, mistrust, suspicion, 128/14, 132/14; artrow, 133.
- Ost**, *adj.* burnt?, 50/2.
- Ostmen**, *sb.* hostmen, soldiers, 82/23.
- Ostyng**, *sb.* hosting, expedition, 16/14; see *Hostyngis*.
- Oper**, *conj.* other, or, 24/6.
- Other**, *adj.* second, 50/29, 76/12, 88/8.
- Ouerd[r]ede**, *vb.* ouerdrede, over-dreaded, 14/20.
- Ouergoste**, *vb.* goest beyond, 38/17.
- Ouer-hand**, *sb.* upperhand, superiority, 34/6, 50/11, 106/3, 118/23.
- Ouersaille**, *vb.* sail over, upset?, 16/12.
- Ouerthrowen**, *vb. pass.* be prostrated, 62/21.
- Ouer-truste**, *sb.* overboldness, presumption, 22/10. Comp. *Overhope*.
- Oure**, *pron.* ours, 24/7, 96/15.
- Out-chese**, *vb.* choose out, 34/8.
- Out-commyn**, *adj.* come from foreign parts, 12/29; out-comen, 18/5.
- Out-tak**, *pp.* outtaken, except, 122/8.

- Owne**, *adj.* = own house, tent, 62/31.  
**Owre**, *prep.* over, 180/2.  
**Ows**, *pron.* us, 22/3, 30.
- Paas**, *sb.* pass, 104/22; pas, 104/25;  
*pasce*, 55/9.  
**Panetrye**, *sb.* pantry, 62/27. Fr.  
*paneterie*.
- Pany**, *sb.* penny, 92/5.  
**Paralys**, *adj.* paralysed folk, 44/14.  
**Parlement**, *sb.* conference, 6/21, 18/11,  
 72/31. O. Fr. *parlement*.
- Party**, *sb.* part, side, 110/1.  
**Party arms**, arms vertically divided,  
 10/4.  
**Pelfre**, *sb.* pilfer, plunder, 52/8. O. Fr.  
*pelfrer*.
- Pledynge**, *sb.* suing, 112/20.  
**Plenary**, *adv.* fully, openly, 31/27.  
**Pleneneden**, *vb.* sported, 74/18; pleydyn,  
 75.  
**Plente**, *sb.* generosity, 102/31.  
**Plate**, *sb.* plate, 46/10.  
**Poere**, *sb.* power, O. Fr. 48/11.  
**Postes**, *sb.* pillars, supports, 120/6.  
**Powere**, *sb.* forces, 2/22, 4/17.  
**Frayes**, *sb.* preys, booty, 80/1.  
**Frayes-takyng**, *sb.* taking of booty,  
 78/27; pray-takyng, 118/11.  
**Fraye**, *vb.* prey, plunder, 80/3, 23;  
*preedyn*, plundered, 81/3.  
**Presons**, *sb.* prisoners, 54/5, 15.  
**Primseine**, *vb.* 'sign with the cross,  
 make a catechumen,' 64/32.  
**Priuisant**, *adj.* foreseeing †, 80/28.  
**Prout**, *prout*, *adj.* proud, 22/5, 38/20.  
**Prow**, *vb.* prove, 85/5.  
**Frutter**, *adj.* prouder, 56/7.  
**Pullid**, *vb.* plundered, robbed, 145/9.  
**Pullyng**, *sb.* pilling, plundering, 112/  
 21.  
**Purusynge**, *adj.* provident, prudent,  
 98/21.  
**Pute**, *sb.* pit, 36/18.  
**Pylfre**, *sb.* pilfer, plunder, pillage, 80/4,  
 114/24. O. Fr. *pelfrer*.  
**Pynsynge**, *sb.* affliction, 88/6.
- Queller**, *sb.* killer, 44/5.  
**Queme**, *vb.* please, satisfy, 54/30, 98/15.  
**Queyntysse**, *queyntysse*, *sb.* cunning,  
 craft, 98/22, 99/22. O. Fr. *quointise*.
- Quethene**, *vb.* overcome R., 44/15.  
**Queynt**, *adj.* cunning, sly, wily, 26/1,  
 98/21; quent, 27/1; queynth, 128/2.  
**Quyte**, *adj.* quit, clear, free, 96/20.  
**Quyppen**, *pp.* free, clean away, 80/  
 27.
- Raas**, *sb.* race, rush, 16/12.  
**Radyr**, *adv.* rather, more willingly,  
 7/13; earlier, before, 91/20.  
**Raght**, *vb.* raught, reeked, 32/9.  
**Ran**, *vb.* r. to harme, 112/26.  
**Rascayll**, *sb.* rascal, rabble, 50/21.  
 O. Fr. *rascayle*.  
**Rathe**, *adv.* soon, 24/29, 84/1; rather,  
 sooner, 28/23, 68/14; before, 90/20,  
 130/4.  
**Rather**, *adj.* earlier, previous, original,  
 86/4, 88/2.  
**Raunceoun**, *sb.* ransom, 46/29.  
**Rebuked**, *vb.* repulsed, checked, 34/34.  
**Recet**, *sb.* refuge, harbour, 18/29,  
 30/28, 56/5; recette, 19/29, 31/28.  
**Recheste**, *vb.* reekest, 108/9.  
**Bede**, *sb.* counsel, 10/18, 68/33.  
**Remewid**, *vb.* removed, 147/13.  
**Bere**, *vb.* rear, raise, exalt, 46/2; *rerid*,  
 took, captured, lifted, 107/30.  
**Rescewyd**, *vb.* received, 123/27.  
**Reue**, *vb.* rob, 114/3; *rew*, 115/3.  
**Reuer**, *sb.* riever, robber, 112/21.  
**Reut**, *sb.* ruth, pity, 8/1; *reuth*, 22/34,  
 54/18.  
**Reuthful**, *adj.* ruthless, 32/23.  
**Reuyng**, *sb.* rieving, plundering, 144/  
 31; *rewyng*, 145/25; *reyuyng*,  
 145/32.  
**Rewe**, *vb.* rue, regret, 146/1.  
**Robbed**, *vb.* plundered, 80/23.  
**Rodes**, *sb.* r. crucyfyed, crucifixes,  
 122/1.  
**Roghly**, *adv.* r. lokyng, rough looking,  
 88/9.  
**Row**, *adv.* r. lokyng, rough looking,  
 89/9. A. S. *rāw*.  
**Ruthlyng**, *sb.* rattling, 16/13.  
**Rychesshe**, *sb.* riches, 96/24. Fr.  
*richesse*.  
**Bygge**, *sb.* back, 58/2.  
**Ryght**, *vb.* r. vp, raise up, 44/3; set  
 up again, restore, 86/4.  
**Ryuely**, *adv.* especially †, 128/12.

- Sallets**, *sb.* sallets, light helmets, 11/24.
- Sam-crysp**, *adj.* somewhat curled, 98/11; **sam-roed**, *adj.* somewhat ruddy, 54/27; **same rede**, 89/8; **saun-rede**, 88/8. A. S. *sam*, half.
- Sawe**, *vb.* saw, 49/6, 146/11.
- Sawe**, *prep.* save, except, 18/21, 54/10.
- Sawe**, *vb.* save, 78/6; **sawit**, saved, 4/23.
- Schavngc**, *sb.* change, 51/6.
- Scomfited**, *pp.* discomfited, 117/19.
- Screwid**, *adj.* shrewd, cursed, bad, evil, 69/6.
- See way**, *seaway* (comp. highway, roadway), 80/3.
- Seko**, *adj.* sick, 66/13.
- Sekernesse**, *sb.* security, 74/8; **syke[r]-nesse**, 50/7.
- Sekiritease**, *sb.* securities, bonds, 6/22.
- Selcouth**, *adj.* various, 28/33; wonderful, 44/11, 120/1, 126/13.
- Selth**, *sb.* happiness, benefit, 50/8, 92/18; success, 98/23.
- Selue**, *adj.* same, 100/18.
- Selyly**, *adv.* happily, 42/32.
- Semblant**, *glad s.*, 98/12; *sterne s.*, 98/27; *fayr s.*, 102/18; **semblant**, 112/36; look, countenance.
- Senne**, *sb.* synod, 120/15.
- Senthe**, *adj.* seventh, 58/30; **Senfte**, 59/29.
- Seysyne**, *sb.* seisin, possession, 82/12.
- Sheldrun**, *sb.* shields, 31/29.
- Shendahype**, *sb.* injury, harm, 114/3; **shenshipp**, 115/3.
- Sho**, *pron.* she, 4/1.
- Shorthlych**, *adv.* shortly, presently, 114/22.
- Shroue**, *vb.* *int.* confessed, 180/23.
- Shyrth**, *sb.* shirt, 42/5.
- Sill**, *vb.* sell, 39/34. See *Syllene*.
- Sitè**, *sb.* city, 32/17, 18.
- Sithe**, *sb.* times, 26/6.
- Skyer**, *sb.* squire, 8/32, 33.
- Slaght**, *sb.* slaughter, 14/16, 20/28, 116/36, 188/32.
- Slaked**, *vb.* slacked, failed, 48/24.
- Sleghtly**, *adv.* silyly, 68/3.
- Sleghtes**, *sb.* contrivances, 128/13.
- Sleghtlych**, *adv.* craftily, 128/9; **sleghtly**, 144/17.
- Slouedynce**, *vb.* slew, 39/8.
- Smert**, *adj.* smart, sharp, rough; **smert lond**, rough wild land, 128/29.
- Smertly**, *adv.* smartly, vigorously, 104/33; **smyrtyly**, 106/33.
- Smyth**, *vb.* smite, 24/12; *pt.* smote, 106/35.
- Snel**, *adj.* quick, active, 74/27.
- Snellych**, *adv.* quickly, 82/3.
- Soine**, *adv.* soon, 60/11.
- Soldrys**, *sb.* shoulders, 89/11.
- Solempnlych**, *adv.* solemnly, 90/25.
- Soth**, *adj.* sooth, true, 54/1.
- Sortelych**, *adv.* shortly, 98/14; **Sortely**, *adv.* shortly, 149/22.
- Sorynesse**, *sb.* sorriness, soreness, sorrow, 110/1, 112/23.
- Sparcs**, *sb.* battle-axe, 88/7; **sparris**, 17/12. See *Sparth*.
- Sparth**, *sb.* battle-axe, 74/11, 26, 33; **sparthes**, 16/13.
- Spendynge**, *sb.* spending, money, 78/27.
- Spourges**, *sb.* spurge, thing to get rid of, scourge, 112/3. Comp. O. Fr. *espourger*.
- Spousbrych**, *sb.* spousebreach, adultery, 102/23.
- Spousehede**, *spoushode*, *sb.* wedded state, 64/30.
- Sproty**, *adj.* thin, small, 54/28. Comp. *Sprot*, sprout, splinter.
- Stabil**, *vb.* establish, confirm, 69/29; stable, 68/30.
- Staluarthly**, *adv.* stalwartly, sturdily, 116/1.
- Stalwardnesse**, *sb.* stalwartness, strength, sturdiness, 52/2; **stalwardnesse**, 54/20.
- Sted**, *sb.* stead, place, state, 22/35; 'state,' 23/35.
- Stordy**, *adj.* sturdy, 118/33; **stordyer**, 116/2.
- Storkes**, *sb.* storks, 28/24.
- Strange**, *adj.* strong, 54/8.
- Streynth**, *vb.* strength, strengthen, 68/30.
- Streynth**, *sb.* strength, force, meaning, 90/29, 96/14.
- Streyntnesse**, *sb.* strongness, strength, 94/24; **streyntnys**, 95/24.
- Stronge**, *adj.* strong, stormy, 66/33.

- Stronge, adv.** strongly, greatly, 4/3.  
**Styffly, adv.** strivingly (1 for 'styffly'), 26/29. See *Styffly*.  
**Styd, sb.** stead, place, 42/5; stydde, 42/6; styddes, places, 50/11.  
**Styffly, adv.** strongly, valiantly, 80/8, 104/31.  
**Stylly, adv.** stilly, in secret, 46/19, 150/12.  
**Stynte, vb.** stopped, 111/30; stynt, 112/30.  
**Suget, adj.** subject, 24/21; subyeet, 26/33; subyett, 26/21. O. Fr. *Suget*.  
**Surnesse, sb.** sureness, security, 51/7.  
**Surtey, swrte, sb.** surety, 75/9. Fr. *Sûreté*.  
**Sybbe, sb.** relation, 64/29.  
**Syblynges, adv.** kinwise, with relatives, 102/23.  
**Sybrede, sb.** relationship, 42/11.  
**Sydlynge, adv.** sidling, obliquely, 94/19.  
**Sygge, vb.** say, 54/18, 98/20.  
**Sykernesse, sb.** security, 50/7. See *Sekernesse*.  
**Sykyrlychest, adv.** most securely, 68/34.  
**Syllene, vb.** sell, 38/32, 40/5.  
**Syller, sb.** seller, 40/1.  
  
**Talent, sb.** desire, wish, 6/25.  
**Tanked, pp.** thanked, 14/19.  
**Tene, sb.** tene, hatred, 4/12.  
**Tened, pp.** grieved, vexed, 4/3.  
**Tethynges, sb.** tithings, tithes, 66/1.  
**Thare, conj.** there = where, 82/18.  
**Tharmes, sb.** entrails, intestines, 88/4.  
**That, adv.** ? read *thar*, 2/24, 65/5.  
**Thay, dem.** those, 80/12, 14, 90/26, 116/3; they, the, 97/14.  
**Theghe, conj.** though, 18/27, 32/9.  
**Ther, conj.** where, 32/8, 57/30, 128/4; ther-to-for, *adv.* before, 63/29.  
**Thewes, sb.** qualities, 16/28, 90/34.  
**Thewis, sb.** thieves, 81/30.  
**Thedynges, sb.** tiding, 10/7; thythyngis, 11/7, 35/31; tythynges, 6/15.  
**this, adj.** these, 21/29.  
**Tho, conj.** when, 4/9.  
**Tho, prep.** to, 62/19.  
**Thought, conj.** though, 15/31, 32/7.  
  
**Tholle, vb.** thole, endure, suffer, 4/20; polled, 42/3, 118/24; tholleth, sufferd, 38/15; tholy, *infm.* 40/5.  
**Tholmode, adj.** forbearing, 98/15.  
**Thondred, sb.** thunder, 58/28.  
**porwe, ?** go through with it, 28/12.  
**Thre, num.** a thre, in three parts, 66/20; at thre, 67/20; tre, 14/5.  
**Thretynges, sb.** threatening, 60/9; trefynges, 70/9.  
**priddesum, adj.** third, 14/1; thryd-some, 32/20; thyrdesum, 15/2.  
**purleth, vb.** thirleth, pierceth, 112/5.  
**Thus, from t.** = from this, thence, 60/15.  
**Thwey, num.** two, 12/35.  
**To, adv.** too, 54/26, 82/3.  
**To, art.** the, 10/27.  
**Toght, vb.** thought, 16/25, 18/7.  
**To-hakked, vb.** hakt to pieces, 82/2.  
**Toke, vb.** reacht (to the knee), 116/27.  
**Told, vb.** reckoned, 60/8; Moch told by ham-self, thought much of themselves, 148/3; tolde, thought, 94/1, 96/25, 97/24.  
**Tollid, pp.** sufferd, 39/15.  
**Ton, sb.** town, 12/33; ton land, town-land, division of parish, 124/2.  
**Toun londe, sb.** townland, township, division of parish, 125/2.  
**Tre, adj.** three, 14/5.  
**Trewage, sb.** tribute, 114/29; truage, 60/15. O. Fr. *treuage*.  
**Trogh, prep.** through, 22/6, 26/1, 62/18; troghe, 20/24; troght, 28/29.  
**Trukked, vb.** trucked, was bartered?, 48/9.  
**Trywly, adv.** truly, 12/27.  
**Turnet to, vb.** turn to, 78/32.  
**Turves, sb.** turves, turfs, 30/17.  
**Twenty, num.** twenty, 50/28.  
**Tynge, sb.** things, 24/14; thing, 28/8; notynges, nothing, 16/5, 20/9.  
**Tynke, vb.** think, 6/26; tynken, 22/4.  
**Tywesday, tywesdaye, tywysday, tywysday, sb.** Tuesday, 98/1, 99/1, 2.  
  
**Vanhope, sb.** wanhope, despair, 57/5.  
**Vend, vb.** wend, 54/15.  
**Vepne, sb.** weapon, 110/24.  
**Vickydly, adv.** wickedly, 53/35.  
**Vncharged, vb.** unloaded, 10/2.

- Vndedde**, *vb.* undid, ruined, 114/4; vndid, 115/4. See *Vndo*.  
**Vnderfonge**, *vb.* receive, 62/19; vndrefyng, 4/32, 8/1; vndryfonge, received, 9/1.  
**Vndo**, *vb.* destroy, ruin, 20/6, 22/4, 84/11, 94/32.  
**Vndrestondesth**, *vb.* understand ye, *imper.* 20/15.  
**Vneuenly**, *adj.* uneven, unequal, inferior, 30/25.  
**Vnhap**, *sb.* mishap, 56/5.  
**Vnhele**, *sb.* misfortune, 126/12.  
**Vnkede**, *adj.* strange, 20/20, 24/28; vnkylde, 31/6, 35/2.  
**Vnkyndely**, *adv.* unnaturally, 87/18.  
**Vnmercyably**, *adv.* unmercifully, mercilessly, 55/1. Comp. O. Fr. *merciable*.  
**Vnmeasurable**, *adv.* unmeasurably, beyond measure, 54/26; vnmeasurably, 55/26.  
**Vnmetly**, *adv.* unmeetly, immoderately, 118/33.  
**Vnnowmmerabill**, *adj.* innumerable, 19/15.  
**Vnryght**, *sb.* wrong, injustice, 86/18; vnryght, 112/32.  
**Vnsikere**, *adj.* unsure, 10/2.  
**Vnsurnes**, *sb.* unsureness, insecurity, 51/8.  
**Vnwardly**, *adj.* unwary, ignorant, 52/14.  
**Vnwarly**, *adv.* unwarily, unexpectedly, 78/9.  
**Vnwemmed**, *pp.* unstained, undefiled, 44/7, 92/4; vnwemyd, 93/3.  
**Vpon**, *prep.* from, against, 106/32.  
**Vp-berid**, *pp.* raised up, 13/2.  
**Vptake**, *vb.* succour, help, support, 92/3.  
**Vreke**, *vb.* wreak, avenge, 145/8.  
**Vs-self**, ourselves, 22/1.  
**Vyrchip**, *vb.* worship, 43/20.  
**Vyrchipp**, *sb.* worship, 5/32.  
  
**Wanhope**, *sb.* despair, 17/29, 32/12.  
**Wanhoply**, *adj.* desperate, 88/6.  
**Warliere**, *adv.* more warily, 12/19.  
**Waryr**, *adv.* more cautiously, 13/19.  
**Warytres**, *sb.* cursed trees, gallows, 34/16; 'galosis,' 35/16.  
  
**Wax**, *vb.* grew, turned, became, 2/7; arose, grew up, 26/22.  
**Wayte**, *vb.* wait, expectation, 110/33.  
**Weochene**, *vb.* move, take, 36/31. A. S. *weogan*: comp. weigh anchor.  
**Wel**, *adv.* well, quite, 52/13; frankly, 78/30; much, 78/32; very, 2/11.  
**Wentene**, *vb.* think, say!, 106/8.  
**Wenyng**, *sb.* whining, mourning, 54/17.  
**Wepne**, *sb.* weapon, out of w. = out of harness, when not fighting, 54/31; wepyn, 55/31.  
**Wepne**, *vb.* weapon, arm, 50/27; weppen, 16/32; wepyn, 17/30.  
**Wer**, *vb.* war, 'wer the fight,' 10/27; were, 11/28; weren, *inf.* 82/16; werret, 3/6; werry, *inf.* 8/11; werryyn, 83/16.  
**Were**, *sb.* war, 125/32.  
**Weued**, *sb.* altar, 42/26. A. S.  
**Whan**, *vb.* won, 136/11.  
**Whan-hopefully**, *adv.* unhopefully, despairingly, 16/30.  
**What for**, on account of, 108/21.  
**Whodyreso**, *adv.* whithersoever, 40/11.  
**Whybelers**, *sb.* quibblers?, 148/3.  
**Whyle**, *sb.* the w. = at that time!, 82/13; = *conj.* while, 82/15; That whylle = at that time, 124/20.  
**Whyth**, *prep.* with, 130/31.  
**Wille**, *adj.* wild, rough, 129/29.  
**Willych**, *adv.* vilely, 54/1.  
**Wndre**, *prep.* under, 28/7.  
**Wnneth**, *conj.* unneeth, scarcely, 88/15.  
**Wnseth**, *sb.* disadvantage, 50/8.  
**Wo**, *adj.* sorry, 4/35.  
**Wode**, *adv.* wildly, madly, 94/34.  
**Wodere**, *adj.* wilder, madder, 42/27.  
**Woke**, *adj.* weak, 146/10.  
**Wolf**, woman turned into a, 130.  
**Wombe**, *sb.* belly, 88/4.  
**Wonder**, *adj.* wonderful, 130/11.  
**Wone**, *sb.* custom, usage, 34/15.  
**Wonet**, *pp.* wont, accustomed, 38/33.  
**Wonne**, *sb.* custom, 66/29. See *Wone*.  
**Wood**, *adj.* mad, wild, 42/27.  
**Worth**, *vb.* happened, existed, was, 38/26; became, 124/33.  
**Worthly**, (worthy, R.) *vb.* honor, 92/3.  
**Worthy**, *vb.* honor, 93/2.

- Wrech**, *sb.* wreak, vengeance, 120/34; wreche, 130/29.  
**Wrechydnys**, *sb.* vengeance, 131/33.  
**Wrethe**, *sb.* wrath, 74/22.  
**Wreyer**, *sb.* wraier, betrayer, 102/24.  
**Wryttes**, *sb.* writs, writings, letters, 56/13; *yne wrytte*, in writing, 64/7.  
**Wryyng**, *sb.* distorting, falsifying, 102/11.  
**Wsyd**, *pp.* used, accustomed, practist, skilful, 23/27.  
**Wyage**, *sb.* voyage, 62/7.  
**Wylle**, *sb.* at w. = as he wished, 58/22.  
**Wynd abydyng**, wind-bound, waiting for wind, 80/6.  
**Wyrcchply**, *adv.* worshiply, worshipfully, 67/22.  
**Wyssed**, *vb.* directed, guided, 94/19; *wissede*, 95/19.  
**Wyt**, *prep.* with, 50/15.  
**Wytht**, *prep.* with, 46/17.  
**Wyttaylle**, *sb.* victual, 104/6.  
**Wyttynge**, *sb.* witting, knowledge, 27/3.  
*-y*, *infn.*: See—assembly, castely, de-  
 foully, forswely, namy, tholy, werry, 8/11.  
**Yardes**, *sb.* boughs, sticks, 30/17.  
**Yarne**, *vb.* rushed, ran, 82/3.  
**Y-cast**, *pp.* purposed, 68/30.  
**Y-douted hym**, was afraid, 86/1.  
**Y-dene**, *pp.* done, 28/29.  
**Y-dropesie**, *sb.* dropsy, 44/14.  
**Yern**, *vb.* rush, hasten, 74/1, 76/2.  
**Yernynge**, *vb.* running, rushing, 94/34.  
**Yew**, *vb.* yeve, give, 55/32; *yewyn*, *pp.* 81/9.  
**Y-lacet**, *pp.* laced, 52/11.  
**Y-leued**, *pp.* believed, 102/10.  
**Ymeuyd**, *pp.* moved, 101/4.  
**Yold**, *sb.* yule, Christmas, 42/34; *yolde*, 43/34.  
**Yolowe**, *adj.* yellow, 98/10.  
**Yorne**, *adv.* gerne, eagerly, 92/21; *yonre*, 104/10.  
**Yought**, *sb.* youth, 68/20, 118/27.  
**Youre**, *adj.* yare, active, 114/27.  
**Yoy**, *sb.* joy, 100/29.  
**Yroked**, *pp.* rooked, 42/9.  
**Y-rotid**, *pp.* rooted, 149/17.  
**Yuel**, *mich*, much evil, leprosy, 32/7.  
**Yurne**, *sb.* eagerness, 112/1.



# INDEX

(MAINLY)

BY THOMAS AUSTIN.

(For a completer Index, see Mr. Dimock's, *Gir. Camb. Op.* v. 440-60.)

- Adam of Yarnemouth** (Yarmouth), sent with others to Ireland, 102.
- Adrian, Pope**, grants privileges in Ireland to Henry II, 90; pledges to, 152.
- Albertus, Cardinal**, sent into Normandy to enquire into Becket's death, 68.
- Aldelinesson**, see *Fitz-Audeline*.
- Alexander**, Lord of the world, 34/3.
- Alexander III, Pope**, 44; grants Ireland to Henry II by Bull, 90.
- Amlyffy** (? Queenstown), a harbour of Dublin, John the Mad lands there, 46.
- Angoy** (Anjou), Henry II Earl of, 6.
- Ardfyndan** (Archphinan), castle built at, 148/22.
- Armagh**, Council of Irish Clergy held there, 38; Archbishop too old to attend Synod of Cashel, 66.
- Arms**, the Irish to be forbidden, 152.
- Arthur**, kings of Ireland paid him tribute, 186/13.
- Banow**, Fitz-stephen lands there, 10.
- Barry, Philip de** (brother of Giraldus Cambrensis), comes to Ireland in 1183 to help Fitz-stephen, 126.
- Barry, Robert de**, at siege of Wexford, 10; his bravery at Ossory, 14; his character, 16; his courage, 100; is nephew of Maurice and Robert Fitz-stephen, 100. (Was elder brother of Giraldus Cambrensis.)
- Barry, Robert de**, son of above Robert, 100.
- Basile**, or *Basilia*, sister of Earl Striguil, marries Raymond Fitz-gerald, 84; writes to her husband, 108.
- Bayonne**, the Irish came from, 136.
- Becket**, Archbishop of Canterbury, is murdered, 40-44.
- Beggeryng**, Isle of, at mouth of Wexford harbour, is occupied by the Irish after burning Wexford, 54.
- Belyn**, King of Britain, 136.
- Bernardson**, Robert, left as a leader in Ireland by Henry II, 70.
- Berynger**, William, sent with others to Ireland, 102.
- Bohun**, Humfrey de, left as a leader in Ireland by Henry II, 70.
- Bowmen**, sacrilegious, die suddenly, 62.
- Braken, St.**, prophecy of, 138.
- Breuse** (Braose), Philip de, is left at Wexford by Henry II, 70; has land in Limerick granted him by the king, 122; is afraid of attacking Limerick, 124.
- Bride, St.**, his body found, 150.
- Bristow** (Bristol), Macmorgh goes there, 6.
- Brittayne**, Brytayne (Britany or Bretagne), story of a Breton ship, 12; Earl of Bretagne (Richard) rebels against his father Henry II, 78.
- Byldewdys** (Buildwas), *Rolf*, Abbot of, attends Synod of Cashel, 64.

- Canterbury, Becket murdered there, 40.
- Cantetone, Raymond de, 100; slain, 148/25.
- Carrick (*Carraig*, a rock), near Wexford, Robert Fitz-stephen builds a castle there, 26; is besieged there, 48.
- Cashel, the Archbishop of, and Henry II, attend Synod there, 64; the Constitutions of Cashel, 64; Earl Striguil goes there, 82; account of the Synod sent to the Pope, 90; the Pass barricaded against the English, 104.
- Castles built in Ireland, 126, 128, 148.
- Chester, Earl of, 86; John, Constable of, 128/12.
- Clandechestre (? Gloucestershire), Henry II goes there, 56.
- Cogan, Miles de, commands at Dublin, 46; drives O'Rourke off from it, 58; returns to Ireland with Fitz-Audeline, 110; invades Connaught, 120; goes to England and returns, 122; has land in Cork given him, 122; at Limerick, 124; is slain at Lismore, 124.
- Cogan, Richard de, brother of Miles, comes with a force into Ireland, 126.
- Columba, St., his prophecies, 116, 118, 138; his body found, 150.
- Comyn, John, Archbishop of Dublin, sent to Ireland to prepare the way for Prince John, 134/1.
- Connaught, Cathel, Archbishop of, is at Synod of Cashel, 64.
- Connaught, Roderick, King of, is an ally of O'Rourke, 4; yields to Henry II, 62; ravages Meath, 82; holds conference with Raymond Fitz-gerald, 106; his territory invaded by Miles de Cogan, 120; Roderick beaten by the English, 122.
- Constitutions of Cashel, 64.
- Cork, men of, defeated at sea by the English, 80; left in charge of Richard of London, 122; lands there divided among the English leaders, 122.
- Cormack, son of the King of Cork, rebels and is beheaded, 106.
- Courci, John de, sees Fitz-Audeline's rascality, and sends for troops to invade Ulster, 114; he takes Down, 114; Vivian tries to get rid of him, 114; besieged, 116; beaten at Firlee, but victorious elsewhere, 118; description of him, 118; is childless, 120; again made Ruler of Ireland, 146/15.
- Countances, Henry II does penance there for Becket's death, 72.
- Cursed meat forbidden, 66.
- Davy, a Welshman, nephew of Raymond Fitz-gerald, swims the Shannon, 94.
- Dermot Maccarthy, King of Cork, does homage to Henry II, 60; fears to attack Raymond Fitz-gerald, 80; helped by Raymond Fitz-gerald, 106; his son Cormack beheaded, 106; forced to make peace with the English, 122; leaves them, 124; slain, 148-150.
- Dermot Maomorgh, King of Leinster, seduces Rory's wife, Devorgilla, 2; his men refuse to help him, and he seeks foreign aid, 4; Henry II befriends him, 6; agrees to give his daughter, and Leinster to Struguil in return for help, 6; goes to Wales, 6; returns to Ireland and is joined by Robert Fitz-stephen, 8, 10; assaults Wexford, and captures it, 12; invades Ossory, and defeats the Prince, 14; many of his men desert him, 18; is urged to turn against the English, 20; harangues the men of Leinster, 20; O'Connor makes terms with him, 24; goes to attack Dublin, which submits, 26; aspires to be King of Ireland, 28; his daughter is married to Earl Striguil, 36; marches to Dublin, which is captured by him, 36; his son beheaded by O'Connor, King of Connaught, 38; his death, and burial at Ferns, 44; his character, 44.
- Desmond given to Miles de Cogan and Sir Robert Fitz-stephen, 122, 124.
- Deuselyn (Dublin), Laurence, Archbishop of, attends Synod at Cashel, 64; dies at Eu, 14 Nov., 1180, 132;

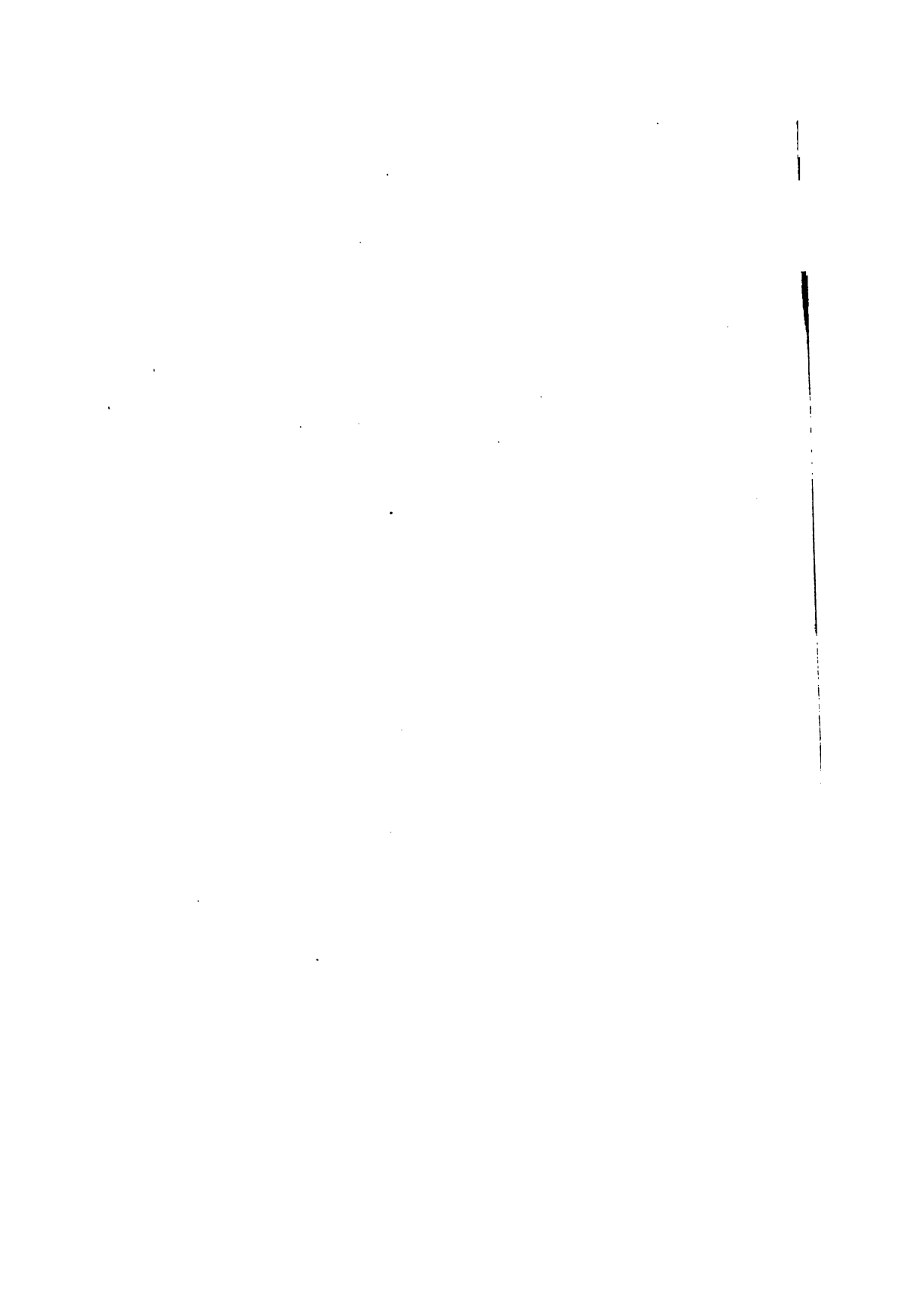
- John Comyn, Archbishop of, 132/24, 134/1.
- Deuelyn** (Dublin), Macmorgh marches there, and captures it, 26; taken by Raymond Fitz-gerald and Miles of Cogan, 36; Earl Striguil leaves a force there, 38; Hasculf attacks it, but is defeated, 46; the Irish besiege it, 48; are defeated there, 52; given up with other ports to Henry II by Striguil, 56; O'Rourke assaults it, 58; chief men left there by Henry II, to keep Ireland, 70; men of Dublin slaughtered by Donald O'Brien, 82; Trinity Church (Cathedral?), 110.
- Donnild** (Donnell), King of Ossory, joins Raymond Fitz-gerald against O'Brien, 104; his address to the troops, 104.
- Down** taken by De Courcy, 114; he is besieged there, 116; relics at, 150.
- Dundonald**, Raymond le Gros builds a fort there, 30.
- Eolipses**, three in three years, 124.
- England**, the Silver Isle; Ireland, the Golden, 152.
- English**, a phantom army scares them, 16; Fitz-stephen addresses them, 22; the Irish enslave English children, 38; the English in Dublin defeat the Irish, 50; Irish Services to be in the English fashion, 66; the English in Ireland demand to be set under Reimund Fitz-gerald, 78; they invade Offaly, 78; rout a Cork fleet, 80; besieged in Limerick by O'Brien, 104; permitted to take food from the churches, 120; advance to Tuam, 122; defeat King Roderick, 122.
- Felmeth**, 128/26.
- Ferand**, William, shows bravery at Waterford, 32.
- Ferns**, Macmorgh winters there, 8; holds a strong position near it, 18; his death and burial there, 44.
- Firlee** (a territory on the river Bann, co. Antrim), de Courci defeated there, 118.
- Fitz-Audeline**, William de, sent to Ireland by Henry II, 110; envies and hates the Geraldines, 110; is self-indulgent and a plunderer, 112; robs Maurice Fitz-gerald's sons, 112; is a bad character, 112-114; is recald to England, 122.
- Fitz-gerald**, Alexander, son of Maurice, his bravery, 50.
- Fitz-gerald**, Davy, nephew of Raymond, 94.
- Fitz-gerald**, Gerald, son of Raymond, his bravery, 50.
- Fitz-gerald**, Maurice, half-brother to Sir Robert Fitz-stephen, helps Macmorgh, 8; has land granted him by Macmorgh, 12; arrives with forces at Wexford, 24; at Dublin, 48; harangues his men, 50; left as a leader in Ireland by Henry II, 70; warns de Lacy of coming treachery, 74; description of him, 76; his courage, 100; his death, 112.
- Fitz-gerald**, Nesta, daughter of Maurice, marries Hervey of Montmaurice, 92.
- Fitz-gerald**, Raymond (Le Gros), son of Maurice Fitzgerald, and nephew of Sir Robert Fitz-stephen, sent to Ireland by Henry II, 30; repels the men of Waterford, 32; joins Earl Striguil, 34; joins in taking Waterford and Dublin, 36; sent by Henry II into Gascony, 40; is in Dublin, 48; his bravery at Dublin, 50; left as Viceroy in Ireland with Striguil, and invades Offaly, in command of the English troops, 78; marches towards Waterford, 80; goes to Wales, 82; lands at Wexford, and saves Striguil, 84; marches against O'Connor, 84; restores peace, 86; marches towards Limerick, 94; crosses the Shannon and takes Limerick, 96; description of him, 98; victuals Limerick, 100; marches there against O'Brien, 104; captures it, 106; marches to Cork, and beats Cormack, 106; has a letter from his wife, 108; commits Limerick to O'Brien, 108; surrenders his government to Henry, 110; is childless, 120; sails to Cork, and helps to put down the rebellion, 126.

- Fitz-gerald, William**, father of Raymond, dies, 82.
- Fitz-gerald, William**, eldest son of Maurice, marries Helen Fitz-gilbert, 92.
- Fitz-henry, Meiler**, his bravery, 14, 100; leads the attack on Limerick, 106; gets Kildare, 128.
- Fitz-henry, Robert**, brother of Meiler, 100.
- Fitz-hugh, Raymond**, 100, slain, 148.
- Fitz-stephen, Sir Robert**, Constable of South Wales, is set free by Rys, the Prince, 8; collects troops to help Macmorgh, 8; lands at Banow, and marches to Wexford with him, 10; stands firm to Macmorgh, 18; urged to retire from Ferns, 20; harangues the English, 22; helps to defeat O'Conor, 26; advises Macmorgh to get more English help, 28; is besieged in Carrick Castle, 48; his defence, 52; deceived into a surrender, 52; described, 54; imprisoned by Henry II, but pardoned after, 60; left by Henry II as a leader in Ireland, 70; his courage, 100; (? same) goes into Ireland with Fitz-Audeline, 110; and is robbed of lands by him, 112; is childless, 120; attacked by the Irish, 126; his right to come to Ireland, 134.
- Fitz-stephen, Maurice**, 30.
- Fitz-stephen, Meredus**, son of Sir Robert, dies at Cork, 124.
- Fitz-stephen, Raymond**, loses some of his lands, 112.
- Fitz-stephen, Rolf**, son of Robert, 120.
- Forthred, Fothred, Fothurtu**, now Forth, in Carlow, 128/24.
- Frederick**, Emperor of Germany, 44.
- French warfare** contrasted with Irish and Welsh, 151.
- Fresel**, Keeper of Waterford, is slain by his guides, 84.
- Geoffrey**, Earl of Bretagne, son of Henry II, rebels, 76; is overcome, 86; dies, 132.
- Gerald de Barri** (Giraldus Cambrensis), 62, 78; comes to Ireland, 126; his advice on the conquest and government of Ireland, 150-2. His brothers: *see* Barry.
- Geraldines**, the, envied, 110; praised, 113.
- Germon, Gurguntius**, 136/10.
- Glanuyl, Ralph de**, defeats Henry II's sons, 86.
- Glyndelagh** (Glendalough) hills, 36.
- Golden Isle**, Ireland, 152.
- Goshawk**, story of Henry II's, 56.
- Gothred**, King of Man, has letters from Striguil, 48.
- Griffin, Robert**, nephew of Maurice Fitz-gerald, has a dream, 73; saves de Laci from Rory's treachery, 74; slays Rory, 76; gets a castle, 128/24.
- Gundeville, Hugh de**, left as a leader in Ireland by Henry II, 70.
- Gurguntius**, Belyn's son, 136/10.
- Gylmory, K.**, at Arthur's feast at Karlyon, 136/14.
- Hasculf**, chief man in Dublin, escapes from it, 36; goes with forty Norse ships to attack it, and is captured, 46; is beheaded, 48.
- Haverford**, 72.
- Helen**, sister of Earl Striguil, given to William, son of Maurice Fitz-gerald, 92.
- Henry II** of England, 2; Macmorgh seeks help from him, 4; appeals to his subjects to aid Macmorgh, 6; forbids trade with Ireland, 40; his Irish edict, 48; lands at Waterford, 58; imprisons Fitz-stephen, 60; the Kings of Cork and Limerick do him homage, 60; the Kings of Connaught and Meath also yield to him, 62; feast given by him, 62; assembles Clergy at Cashel, and has Constitutions made, 64; his Irish affairs, 68; leaves Ireland, 70; despises the speaking stone of Lechlavar, 72; goes to Haverford, and Normandy, and does penance for Becket's death at Coutances, 72; makes peace with the French king, 72; his sons rebel, 76; collects troops at Rouen, 78; leaves Ireland to viceroys, 78; overcomes his sons, 86; Merlin's prophecy about his sons, 88; description of him, 88; gets a grant of the Lordship of Ireland from the

- Pope, 90; recalls Raymond Fitzgerald, 102; his Irish Commissioners return, 110.
- Henry, son of Henry II, rebels against his father, 68, 76; overcomes, 86; dies, 132.
- Hervey of Mountmaurice has land granted him, 12; wishes prisoners to be butchered (they're drowned), 34; at Waterford, 56; succeeds Raymond Fitzgerald as Constable, 82; is jealous of him, 92; marries Nesta Fitzgerald, 92; sends lies about Raymond Fitzgerald to Henry II, 102; his description, 102; childless, 120; turns monk, 126.
- Irish Church, spoiled by John, 146.
- Irish folk, 52, 78, 82, 90, 110; Northerners true, Southerners false, 126; are false, 136, 142; plunder, 144; conspire, 150; tribute to be taken from, 152.
- Jeroboam, 142/18.
- John of Salisbury purchases privileges in Ireland for Henry II from Pope Adrian, 92; goes to Ireland, 130.
- John the Herford, 128/26.
- John the Wood (mad) leads forty Norse ships against Dublin, and is slain, 46.
- John, Constable of Chester, goes to Ireland, 128.
- John, Prince, son of Henry II, sent to Ireland, A. D. 1185, 134; his failure there, and its causes, 136-149; bad state of Ireland under him, 144; new edition of the *Expugnatio* sent him, 152.
- Julius Caesar, 34/3.
- Kenalayne, men of, 150/2.
- Kildare, Bishop of, helps to deceive the English, 52.
- Kildare, given to Meyler, but changed for Leix, 128/27.
- Kyldalo (Killaloe), 106.
- Kylka, 128/25.
- Lateran Council (March 1179), 124.
- Lacy, Hugh de, goes with William son of Aldeline as messenger to the Kings of Connaught and Meath, 62; left in Ireland as a leader by Henry II, 70; meets O'Rourke, 72; treacherously attacked by him, 74; returns to Ireland as Seneschal, 122; fortifies Leinster and Meath, 128; is suspected of aiming at Kingdom, 128; goes to England and returns, 130; is recald from Ireland, 134; is slain A. D. 1186, 150.
- Lilandaff, Ralph, Archdeacon of, attends Synod of Cashel, 64.
- Lechlavar, Stone of, speaks, 70.
- Leix, changed for Kildare, 128/29.
- Leycestre (Leicester), Earl of, captured by Henry II, 86.
- Leinster, governed by Macmorgh, 2; Rory and the King of Connaught invade it, 4; Macmorgh harangues the men of Leinster, 20; had few castles, 128/23; some built, 128.
- Limerick, O'Brien, King of, is warred on by the King of Connaught, 26; Limerick left in charge of Miles of St. David's, 100; burnt by O'Brien, 110; Sir Robert Fitz-stephen and others go there, but retreat, 122.
- Lismore, Henry II goes there, 60; Christian, Bishop of, and Papal Legate, presides at Synod of Cashel, 64; Lismore attacked by the English, 80; Miles de Cogan goes there, 124; a castle built there, 148/22 (ruins still in being.—D.).
- London, Richard of, Governor of Cork A. D. 1177, 122/28.
- Louis, King of France, 44.
- Maccarthy, *see* Dermot Maccarthy.
- Mac Donlevy, King of Ulster, flees from de Courcy, 114; besieges de Courcy in Down, 116; is defeated, 116.
- Maodonough, Prince of Ossory, is defeated by Macmorgh, and sues for peace, 14.
- Macmorgh, *see* Dermot Macmorgh.
- Macmorgh, Eve, daughter of Dermot, marries Earl Striguil, 36.
- Macsaghlin of Olan, is taken prisoner at Waterford, 37.

- Mac-Tire** slays Miles de Cogan, 124.
- Man, Isle of**, governed by King Gothred, 48.
- Marseilles**, 132/7.
- Masturel, William**, joins Henry II, 68.
- Meath**, Rory king there, 2; ravaged by Earl Striguil, 38, by O'Connor, 84; yielded to Henry II, 62; wolf-woman in, 130; is well castled, 128/23, 130/9.
- Merlin**, prophecies of, 10, 34, 44, 58, 62, 70, 88.
- Meyler**, son of Raymond Fitz-gerald's cousin is at Wexford, 84; swims the Shannon, 94; description of him, 98; castle built for, 130/7.
- Miles of St. David's**, cousin of Raymond Fitz-gerald, left in charge of Limerick, 100.
- Milford Haven, Wales**, 124/15.
- Moling, St.**, prophecies of, 34, 58, 62, 138.
- Mountmaurice**, *see* Hervey.
- Myles of Cogan** helps in taking Dublin, 36; goes to Lismore, and is slain there, 124. *See* Cogan.
- Myght (Meath)** destroyed by O'Connor, 84.
- Newenham (Newnham)**, in Clanchestre, 56.
- Newry, de Courci** conquers at Ivor's Bridge near, 118.
- Nicol**, a priest, attends Synod of Cashel, 64; † Prior of Wallingford, conveys Alexander's Bull into Ireland, 90.
- Normans**, John's young, pull the beards of the Irish chiefs, 140; are John's worst advisers, 142, 146.
- Norsemen** attack Dublin, 46.
- Not, William**, his bravery, 52.
- Oboy**, castle built in, 130/8.
- O'Brien, Donald**, King of Limerick and Thomond is warred against by the King of Connaught, and defeats him, 26; does homage to Henry II, 60; slaughters the men of Dublin, 82; rebels against Henry, 92; besieges Limerick, 104; holds conference with Raymond Fitz-gerald, 106; burns Limerick, 110.
- O'Connor, Roderic**, King of Connaught and Ireland, tries to raise the country against Macmorgh and the English, 18; addresses his followers, 20; comes to terms, 24; makes war on the King of Limerick, and is defeated, 26; beheads Macmorgh's son, 38; ravages Meath, 84.
- Odrone (Odroon)**, a territory in co. Carlow, 52, Striguil defeats a Leinster force in a pass near, 54.
- Ofolanes (Offaly)**, in north of the present co. Kildare, Leinster, is invaded by the English, 78.
- Okenseley, Macmurgh** there, 18; Macmurgh of Okensely joins Raymond Fitz-gerald, 104.
- Olethan**, 148/25.
- Omurthy**, 128/25.
- Onolan**, 128/24.
- O'Phelan (Olan)**, 30, 37.
- Ophelayn**, 112.
- O'Rourke**, *see* Rory.
- Osbern (Osborne)** of Hereford, sent into Ireland, 102.
- Ossory (Kilkenny, etc.)**, in Leinster) invaded by Macmorgh, 14, 62.
- Paris**, 138/8.
- Parliament (Conference)** at Rorik's Hill, 74.
- Patrick, St.**, prophecy of, 138; his body found, 150.
- Pec, Richard de**, 128/19.
- Pembroke, Henry II** sails thence, 56.
- Phantom army** terrifies the English, 16.
- Philip of Worcester**, 134.
- Poitou, Earl of, Richard**, son of Henry II, rebels with his brothers, 78.
- Pope**: his right to all islands, 136; grants Ireland to Henry II, 136.
- Rathwyldes Tower**, 36.
- Rauf**, son-in-law of Miles de Cogan, slain at Lismore, 124.
- Raymond Fitzhugh (hues-son)**, 100.
- Raymond le Gras**, *see* Fitz-gerald, Raymond.

- Bedlesford, Walter de**, kills John the Wood, 46; castle built to him, 128/25.
- Behoboam**: Prince John foolishly imitates him, 142.
- Richard, Earl of Poitou**, son of Henry II, rebels against his father, 78; is overcome, 86.
- Richard of London** is in charge of Cork, 122.
- Richard of the pek (Peak)** reaches Ireland, 128/19.
- Robert de Bygas**, 130/8.
- Robert de Po(w)er**, Constable of Waterford, comes to Ireland, 122.
- Roger le Poer** slain, 150.
- Rolf**, son of Robert Fitz-stephen, 76.
- Rorik's Hill**, Conference held there with Rory, 74.
- Rory (O'Rourke)**, King of Meath, left by his wife, 2; marches into Leinster to avenge his shame, 4; assaults Dublin, 58; yields to Henry II, 62; has a conference with de Lacy, 72; treacherously attacks him, 74; is slain by Maurice Fitz-gerald, 76.
- Rys**, son of Griffin, Prince of Wales, sets Fitz-stephen free, 8.
- Salisbury, John of**, 92, 130.
- Scotland**, King of, taken by Henry II, 86; a Papal Legate goes to Scotland, 114.
- Shestre (Chester)**, Earl of, captured by Henry II, 86.
- Shynen (Shannon)**, borders Meath, 82; the river swum, 94; King of Connaught there, 106.
- St. James**, 72.
- Stevenson**, *see* Fitz-stephen.
- Striguil, Richard, Fitz-gilbert**, Earl of, agrees to aid Macmorgh, and has Leinster given him, 6; receives letters from him, 28; sends Raymond le Gras to Ireland, 30; lands at Waterford, and assaults the town, 34; captures it, and marries Macmorgh's daughter, 36; leaves a force in Dublin, 38; his description, 54; sails to England, and yields Dublin and other ports to Henry II, 56; waits at Pembroke for favourable wind, 56; left as Viceroy in Ireland with Raymond Fitz-gerald, 78; asks help of him, and promises him his sister Basile, 84; saved by him, 84; his death, 108; burial, 110; his right to come to Ireland, 134.
- Sur**, parts Leinster and Munster, 30; King of Limerick comes there, 60; Raymond there, 84.
- Tachmeho**, 130/7.
- Theodinus, Cardinal**, comes to Normandy, to Henry II, 68.
- Troy**, English sprung from, 22.
- Tuam**, in Galway, occupied by the English, 122.
- Tybraghnyoh, Tibraghny** in S.W. Kilkenny, 60.
- Tyllagh**, 128/26.
- Ulster** invaded by de Courci, 114.
- Velletri, Archbishop Comyn** consecrated at, A. D. 1182, 132.
- Vivian**, a Papal Legate, comes to Down, 114; holds a Synod at Dublin, 120.
- Vryel**, in Ulster (the present counties of Louth, Armagh, and Monahan), 114; de Courci defeated there, 118.
- Wales**, 6, 8.
- Wallingford, Nichol**, Prior of, conveys Papal Bull to Ireland, 90.
- Walter, Theobald**, 150/1.
- Waterford**, Raymond le Gras lands near it, 30; capture by him of seventy of its inhabitants, 32; and butchery of them, 34; Earl Striguil lands there, 34; assault of it by him, and capture of it, 34, 36; the Irish slay the English there, 84; Council of Irish clergy gathered there, 90; its walls, 116.
- Weysford (Wexford) men** threaten to kill Fitz-stephen, 54; Henry II sails thence to England, 70; Raymond lands there, 84.
- Weynsford (Wexford)**, Bishop of, deceives the English, 52.
- Wicklow, Castle**, 112; Wykynlo, 92.
- Worcester, Phillip of**, takes Hugh de Laci's post, and is cursed by the Irish, 134. wj.








Vertical line on the right side of the page.

Vertical line on the right side of the page, extending further down.

Small dark mark or artifact at the bottom of the right-side line.

100

1917-1918

The background of the image is a traditional marbled paper pattern. It features a dense, intricate design of swirling, organic shapes in shades of brown, dark blue, and tan. The pattern is reminiscent of stone or biological cells, with larger, irregular spots and smaller, more uniform dots scattered throughout. The overall effect is a rich, textured, and somewhat chaotic visual field.

To avoid fine, this book should be r  
or before the date last stamped

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 005 715 169

MAR 1 '68

MAY 24 '68

JUN 10

JUL 11 1972

**Stanford University Library**

Stanford, California

In order that others may use this book,  
please return it as soon as possible, but  
not later than the date due.

